

RUDIMENTS
enfajin AND *Rajah*
PRACTICAL EXERCISES,

FOR LEARNING THE

FRENCH LANGUAGE,

BY AN EASY METHOD:

WITH A

Great Variety of *Idiomatrical Expressions*,

BY WHICH

LEARNERS MAY BE ENABLED TO WRITE AND SPEAK
THE FRENCH LANGUAGE WITH PROPRIETY.

Via—opus est incipientibus, sed ea plana, et cum ad ingrediendum, tum ad
demonstrandum, expedita.—*QUINCT.*

BY A. SCOT, A. M.

FELLOW OF THE UNIVERSITY OF PARIS.

THE EIGHTH EDITION.

CAREFULLY CORRECTED.

Edinburgh:

PRINTED FOR WILLIAM CREECH,
AND SOLD BY
LONGMAN, HURST, REES, AND ORME, AND
JOHN MURRAY, 32, FLEET STREET, LONDON.

ALEX. SMELLIE, Printer

1806.

A MONSIEUR
LE RECTEUR,
ET
A L'UNIVERSITÉ DE PARIS.

Monsieur et Messieurs,

QU'IL me soit permis d'avoir l'honneur de faire paroître, sous Vos AUSPICES, un ouvrage qui traite des PRINCIPES GENERAUX et PARTICULIERS de la LANGUE FRANÇOISE, pour en faciliter l'étude et l'usage à la JEUNESSE BRITANNIQUE.

A qui pourrois je mieux offrir un tel livre, qu'à la Celebre Université de PARIS, où j'ai été élevé et dont j'ai l'honneur d'être membre?

Car,

Car, si j'ai quelque teinture de la science grammaticale et des lettres, c'est dans son sein que je l'ai puisée.

Daignez donc, Monsieur et Messieurs, accepter cet hommage de mes faibles talents, comme une marque authentique du profond respect avec lequel

Je suis

Votre très humble et très obéissant serviteur,

A. S.

Socius Constantissimae Nationis.

PREFACE.

P R E F A C E.

TO render the ELEMENTS and CONSTRUCTION of the French language *plain* and *easy* to YOUTH has been the great object of this performance.

The rapid sale of the former editions induces the Editor to think that this desirable end has been obtained, and consequently the approbation of the Public. Impressed with this flattering idea, he has now ventured to publish an EIGHTH EDITION, with considerable emendations and improvements.

The method which has been followed of arranging the VERBS is different from the common way of any French Grammar hitherto published in the British Dominions. They are drawn up alphabetically. By the mode adopted, any person of a tolerable capacity, after having learned the terminations of the tenses, and their formation, can acquire the knowledge of the verbs with the greatest ease and expedition. As a further help, in pages 112, 113, 114, and 115,

there

there is a recapitulation of the irregular tenses of the verbs.

The Syllabus at the beginning of the Rudiments is short. The learner ought to be directed, in reading it, by a person well acquainted with the sounds of the French language; for sounds cannot be conveyed by writing.

In the third part of this book, all the principles and rules for writing the language are found, enforced and reduced to practice by exercisef. It must be owned that these rules are very long; nay, they seem intricate at first; but on serious examination the difficulties vanish. But it is impossible to shorten them with any degree of propriety; for upon a thorough knowledge of them the nicety and beauty of the French language depend.

To show the necessity of learning the rules of construction, though long, a few examples may be given.

In many schools, where children learn French by note, (which is the worst of all methods), and are often taught by persons unacquainted with grammatical principles, nothing is more common than to hear the following gibberish.
J'ai quelque, I have some. *Avez-vous quelque?*
 Have

Have you any? *Je suis à le,* I am at it. *Etes-vous plu?* Are you pleased? *Oui, je suis ainsi,* Yes, I am so. *J'ai coupé mon doigt,* I have cut my finger. *Il est chaud aujourd'hui,* It is warm to day. *Etes-vous froid?* Are you cold? *Je suis faim,* I am hungry. *Vous êtes soif,* You are thirs-ty, &c. &c.

Whereas, if these children had been taught by grammar rules and proper instructors, they would have expressed themselves in this manner. *J'en ai.* *En avez-vous?* *J'y suis.* *Etes-vous content?* *Oui, je le suis.* *Je me suis coupé le doigt.* *Il fait chaud aujourd'hui.* *Avez-vous froid?* *J'ai faim.* *Avez-vous soif,* &c. &c.

Thousands of such examples could be produced to shew the error and folly of people learning French by rote, instead of being instructed by grammar rules.

The author has consulted the best modern French grammars, from which he has derived much benefit; and acknowledges that he has copied from them whatever he thought material to his purpose.

FRENCH RUDIMENTS.

SYLLABUS.

PART I.

PRONUNCIATION.

WORDS, considered as sounds, and represented to the eye by writing, are composed of letters and syllables.

The letters are either vowels or consonants. The vowels are, *a, e, i, o, u, y*. The consonants are, *b, c, d, f, g, h, j, k, l, m, n, p, q, r, s, t, v, x, z*.

In French, the vowels may be divided into acute, or open; grave, or long, nasal, guttural, and mute.

There are three kinds of accents, viz. Acute', Grave', and Circumflex'.

Eight Acute Vowels.

a, e, é, i, ou, u, eu.

One Grave.

è.

Five with the Circumflex.

â, ê, ô, eû, û.

Five Nasal.

*am, em, im, om, um.
an, en, in, on, un.*

One Guttural.

e.

e mute, called Semi-vowel.

A

First

OF PRONUNCIATION.

First TABLE of Vowels considered only in relation to their Sounds. Under these Vowels, where we find a corresponding sound in English, we put an English word, and the corresponding vowel or vowels are in Italic.

| | | | |
|-------------------|------------|----|----------|
| 1. a | patte | â | pâte |
| | what | | law |
| 2. é acute | vérité | | aught |
| | eh! | | |
| 3. è grave | prophète | ê | fête |
| | let | | rate |
| 4. e guttural | le, ce, de | | |
| | the | | |
| 5. è intermediate | belle | | |
| | sell | | |
| 6. eu | le jeu | eu | le jeûne |
| 7. i | ici | | |
| | bee | | |
| 8. o | hotte | ô | hôte |
| | hot | | moat |
| 9. ou | coucou | | |
| | book | | |
| 10. u | ufure | û | flûte |
| 11. au, eau, | autre | | |
| | cope | | |
| 12. in | fin | | |
| 13. on | bon, ton | | |
| 14. um | parfum | | |
| 15. ò mute | bête | | |
| | rate | | |

Second TABLE of Vowels; different ways of representing them.

Short, or Acute Vowels.

â
è grave, et, ai, oi, ei,
eu, aeu, e guttural
o, au, eau,

Long Vowels.

â, as
é, es, ais, eai, ois, aix, êst, ai, ôi, aient, oient
eu, eux
ô, os, aux, eaux.

OF PRONUNCIATION.

3

Nasal Vowels.

am, an, en, em, im, in, aim, ain, èm, en, um, un, om, on.

Acute Vowels.

é, ez, er, ai, et, &
i, y
ou, aou
u, eu

Mute Vowels.

ø, es, and ent in the 3d persons plural of verbs.

TABLE of Eighteen Diphthongs.

| | | | | |
|-----------|----------|-----|--------|----------|
| 1. ia | diacre | | ouet | rouet |
| 2. ié | amitié | 11. | { oe | boète |
| 3. iè | lumière | | { oi | Roi |
| 4. ieu | Dieu | 12. | oui | enfoui |
| 5. io | pioche | 13. | ouan | louange |
| 6. iou | chiourme | 14. | { ouin | mariouin |
| 7. ian | viande | | { oin | loin |
| 8. ien | Chrétien | 15. | ué | situé |
| 9. ion | ambition | 16. | uè | ecuèle |
| 10. { oua | ouate | 17. | ui | celui |
| { oa | bezoard | 18. | uin | Juin |

TABLE of CONSONANTS, considered only as to their Sounds, being 21 in number.

Five Labial Consonants.

Weak Consonants.

1. M.

| | |
|-------|--------------|
| 2. B. | Maxime |
| | Bombe |
| 4. V. | Vin de Grave |

Strong Consonants.

3. P

Pompe

5. F, ff, ph.

Fief, affaire, Pharos.

Four

OF PRONUNCIATION.

Four hissing.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 6. J, g, (before e, i, y) Judas, dis-je, jugea | 8. Ch, sch Chiche, Schisme |
| 7. S, as z between two vowels, thèse | 9. S, ss. ç and ç (before e, i, y), and t (before ia, ion), Son, caſſe, ça, ce, ci, Cyrus partial, portion. |

Five Palatal.

- | | |
|--------------------|--|
| 10. D. D'Inde. | 11. T, tt, th, Tinte. dette, thèſe. |
| 12. L. L'Asyle. | 13. N. Narine. |
| | 14. R. rr. redire, arrêt. |

Two Guttural.

- | | |
|------------------------|---|
| 15. G, Gu Goguenard | 16. Q. qu, c, ch. Coquemar, corps, écho. |
|------------------------|---|

Five Liquid.

- | | |
|--|----------------------------------|
| 17. Gu Gueufier | 18. Qu. Queue. |
| 19. Gn Règner | 21. ll, ill. vaillance, mail. |
| 20. i, y. faiance, ayeux X stands for gz, and cs, exiler, vexer. | |

THIRD TABLE. Of the different ways of representing the Vowels. [Uncommon Sounds are marked with an asterism.]

I. Vowel a.

- | | |
|--------------|---------------|
| 1. a, place. | 2. em * femme |
|--------------|---------------|

â long.

- | | |
|-------------|------------|
| 1. â, pâte. | 2. compas. |
|-------------|------------|

II.

II. é acute.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. é, vérité. ai, j'aurai. œ, œconomie. | 2. ez, lisez. 4. er, parler. 6. et or &, and. |
|---|---|

III. è grave.

- | | |
|--|----------------------------------|
| 1. e ^è , autel. 3. ai, semaine. 5. ei, peine. | 2. et, bonnet. 4. oi, foible. |
|--|----------------------------------|

è very open, as ay in May.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. è thèse. 3. ê, fête. 5. â, maître. 7. ôi, connoître. 9. aix, la paix. | 2. es, ès, des accès. 4. èst, il est. 6. ais, jamais. 8. ois, j'aurois. 10. oient, parlurent. |
|--|---|

IV. e mute.

- | | |
|---|-------------------|
| 1. e, je donne. 3. ent, ils parlent. | 2. es, tu parles. |
|---|-------------------|

V. Vowel eu.

- | | |
|---|------------------------------------|
| 1. eu, du feu. 3. e, je te le donne. | 2. œu, un vœu. 4. ue *, écueil. |
|---|------------------------------------|

eu long.

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------|
| 1. eû, le jeûne. 3. eux, je veux. | 2. œux, des vœux. |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------|

VI. i.

- | | |
|-----------------------------|--------------------|
| 1. i, ici. 3. y, il y a. | 2. ui *, du vaide] |
|-----------------------------|--------------------|

VII. o.

- | | |
|--------------------------------|------------------|
| 1. o, odorat. 3. au, gruan. | 2. eau, chapeau. |
|--------------------------------|------------------|

ô very

OF PRONUNCIATION.

ō very long, as oa in boat.

1. ô, une côte.
3. aux, travaux.
5. ao *, la Saône.

2. os, le dos.
4. eaux, bateaux.

VIII. ou.

1. ou, coup.
3. aou, Août.

2. ol *, sol.
often spelt sou.

IX. u.

1. u, salut.

2. eu, j'eus, I had.

X. Nasal an.

1. an, ancêtres.
3. en, encore.
5. { aen, Caen.
ean, Jean.

2. am, camp.
4. em, empire.
6. aon, paon.

XI. in.

1. in, lin.
3. ain, pain.
5. ein, frein.
7. en, bien.

2. im, imbiber
4. ain, faim.
6. eim *, Rheims.

XII. on.

1. on, ponton.
3. un*, Munster.
5. aon, un taon.

2. om, plomb.
4. um*, Humbert.

XIII. un.

1. un, defunt.
3. eun, à jeun.

2. um, parfum.

Single n's and m's, followed by vowels, or another n and m, are not nasal.

ininitié, imaginer.
innover, immortalité.

SINGLE

OF PRONUNCIATION.

7

SINGLE SYLLABLES.

FIRST TABLE.

| | | | | | |
|--------|--------|--------|-------|-------|------|
| A | et | eu | o | é | i |
| ha | hê | heu | hô | hé | hi |
| ma | mêts | mœu | mau | mai | mis |
| bât | bê | boeufs | beaux | ber | bi |
| pâ | pei | peu | pos | pez | pi |
| vas | vais | vœux | vô | vé | vi |
| { fa | fai | feux | fo | fez | fix |
| { pha | phois | | pho | pher | phi |
| { ja | jet | jeû | j'au | j'ai | j'i |
| { gea | geoit | geu | geau | gez | gis |
| { cha | chai | cheu | chaux | cher | chi |
| { za | zoient | zeu | zeau | zé | zi |
| { fa | soient | feu | seau | fai | sie |
| { ça | cès | ceux | ceaux | cez | ci |
| { fas | sei | fœu | fo | fer | sy |
| da | doient | de | dos | dé | dis |
| tâ | toit | teux | tau | tai | ti |
| las | lai | le | leau | lez | lits |
| na | noî | noeuds | nô | nez | nid |
| ra | rei | reux | rôt | ré | ris |
| { gâ | gâî | | go | | |
| { guas | guoit | gueux | guo | guez | gui |
| { ca | cai | | cô | | |
| { qua | quai | queu | qu'au | quer | qui |
| gna | gnois | gneu | gno | gnai | gnis |
| illas | illoit | illeu | illo | illez | illi |

SECOND TABLE.

| | | | | | |
|--------|-----|------|------|-----|------|
| ou | u | an | in | un | on |
| houx | hu | han | hin | hum | hon |
| mou | mu | mem | main | mun | mon |
| bou | bus | bant | bain | bun | bom |
| pou | pu | pam | pein | | pom |
| vous | vu | vent | vin | | von |
| { fous | fu | fan | faim | fum | fon |
| | | phan | phin | | phon |

jou

OF PRONUNCIATION.

| | | | | | |
|---------|------|--------|-------|-------|--------|
| { jou | jus | jean, | j'in | jeun | jón |
| | | gens | gin | | geon |
| chou | chu | cham | chain | | chon |
| { zou | | | zin | zun | zon |
| { sou | fu | fant | fin | fun | son |
| | | cent | cein | | çon |
| { sous | fu | sem | fym | | fon |
| doux | du | dent | daim | dun | don |
| toux | tu | temps | tim | tun | tom |
| lou | lus | lam | lain | lun | lon |
| nous | nu | nant | nym | | non |
| rou | ru | rang | rin | | ron |
| { goût | gu | gant | gain | | gon |
| | | guant | guim | | guon |
| { cou | cu | camp | cain | cun | con |
| { qu'ou | qu'u | quand | quint | qu'un | qu'on |
| | | gnan | gnin | | gnon |
| | | illant | | | illons |

Compound Syllables.

| | | | | | |
|------|---------|-------|--------|------|------|
| bla | blê | bleu | blo | blé | bli |
| pla | plai | pleu | plau | plai | plis |
| fla | floient | fieu | flots | flez | fli |
| gla | glais | gleu | glo | gler | gli |
| cla | clois | cleu | clos | clè | cli |
| bra | bré | breux | bros | brez | bris |
| pra | prois | preu | pro | prai | prix |
| vra | vrai | vreu | vreaux | vrez | vris |
| phra | fret | freu | fro | frer | fri |
| dra | dret | dreux | drô | dré | dri |
| tra | trai | treu | treau | trez | tri |
| gra | grès | greu | gros | gré | gris |
| cra | chrê | creux | creaux | chré | chry |
| cta | ctoit | cteu | cto | cter | cti |
| spa | spoient | | spo | spé | spi |
| fca | squoit | | sco | squé | squi |
| sta | ftoient | | sto | ftai | fti |
| fta | ftrois | | ftro | ftre | ftri |
| ctri | spla | fpfen | fcrit | fcro | fcru |

OF PRONUNCIATION.

x founded cs, véxa, il fixoit, taxé
 x as gz, Xavier, examen, exil.

Compound Syllables.

| | | | | |
|-------|-----|--------|-------|--------|
| bleu | blu | blanc | blin | blon |
| plou | plu | plan | plein | plom |
| flou | flu | flam | flin | flon |
| glou | glu | glan | glin | glon |
| cloux | clu | clan | clin | clons |
| brou | bru | bran | brin | bron |
| prou | pru | pren | prin | prom |
| | | vran | vrain | vron |
| frou | fru | fram | freia | froñ |
| drou | dru | dran | drin | dron |
| trou | tru | trem | train | trom |
| grou | gru | gran | grain | creñ |
| crou | cru | cran | caint | cras |
| | ctu | ctant | ctin | cton |
| spou | | spant | spin | spon |
| | scu | scan | squin | squon |
| | stu | stant | stint | stons |
| | kru | strant | striñ | strons |

Words ending in e mute.

| | | |
|----------|--------------|---------------|
| j'agrée | les vaches | ils ménent |
| il sème | tu pèses | ils fèrrent |
| Eusèbe | des pièces | ils signent |
| voile | tu dresses | ils parlent |
| la balle | tu danfes | ils veillent |
| botte | tu parles | ils voyent |
| objeçte | tu objec̄tes | ils objeçtent |

OF PRONUNCIATION.

ent articulated in three ways.

imo, As e mute
ils chatient
ils couvent
ils president
ils se parent
ils content
ils excellent

2do, as an nasal
un patient
un couvent
un president
un parent
content
excellent

3to, as ain, *Nasal.*

il tient
il vient

il retient
il parvient

il obtient
il devient

oi articulated, as oa.

à moi
il boit
envoi
la foi
le doigt
toi
roi
emploi
il croit
le froid

chamois
loix
ils envoient
une fois
les doigts
les toits
les rois
emploient
des croix
les froids

un mois
du bois
des pois
un poids
trois
noix

aieul
caier

païen
glaieul

faiance
camaieu

y for two ii's.

il paye
il a effayé
un moyen
employons
ennuyeux
fuyard

Pronounce

il pai, ie
il a effai, ié
moi, ien
emploi-ions
ennui-ieux
fui-iard.

TABLE

TABLE of Consonants which are commonly not sounded at the end of Syllables.

- m. This letter, at the end of syllables, is usually the sign of a nasal sound, as chambre, nom, renom, Adam, Absalom, &c.
- p. Drap, sept, trop, coup, camp, compte, prompt, promptement, exempt, &c.
- z. After e, allez, lisez, donnez, &c.
- s. This letter usually makes the syllable long, as appas, palais, effets, le repos, &c.
- d. Laid, froid, chaud, muid, nid, nud, pied, sourd, verd, fond, &c.
- t. Il bat, un mât, effet, il peut, il dit, mot, gout, tant, ouvert, &c.
- n. Usually is the sign of the nasal sound, as plan, an, lién, mien, rien, houblon, &c.
- g. Sang, vingt, long, bourg, &c.
- x. Là paix, genoux, prix, cheveux.
- ft. Jésus Christ, c'est, il est.

TABLE of Words wherein the same Consonants are sounded.

- m. Abraham, Salim, Selim, Cham, Amram, Stockholm, hem, item.
- p. un cap, jalap, Allep, la ville de Gap, and with beaucoup, and trop, before a word beginning with a vowel, as trop austere.
- z. Has the hissing sound in these proper names, Rhôdez, Senez, Suarez, Vazquez, Olivarez, and it is mute in Usez, Vi-varez.
- s. un as, Pallas, Cérès, Amos, Antiochus, l'iris, une vis, baptis-mal, bis, ânus, virus, Pâris a proper name, &c.
- d. Gad, Jared, David, Sud.
- t. La dot, un fat, brut, echèc et mat, zenith, Judith, correct.
- n. Amen, l'hymen, l'abdomen.
- g. Doeg, Gog, Aggée, Agag.
- x. as ks, Ajax, Borax, Alix, Felix, Stix, prefix, larynx, sphinx, &c.
- ft. Le Christ, un zeft, Est, ouest, Brest.

OF PRONUNCIATION.

TABLE of Consonants which are pronounced at the end of Syllables.

- b. Joab, Calèb, Job, radoub, Achab.
 f. chèf, fièf, un if, rétif, vif, soif, &c.
 ph. Joseph, Asoph.
 l. Mal, bel, poil, fil, parasol, calcul, capitoul, sel, seuil.
 r. Car, l'air, l'auteur, du noir, or, amour, pur, vér, fer mér,
 hyvèr enfer, avoir, &c. Jupitèr, Luther, Cranmèr.
 c. Sac, avec, échèc, laïc, trafic, estoc, caduc, St Marc, froc, troc.
 * Liquid consonant. Mail, vermeil, cerfeuil, fenouil, Avril,
 peril, gentilhomme.

TABLE wherein the same Consonants are not sounded.

- b. Du plomb.
 f. cléf, chèf-d'oeuvre, &c.
 l. baril, chenil, fusil, gentil, sourcil, un fils, le pouls, il est facul-
 er. At the end of words, is commonly as é acute, hërser, bërger,
 përcer, fermer, dërnier.
 c. Tobac, estomac, almanach, arsenic, croc, broc, banc, blanc,
 flanc, franc, jonc, elèrc, porc, echècs, un marc, arcbou-
 tant, arctique, contraët, respect, aspect, instinct.

ti. sounded as si.

Martial, partial, patient, inertie, initier, portion, balbutier,
 faction, factieux, injection, exception, Dalmatie, Domitien,
 Nigritie, &c.

- Uncommon manner of representing several Vowels.

am for aw.

Condamner
Damnation

sound

Condawner
Dawnation.

ai for a.

Douairière

Doutariere.

em for

em for aw.

| | | |
|----------------|-------|----------------|
| femme | found | fawme |
| solennel | | solawnel |
| solennité | | solawnité |
| solenniser | | solawniser |
| solennellement | | solawnellement |
| prudemment | | prudawment |

And all adverbs in emment.

ueil for euil.

| | |
|---------|---------|
| accueil | akeuil |
| écueil | ckeuil |
| orgueil | orgeuil |

œil for euil.

| | |
|--------|---------|
| l'œil | l'euil |
| œillet | éuiller |

ui for i.

| | |
|-------|------|
| vuide | vide |
|-------|------|

ao for o.

| | |
|----------|---------|
| la Saône | la Sône |
|----------|---------|

um for orme.

| | |
|------------|-------------|
| de l'opium | de l'opiome |
|------------|-------------|

aou for ou.

| | |
|---------------|-----------|
| Aout (August) | out |
| se saouler | se foulér |

ol for ou.

| | |
|--------|--------|
| un sol | un sou |
|--------|--------|

æn for nasal an.

| | |
|-------------|-----|
| Caen (town) | Can |
|-------------|-----|

aon for nasal an.

| | |
|-------------|-----|
| Laon (town) | Lan |
| paon | pan |
| faon | fan |

ean

OF PRONUNCIATION.

| | | |
|-------------------------|-------------------|-------------|
| | ean for nasal an. | |
| Jean (John) | sound | Jan |
| | eim for nasal in. | |
| Rheims | | Rinse |
| | aon for nasal on. | |
| un Taon, a kind of fly, | | Ton |
| | um for nasal on. | |
| Humbert | | Honbert |
| factum | | facton |
| | un for nasal on. | |
| Dunkerque | | Donkerk |
| | qu for ku. | |
| equestre | | ekuestre |
| questeur | | kuesteur |
| | qua for koua. | |
| quadrature | | kouadrature |
| equateur | | ekouateur |
| equation | | ekouation |

Uncommon manner of representing several Consonants.

| | | |
|------------|---------------------------------|------------|
| | w for v. | |
| Westphalie | | Vestphalie |
| Winchester | | Vincester |
| | The same in many foreign words. | |
| | sch for ch. | |
| schisme | | chisme |
| | x for z. | |
| dixième | | dizième |
| | x for | |

OF PRONUNCIATION.

15

x for ss.

| | | |
|----------|-------|-----------|
| soixante | found | soiffante |
| Auxerre | | Außerre |

c for g.

| | |
|-------------|-------------|
| second | fégond |
| séconder | fégonder |
| sécondement | fégondement |
| sécrét | fegrét |

gh for gu.

| | |
|-----------|-----------|
| Berghen | Berguen |
| Le Ghilan | Le Guilan |

ch for k.

| | |
|----------|---------|
| chaos | kaos |
| archange | arkange |

lh for ill liquid.

| | |
|-----------|------------|
| Pardalhac | Pardaillac |
| Milhaut | Millaut |

ll for ill liquid.

| | |
|-------|--------|
| Sulli | Suilli |
| Nulli | Nuilli |

gn for guen.

| | |
|------------|--------------|
| gnostique | guenostique |
| gnomonique | guenomonique |

th for t.

| | |
|-------|-------|
| thèse | tèse. |
|-------|-------|

Practical LESSONS on the Vowels and Consonants.

a

This letter common-
sounds as aw in
the English word
law.

place, grace, pâte.

aen as an,

la Ville de Caen.

ai as é in pret. et fu-
tures,

donnai, parlai, don-
nerai, parlerai.

ai as è,

balai, delai, affaire.

ai as a,

douairière.

äi as a-i separated,
hai interjection.

ai, ais, aits, aix, as e
very open,
maître, paître, ja-
mais, des faits,
porte faix.

aix as èce,

ville d'Aix.

äi as a i, and ail as
a-il, except aile, a
wing.

haïr, laïc, mail, por-
tail.

i followed by a
vowel is liquid, as
païen, aïeul, fai-
ance.

aim, ain, nasal,
daim, faim, main,
etain.

an, am, nasal,
Ange, chambre.
amm, ann, as ame,
and ane,

enflammer, annon-
cer.

amn as an,
condamner, dam-
ner,

Sometimes both
mm's and nn's
are sounded.

Inflammation, Am-
monites, annota-
tion.

ao as o,

aoriste, Saone.

aon, nasal an,

Laon, paon, faon.

aon, as nasal on,
in taon.

aou as ou,
aout, faoul, faouler.

au as o,

aubade, autant.

äü with two titles,
are sounded se-
parately,

Säül, Archilaüs.

ay as éi,
pays, payfan, ayant,
ayez.

If the y is followed
by a vowel, the y
is like i-i,

essayons, moyen,
payè, essayé.

e as è, in

autel, avec, fer, Do-
eg, hymen, enne-
mi, pere, mere,
rosette, legs.

e without an accent
is mute in these
words, and in the
futures and con-
ditionals of verbs,
except verrai, vér-
rois, enverrai, en-
verrois,

Jean, joue, jouera,
âme, cabane.

e short in
venir, devenir.

e guttural in
je, me, te, se, ce, de,
le, ne, que.

e is guttural when
followed by two or
three syllables, as
devenir, demander,
redemander.

é is close or acute,
cléf, bled, pied,
vérité.

è grave,
thèse, après.

ê with the circum-
flex very open,
fête, honnête, même.

ei is as è, in
peine, seigneur, reine,
feize, feizieme.

ei with the acute o-
ver the é, each
vowel keeps its
own sound,
obéir, obéissez.

eim, ein, nasal, in
Rheims, name of a
town.
dessein, peinture

em

| | | |
|---|---|--|
| emm as am, not nasal, emmener, femme, prudemment, e- videmment. | ils donnent, prient, aimént. en as ènne, in | of words, buffet, jet, objet, effet. |
| emn as an, not na- sal, solennel, solenniser, solennité, sound solanél, &c. | arenne, garenne, prenne, com- prenne, empren- ner, desempren- ner. | et the conjunction is as é. |
| em ending foreign names, as eme, Bethléem, Jerusa- lem; and in Lat- in words, hem, item. | er sounds as é in infinitive, and many words, donner, parler, danger, metier, | et is as ét in the beginning or mid- dle of words fol- lowed by a con- sonant, |
| em nasal, temple, tems, em- porter. | er as ere in begin- ning and middle of words, berger, cercle, lan- terne; | Etna, Betléem. |
| en nasal, enter, entend. | and in these mono- syllables, fèr, mèr, cher, clèrc, vérs, vèrd; | eu guttural, feu, jeu, peut, veut. |
| en as nasal ain, in Mentor, benjoin, Agen, examen; and in all words ending in éen and ien, | and in these words, amèr, cancèr, hièr, hyvèr, enfèr, Est- her, fratèr, éthèr, magîster, Jupitèr. | eu as the French u in |
| Nazaréen, Jebuséen, bien, in the verbs, cient, vient, and in Chrétien, tien, mien, fien. | ez as ès at end of some foreign words, | J'eus, J'eusse. |
| en is en, in ennemi, hymen, a- men. | Suarez, Vasquez, Rhodez. | eu. |
| en nasal at end of words, | es as è, very open in these monosyl- lables, | Europe, Eustache, |
| argent, prudent, fagément. | mes, tes, ses, ces, des, les, tres. | éu as é—u, |
| en mute in third persons plural of verbs, | es mute at end of words, dites, faites, sages, | réussir, réunir. |
| | es as ès in foreign words, | ez as ès |
| | Cérès, Verrés. | nez, assez, parlez, |
| | et as è open at end | lisez. |
| | C | ——— |
| | | i short. |
| | | ici, difficile, finit. |
| | | i long, |
| | | gîte, épître. |
| | | im, in, has the na- |
| | | sal sound, |
| | | timbre, destin, cin- |
| | | quante, |
| | | imm as ime, |
| | | immortèl, |

immort^él, immatri-
cul^é,

im at the end of
foreign words, as
ime,

interim, Selim.

nn as nin words,
innocent.

in as in at end of
some foreign
words,

Schin, Sin, (desart)
Ain.

o

o short, as
hotte, botte.

ô long, as
ôter, hôte, côte.

oi, ois, oient, as è
more or less open,
donnois, partoient,
disoient, foible,
connoit, avois,
étoient.

oi diphthong as oa;
roi, moi, toi, bois;
reçois, soi, pois,
poids, noix, trois,

mois ; and in the
present tenses of
verbs in evoir.

oï as two letters,
Moïse.

oin nasal.

foin, coin, bfoein,
loin.

ol as ou, in
sol, col, mol.

ol as ole, in
sol de batiment, col
d'une chemise.

om, on, nasal,
tombe, tondre.

mm, nn, as single m,
n,

hommage, honneur.

ou as oo in book,
coucou, licou, a-
mour.

oü as ou, in
Thoü, Pyrithoüs.

u
u, no corresponding
found in English,
lut, statut, usure, tu.

uel, in
accueil, recueil, or
gueil, cercueil.

ui as i, in
vuide, vuider, and
derivatives from
them.

ui, a diphthong in
all other words,
as

uire, instruire, de-
truire, nuire,
um, un, nasal,
parfum, defunt,
brun, l'un, cha-
cun.

un, um, as nasal on
in

Humber, Dun-
kérque.

um as ome, in
opium, te Deum.

y

y, called Greek y,
is founded as i,
il y a, il y avoit.

Practical Lessons, &c. on Consonants.

B

B, b, as in English,
bombe, Job, Ca-
leb, radoub, Ja-
cob, Achab.

b generally is not
pronounced at the
end of words,
plomb, rumb du
vert.

bb generally sound-
ed as b,
Abbé, sabbat ; ex-
cept in Barabbas,
sabbatique.

C.

C

C, *c*, *imo*, as *k*, and sounded at the end of words generally,

Iac, *froc*, *basilic*, *duc*, *bec*.

zdo, when followed by another consonant,

clair, *credule*.

ztio, before *a*, *o*, *u*, *calice*, *cofre*, *cuve*.

c as *s* before *e*, *i*, *y*, *ceci* *civil*, *Cyrus*.

ç with this mark as *s*,

reçu, *mâçon*, *ça*.

c as *g* in these words, *Claude*, *sécret*, and its derivatives ; *second*, and its derivatives.

ce as *k* in these words,

accabler, *accomplir*, *accuser* ; as two *k*'s in *Bacchus*.

cc as *x* before *e*, *i*, *accès*, *accident*.

c is mute at the end of these words, *broc*, *clerc*, *marc*, *blanc*, *franc*, *jonc*, *tronc*, *almanac*, *tabac*, *estomac*, *arsenic*, *proc*, *croc* ; and mute in all words where it is preceded by nasal *n*, *m*.

c as *k*, in

pore, *epic*, *du blanc*
au noir, *du clerc*
au maître, *franc*-
etourdi.

ch as *sh* in English,

chiche, *chercher*, *charité*, *chûte*.

ch as *k* in some foreign words,

Zacharie, *choriste*, *Christ*, *Chloris*, *Achab*, *Chanaan*, *archétype*, *archi*-
episcopal, *mechanic*, &c.

ch, in many foreign words as *sh*,

archevêque *Zachée*, *cherubin*, *Michel*, *monarchie*, *stomachique*, *Acheron*, *Achille*.

h, end of a word is mute, as

almanach.

D

d final is sounded only in *sud* : and foreign words,

David, *Lamed*, *Galaad*, *Ephod*.

d, final as *t*, in *fond en comble*, *quand* before pronouns in the third person, and

adjectives followed by substantives, beginning with a vowel, or *h* mute, or in the third person singular of verbs attended with *il*, *elle*, *on*, as

Quand ils vont, *grand homme*, *profond abyme*, *entend-il*, *coudill*, *repond on*.

d final not sounded even before a vowel,

froid extrême, *il fait* *chaud aujourd'hui*, *fond inépuisable*.

dd sounded strong in addition, additioner, reddition.

In other words *dd* as *d*, addoner.

F.

f final sounded, *chèf*, *vif*, *actif*, *soif*, *suif*.

f mute in, *chef-d'œuvre*, *clef*, *apprentif*, *baillif*, *boeuf*, *oeuf*, *cerf*, *nerf*, *neuf*, *new*, and *neuf*, *nine*, before a consonant.

f is

OF PRONUNCIATION.

f is sounded in neuf, nine, when it is alone, or at the end of a sentence;

j'en ai neuf.

f as v in neuf, nine, before a vowel.

neuf amis, neuf et demi.

f sounded in corne de cerf, beuf à la mode.

ff is as f, affaire, affront, officie, diffus.

G

g sounds hard, imo, at the end of words,

Agag, Gog, Magog, zig, zag.

zdo, when it is followed by another consonant.

glace, gracieux.

ztio, beforz a, o, u., gâteau, gai, gand, gond, Auguste.

g sounds soft, as j before e, i, y, gène, gens, gigot, gorge.

geai, gea, geu, as jai, ja, ju,

jugeai, mangea ga-geure, except é is accented, as géant.

g final, mute,

doigt, sang, rang, vingt.

g as k in sang and long, followed by a word beginning with a vowel, as

sang et eau, sang innocent, long espace.

gg as g j, suggestion, suggérer.

gh as g, Berghen, Ghilan. gn liquid, the g not much founded, mignon, regner, gagner, gagnages, agneau, magnifique.

g sounds in these words,

agnat, agnation, cognat, cognation, bagnau

Gnidien, Gnome, gnomonique, magnétique, progne, gnostique, magnétisme.

gu like g hard, the u not being sounded,

guérir, vague, guide, anguille, a ma guise;

but the u sounds in éguille, aiguifer, aigue, cigue, ambigué, ambiguïté,

contigue, continuité, arguer, aiguillée, aiguillette, aiguilletier, aiguillon, aiguilon, lonner, Aiguilon, (a town).

H

h, in general, is not sounded, as

homme, humilité, heroïne, heroïsme, heroïque, huit, huile, trahir, trahison, huitre, huissier, hostie, hote, hier, histoire, hyver, honneur, habit, habile, &c.

h is aspirated in about 156 words, as

haut, hauteur, héros, honte, haine, hair, hennir, hennissement, haleter, harangue, hareng, harpie, Henri, hola, &c.

L

l sounded at end of words, moral, Mogol, feul, pueril, fil, royal.

l is mute in cul,

cul, baril, fusil, ou-
til, senil, gril,
fournil, sourcil,
pouls, fils, quel-
que, quelquefois,
quelqu'un, che-
nil, gentil, gen-
tils hommes,
saoul, operfil, nom-
bril.

il liquid in
avril, babil, mil,
(millet) Brefil,
peril, contil.

il as eel in English,
in
civil, mil, profil, Nil,
pistil, subtil, vil,
viril, volatil.

ill beginning and
middle of these
words denotes il,
illustre, illicite, il-
légitime.

ill as single l, in
Achille, ville, mille,
imbecille, pupille,
tranquille, distil-
ler, vaciller, mil-
lenaire.

ill liquid, somewhat
like il, in
million in English,
in fille, filon, pe-
rilleux, merveil-
leux, billard.

l and ll liquid in
these improper
diphthongs,
ail, aill, eil, eill,
ueil, euil, ouil,
ouill, de l'ail,

travailler, mail,
soleil, eveiller,
deuil, recueil, fe-
nouil, bouillir,
vermeil, fouiller.

Il liquid in
Nulli, Sulli.
lh liquid in these
two proper names
Milhaut, Pardalhac.

M
m is generally dou-
bled after im,
com, gom, pom,
hom, som.

immortel, immoler,
commutation,
gomme, pomme,
homme, nom-
mer, nommé-
ment, dilemme,
femme, sommer,
sommet.

mm is single in ma-
ny words,
commis commetre,
commode.

agréable, une
personne non é-
claire, citoyen
habile, ira-t-on
à Paris? prenez
en un qui soit
bon, je fais bien
où vous allez.

n final is not nasal
in an adjective
followed by its
substantive that
begins with a
vowel.

mon ami, bon hi-
storien, un hom-
me, ancien etui,
pronounce

mon nami, bon hi-
storien, unom.

nn as single n,
anneau, année, con-
noitre, &c.

n is doubled in
annuel, annexer, an-
nal, annotation,
innover, and their
derivatives.

N

n final retains its
nasal sound in
substantives and
adverbs, though
followed by a
vowel.

intention excellente,
pain exquis, vin,

P
p final is mute, ex-
cept in

beaucoup and trop,
followed by a
vowel, drap,
loup, coup, trop,
entété, il a beau-
coup étudié.

p final is articulated
in

cap,

OF PRONUNCIATION.

cap, gap, ce, julep.
P sounded in these words,
baptismal, exemption, redemption, redempteur, Septante, Septentrion, Septantime, Septembre, Septénaire, Septennal, Septique, Septuaginaire, Septuagesime, accepter, excepter, and derivatives, &c.

p is mute in these words,

Sept, Pseaume, Pseautier, Psalmiste, Psaltérion, Psalmodier, corps, temps, ptifane, compte, prompt, manuscript, sculpter, sculpteur, sculpture, symptomé.

pp as p in most words, except proper nancies, opposer, sapper, frapper, Appius.

Q
q without u is found only in cinq, and coq. The q sounds in coq, but not in

coq d'Inde. It is mute in cinq, followed by a consonant, as cinq louis, found cinq louis; but at the end of a sentence, and before a word beginning with a vowel, it sounds, as cinq écus, j'en ai cinq.

qu as k, qui, que, qualité, qualifier, quintal, quelque.

qu as ku in équateur, equation, quadrature, quadraginaire, quadragesime, and words beginning with quadr and quater, aquatique, aquatile; in quarto, questeur, equesteur, quinquagesime, équiangle, équidistant, liquation, liquefaction, quintuple.

R
r final is founded in monosyllables, and in the infinitives of verbs ending in ir, oir, re,

car, chèr, fier, mèr.
r final is founded in words ending in ar, air, or, ur, aur, eur, our, art, er, Colmar, écart, éclair, tresor, obscur, Labour, secours, faveur, le Sieur, rieur, hier, magister, ethèr, hyver, Esther, Abnèr, cuillèr, frater.

r final is not founded in a variety of polysyllables. in er and ier, boulanger, horloger, pâtissier, amandier chantier parler.

r is dropt in notre and votre, before a word beginning with a consonant, as notre maison, votre maison; but the r is sounded in notre dame.

rr as r arrofer, arriver, perruque.

r is double in arroger, arrogant, errer, erreur, errata, errant, and in the futures and conditionals of courir, mourir, acquerir, courrai, courrois,

courrois, mourrai, &c.

irr is doubled in irradiation, irraisonable, irréprochable.

r is generally double after a, e, o. r in the infinitives of verbs in er is not sounded, except when followed by a vowel.

chanter un air, chanter et rire.

r final is mute in Monsieur.

S
s has the hissing found at the beginning of words, and when it precedes or follows a consonant, and in compound words, sel, salle, vaste, verser, abstenir, persécuter, préscendance parasol, monosyllable, présupposer, dysenterie, resortir, refaisir, resusciter, but not in resurrection.

s has the hissing found in un as, une vis, l'iris, le cens, and in foreign names

and words, Pallas, Cerès, Bacchus, Josias, Venus, Mars, anus, Agnus, bis, bolus, calus, gratis, rebus, Phaebus, fetus, blocus, ore-mus, sinus, virus, Themis, Jacobus, Rheims, Sens, aloes.

s sounds z between two vowels, and in words that begin with trans, Maison, ôser, baiser, transfaction, transition; and in Alsace.

s commonly in the middle of words is sounded z before b, d, v, g, and has its hissing sound before f, m, p, qu, t, Asdrubal, prêtre, jasmin, presque, austère, transfir.

s final sounds z before a word beginning with a vowel,

vous avez, les hommes, des ordres.

s final is commonly mute, unless the next word begin with a vowel.

des faits, avoys,

sages, amis. s is mute in Christ preceded by Jesus, sound Jezu Chri; but the st sounds in Christ.

T
ti before a, e, o, in the middle of words, sounds fs, Martial, patience, patienter, action, diction, dictionnaire, portion, initier, balbutier, je balbutie, prophétie, quotient, minutie, ineptie, Croatie, Venetien, Capétien, Egyptien, Gratien, Domitien, Abbatial, facétieux, ambition, ambitieux, satiéte, insatiable.

sti, xti, thi, soun'd ti, Question, mixtion, Sébastien, Ephestion, combustion, digestion, Mathias.

t has its real sound in nouns ending in tié, tier, and tie.

Amitié, pitié, altier, chantier, partie, repentie; and in châier,

OF PONUNCIATION.

châtier, and parts of verbs ending in tions, tiez, as nous etions, vous portions, vous portiez, vous etiez, nous mettions, vous mettiez.
 t has its natural sound in Chrétien, soutien, maintien, antienne, Eti-enne ; and in jetiens, and all its compounds.
 t final is mute, il bat, il lit, haut.
 t is sounded in dot, sept, huit, ouest, fat, brut, zenith, rapt, Apt, (town) indult, un zest, vent d'est, paët, taët, correct, direct.
 gt mute in vingt, quatrevingt, without substantives, or followed by a substantive that begins with a consonant ; ils étoient vingt, quatrevingt, deux, vingt Louis.
 But the t sounds before a vowel, as vint, elephants.
 t in sept, huit, is mute, followed by a noun that begins with a consonant, sept

freres, huit, vo-lumes.
 t is always mute in et, and
 t is mute in aspect, circumspèct, sus-pect.
 t final commonly is sounded before a word beginning with a vowel.
 t double as t single, except in Attique, Atticisme, cet and cette, like st before a vowel.

X
 x sounds as es or gz. It has the articulation of cs in proper names, and in words ending in ax, ex, ix, ox, ux, inx, Xenophon, Xerxes, borax, index, prefix, Pol-lux, Sphinx, Alexandre, Axiome, expert, sexe, fixer.

x sounds gz in words beginning with ex, followed by a vowel, or h mute, examen, exercer, exil, Exode, exorde, ex-humer.

x like fs in Soixante, Auxerre, Aux-oune, Bruxelles,

Aix, Cadix, and in fix and dix, not attended with any noun or pronoun, as j'en ai fix ou dix, fix et quatre font dix.

x sounds z in deu-xième, syzième, dixième, fixain, dixaine.

x sounds z in dix, fix, following nouns and pronouns beginning with vowels ; fix amis, dix écus, and in dix-huit, dix-neuf, dix-hui-tiènte, dix-neuvième.

x final sounds z before a word beginning with a vowel or h mute, as, aux hommes, paix honorable, aux animaux, chevaux alertes, faux accord, je veux y aller.

Z
 Is generally mute at the end of words after an e, to which it gives the sound of close é as assez, cessez.

tz as fs in Metz, Retz, Dantzique.

Mr

Mr Voltaire and a few modern authors write *ai* instead of *oi* in words where *oi* sounds *è* or *ay*; thus,

| | | |
|---------------|------------|----------------|
| Ecoſſais | Instead of | Ecoſſois |
| Anglais | | Anglois |
| Irlandais | | Irlandois |
| Francais | | François |
| J'avais | | J'avois |
| Ils parlaient | | Ils parloient. |

D

FRENCH

FRENCH RUDIMENTS.

WE shall begin by some preliminary definitions for the use of those who are not acquainted with the dead languages.

Grammar teaches the art of rightly expressing our thoughts by words.

Grammar in general, or Universal Grammar, explains the principles which are common to all languages.

The Grammar of any particular language, as the French Grammar, applies these common principles to that language, according to the established usage and custom.

Rudiments, the title of this performance, are plain and easy instructions, teaching beginners the first principles of the French Language.

The province of Grammar is to treat of sentences, and of the several parts of which they are compounded.

Sentences consist of words, words of one or more syllables, syllables of one or more letters.

Therefore letters, syllables, words, and sentences, make up the whole subject of Grammar.

As to the letters, syllables, and sounds of the French language, they have been fully investigated in the syllabus, which is chiefly taken from a book published in 1760, at Paris, entitled ‘*Traité des sons de la Langue Françoise.*’

P A R T II.

WORDS.

WORDS are articulated sounds used and established by common consent, as signs or representatives of our ideas.

In French, as in English, there are nine parts of speech, under which all sorts of words are arranged.

1. The ARTICLE is prefixed to common names of things, to represent them in a general, specific, or individual sense, as *the animals, the animal, an animal.*

In English there are but two articles, *the* and *a*.
a becomes *an* before a vowel, *y* and *w* excepted ; and before
a silent *h* preceding a vowel.

In French, *the* is represented by *le*, *la*, *l'*, *les* ; and *a* or *an*, by
un, *une*.

2. NOUN SUBSTANTIVE is the name of a person, or thing, as
George, *knife*, *George*, *couteau*.

3. NOUN ADJECTIVE is the quality added to the Noun Sub-
stantive, as *a good knife*, *un bon couteau*.

4. PRONOUN is used instead of Names, or Nouns, as *I*, *me*,
thou, *thee*, *he*, *him*, *she*, *her*, *it*, *we*, *us*, *you*, *they*, *them* ; *Je*, *me*, *tu*,
te, *elle*, &c.

5. VERB denotes the case of the person or thing spoken of,
what that person or thing does and receives, as, *The true Christian* is *easy in mind* ; *he* will be *happy in the next world*. The
words *is*, *will be*, denote what is, and what will be, the case of
the true Christian. The word *he* is a pronoun, because it stands
for *the true Christian*.

When we say, *God will reward good people*, the words *will re-
ward* shew what God will do. And if I say, *the courtiers have
been insulted by the ministers*, the words *have been insulted*, ex-
press what the courtiers have received ? that is to say, *insults*
from the ministers.

6. THE ADVERB is added to verbs, adjectives, and other ad-
verbs, to express some circumstance that belongs to them.
Many of the adverbs in English are formed by adding *ly* to the
adjectives, as *proud*, *proudly*. You can form adjectives of *quali-
ty* and *manner* in French, by adding *ment* to the adjectives, as
aisé *easy*; *aisement* *easily*.

7. PREPOSITION is put before nouns, pronouns, and even
verbs, to denote the different relations they have to words ; as
*Monsieur Turenne having led his army into the Palatinate, began his
campaign about the end of winter, in order to get the start of the en-
emies*. The word *into* shews a relation of place ; *about*, expresses
a relation of time ; *in order*, shews the motive that induced Mr
Turenne.

8. CONJUNCTION joins sentences together, as *and* *et*, *when*
quand, *but* *mais*, &c.

9. INTERJECTION shews the affection or emotion of the mind,
expressive of joy, grief, passion, fear, &c. as *ah ! huzza ! alas !*

In

In French, the first five parts of speech are susceptible of variations, and are called *declinable*; the four last have no variations, and are therefore called *indeclinable*. In English, the adjective is always indeclinable.

The French nouns have gender, number, and case.

There are two genders in French, *masculine* and *feminine*. The sign of the masculine is *le* the, or *un* a or an. The sign of the feminine is *la* the, or *une* a or an.

The English signs of genders are *he* for the masculine, *she* for the feminine, and *it* for the neuter.

There are two numbers, the *singular* and *plural*. The singular number denotes one single thing only, as *le livre* the book. The plural denotes two or more things, as *les livres* the books.

The French use the articles, *le*, *la*, *l'*, *les*, *du*, *de la*, *de l'*, *des*, *au*, *à la*, *à l'*, *aux*, *de*, *à*, &c. to express the different connections or relations that nouns have with one another.

The Greeks and Latins expressed these relations by the different terminations of their nouns, which they called Cases.

Though the French have no cases distinguished by different terminations of their nouns, yet we choose to retain the word *case* for the sake of those who have studied Latin. They can be easily understood by those even who are ignorant of the dead languages. There are four cases in the French: the *first* case corresponds to the nominative of the Latins; the *second* case to the genitive; and the *third* case to the dative; the *fourth*, or accusative case, in French, is the same as the nominative or first case. But in the pronouns, personal or relative, we shall find a distinct fourth or accusative case, as *me*, *te*, *se*, *nous*, *vous*, *le*, *la*, *l'*, *les*, and *que*.

A noun is known to be in the *first case*, or nominative, when it takes the lead in a sentence, and is the cause of the action performed: and the action performed is the fourth, or accusative case, as *God has created the world*. *Dieu* a crée le monde. *Dieu*, God, takes the lead in this sentence, and is the cause of the action performed. Therefore, *Dieu*, God, is the nominative, or first case; *monde*, world, is the action performed; therefore *monde*, world, is the fourth or accusative case.

The second, or genitive, or ablative case, is known when nouns are preceded by *au*, *de la*, *de l'*, *des*, *de*; of, from, by, with the, or only by *of*, *from*, *by*, *with*.

The third case, or dative, is known when nouns are preceded by *au*, *à la*, *à l'*, *aux*, *à*, &c. to, at, the, or only to, at.

C H A P. I.

ON THE ARTICLES.

THE French articles prefixed to nouns, or names of beings, or things, determine the sense in which these nouns are taken.

The sense is general, particular, individual, and partitive.

The general or universal sense includes the whole species of the thing signified by the word. Therefore words, in that widest sense, are preceded by *le*, *la*, *l'*, *les*, and their cases. That article may be called the GENERAL ARTICLE, as *les bêtes même nous apprennent à être reconnoissants*; the beasts even teach us to be grateful. The article *les*, the, denotes all the beasts. An English noun, without the article *the*, often denotes also the widest sense of the words, as *men are born for society*, men means all men; therefore *men*, translated into French, must have the general article before it, *les hommes*.

The same articles, *le*, *la*, *l'*, *les*, and their cases, particularise one object from another; as *l'homme qui m'a rendu ce service*, the man who did me that service; *l'*, the, specifies the particular person who served me.

The individual sense is known by *un*, *une*, *a* or *an*, which determines the noun to be one single being or thing of the kind, leaving it still uncertain which; as *un homme m'a dit que vous serez puni*; a man told me that you will be punished. *Un homme*, a man; that is to say, one single man; and it is left uncertain which man it is. We shall call, therefore, this article *un*, *une*, the Individual article.

The partitive sense is when nouns are restricted in the extent of their signification from a whole to a part of themselves; and this partitive sense is rendered into French by *du*, *de la*, *de l'*, *des*, and by *de* if the adjective precedes the substantive; as *il vend du sucre, de la biere, de l' ambregris, des épices, et de bon vin*; he sells sugar, beer, ambergris, spiceries, and good wine. *Du*, *de la*, *de l'*, *des*, *de*, restrict these words only to some, and not all the sugar, all the beer, &c. Mons. Buffier says, that the word *une partie* is understood; *une partie du sucre, de la biere, &c.* That being the case, we may call *du*, *de la*, *de l'*, *des*, *de*, the partitive article.

An

ON THE ARTICLES.

An article in French is said to be declined, when its different variations are pointed out. Though some of them have no variations, yet we say they are declined when they have *de* and *à* before them.

Declension of the General and particular, or Specific Article.

| | Singular Number. | Plural Number. |
|--------|------------------|-----------------------------|
| | Masc. Fem. | Masc. & Fem. For both Gend. |
| Cases. | 1st, le | la |
| 2d, | du | de la |
| 3d, | au | à la |
| 4th, | le | la |
| | | l', |
| | | l', |
| | | l', |
| | | les |
| | | des |
| | | aux |
| | | les |
| | | the |
| | | of, from, by, with, the |
| | | to, at, the |
| | | the |

Le and its cases are used before nouns of the masculine gender beginning with a consonant, or *h* sounded, as *le Roi*, the King, *le héros*, the hero. *La* and its cases are used before feminine nouns beginning with a consonant or *h* sounded, as *la Reine*, the Queen, *la haine*, the hatred. *L'* and its cases are used before nouns masculine or feminine beginning with a vowel, or *h* not sounded, as *l'ordre*, the order, *l'homme*, the man.

Les, *des*, *aux*, are used before nouns in the plural number, whether these nouns begin with a vowel or a consonant, and of whatever gender they be.

Names of virtues, vices, metals, sciences, arts, and countries, are generally declined with the articles *le*, *la*, *l'*, *les*, and are not Englished by *the*.

Proper names, and names of towns, are declined with *de of*, *from*, *by*, *with*, and *à to, at*; and the *e* is cut off from *de* before a word beginning with a vowel or *h* mute.

Example of a Noun Masculine in the Particular Sense.

| | Singular Number. | Plural Number. |
|--------|------------------|--|
| Cases. | 1. le Roi | the King les Rois |
| | 2. du Roi | of, from, by, with the King des Rois of, &c. the Kings |
| | 3. au Roi | to at the King aux Rois to, at the Kings |
| | 4. le Roi | King les Rois |
| | | the Kings |

Example

ON THE ARTICLES.

31

Example of a Noun Feminine, in the Particular Sense.

Singular Number.

Plural Number.

| | | | | |
|--------|--------------------------------------|--------------------------|-------------------------------|-------------------|
| Cases. | 1. la table | <i>the table</i> | les tables | <i>the tables</i> |
| 2. | de la table <i>of, from, &c.</i> | <i>the table</i> | des tables <i>of, &c.</i> | <i>the tables</i> |
| 3. | à la table <i>to, at the table</i> | <i>aux tables to, at</i> | <i>the tables</i> | |
| 4. | la table | <i>the table</i> | les tables | <i>the tables</i> |

Example of a Noun beginning with a Vowel.

Singular Number.

Plural Number.

| | | | | |
|--------|------------------------------------|--------------------------|-------------------------------|-------------------|
| Cases. | 1. l'ordre | <i>the order</i> | les ordres | <i>the orders</i> |
| 2. | de l'ordre <i>of, from &c.</i> | <i>the order</i> | des ordres <i>of, &c.</i> | <i>the orders</i> |
| 3. | à l'ordre <i>to, at the order</i> | <i>aux ordres to, at</i> | <i>the orders</i> | |
| 4. | l'ordre | <i>the order</i> | les ordres | <i>the orders</i> |

Example of a Noun beginning with h not Sounded.

Singular Number.

Plural Number.

| | | | | |
|--------|------------------------------------|-------------------|-------------------------------|-----------------|
| Cases. | 1. l'huile | <i>the oil</i> | les huiles | <i>the oils</i> |
| 2. | de l'huile <i>of, from &c.</i> | <i>the oil</i> | des huiles <i>of, &c.</i> | <i>the oils</i> |
| 3. | à l'huile <i>to, at the oil</i> | <i>aux huiles</i> | <i>to, at the oils</i> | |
| 4. | l'huile | <i>the oil</i> | les huiles | <i>the oils</i> |

Example of a Noun Masculine, beginning with h Sounded.

Singular Number.

Plural Number.

| | | | | |
|--------|----------------------------------|------------------|------------------------------|-------------------|
| Cases. | 1. le héros | <i>the hero</i> | les héros | <i>the heroes</i> |
| 2. | du héros <i>of, from &c.</i> | <i>the hero</i> | des héros <i>of, &c.</i> | <i>the heroes</i> |
| 3. | au héros <i>to, at the hero</i> | <i>aux héros</i> | <i>to, at the heroes</i> | |
| 4. | le héros | <i>the hero</i> | les héros | <i>the heroes</i> |

Example of a Noun Feminine, beginning with h Sounded.

Singular Number.

Plural Number.

| | | | | |
|--------|--|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|---------------------|
| Cases. | 1. la harangue | <i>the speech</i> | les harangues | <i>the speeches</i> |
| 2. | de la harangue <i>of, &c.</i> | <i>the speech</i> | des harangues <i>of, &c.</i> | |
| 3. | à la harangue <i>to, at the speech</i> | <i>aux harangues to, &c.</i> | | |
| 4. | la harangue | <i>the speech</i> | les harangues | <i>the speeches</i> |

Example.

ON THE ARTICLES.

Example of a Noun in the General or Widest Sense.

| | Singular Number. | Plural Number. | |
|--------|----------------------------------|---|------------|
| Cafes. | 1. l'homme | man les hommes | men |
| | 2. de l'homme <i>of, &c.</i> | man des hommes <i>of, from, &c.</i> | men |
| | 3. à l'homme | to at, man aux hommes | to, at men |
| | 4. l'homme | man les hommes | men |

Example of Virtues, Vices, &c.

| | Singular Number. | Singular Number. | |
|--------|-------------------------------------|--|---------------|
| Cafes. | 1. la charité | charity l'ingratitnde | ingratitdue |
| | 2. de la charité <i>of, &c.</i> | charity de l'ingratitdue <i>of, &c. ing.</i> | |
| | 3. à la charité | to, at charity à l'ingratitdue | to ingratis. |
| | 4. la charité | charity l'ingratitdue | ingratitdue |
| Cafes. | 1. l'or | gold la France | France |
| | 2. de l'or <i>of, &c.</i> | gold de la France <i>of, from, &c.</i> | France |
| | 3. à l'or | to, at gold à la France | to, at France |
| | 4. l'or | gold la France | France |

Example of Proper Names and Names of Towns, declined with *de, à.*

| | | | |
|--------|----------------------------------|---|--------------|
| | Singular Number. | Plural Number. | |
| Cafes. | 1. Jean | John Jacques | James |
| | 2. de Jean <i>of, &c.</i> | John de Jacques, <i>of, by, &c.</i> | James |
| | 3. à Jean | John à Jacques | to, at James |
| | 4. Jean | John Jacques | James |
| Cafes. | 1. Londres | London Paris | Paris |
| | 2. de Londres <i>of, &c.</i> | London de Paris <i>of, by, &c.</i> | Paris |
| | 3. à Londres | London à Paris | to, at Paris |
| | 4. Londres | London Paris | Paris |

Declension of the INDIVIDUAL ARTICLE.

| | Singular Number. | Plural Number. | |
|--------|-----------------------------------|--|--------|
| | Masc. Fem. | Masc. & Fem. | |
| Cafes. | 1. un, une | a or an des | |
| | 2. d'un, d'une <i>of, &c.</i> | a or an de or d' <i>of, from, with, by</i> | |
| | 3. à un, à une | to, at a or an à des | to, at |
| | 4. un, une | a or an des | |

EXAMPLES.

ON THE ARTICLES.

33

EXAMPLES.

Singular Number.

Plural Number.

| | | | | |
|--------|--------------------------------------|------------------|--------------|---------------------|
| Cafés. | 1. un livre | <i>a book</i> | des livres | books |
| | 2. d'un livre <i>of, by, &c.</i> | <i>a book</i> | de livres | <i>of, by books</i> |
| | 3. à un livre | <i>to a book</i> | à des livres | <i>to, at books</i> |
| | 4. un livre | <i>a book</i> | des livres | <i>books</i> |

| | | | | |
|--------|---------------------------------------|-----------------------|--------------|---------------------------|
| Cafés. | 1. une livre | <i>a pound</i> | des livres | pounds |
| | 2. d'une livre <i>of, by, &c.</i> | <i>a pound</i> | de livres | <i>of, &c. pounds</i> |
| | 3. à une livre | <i>to, at a pound</i> | à des livres | <i>to pounds</i> |
| | 4. une livre | <i>a pound</i> | des livres | <i>pounds</i> |

Declension of the PARTITIVE ARTICLE.

Singular Number.

Plural Number.

| | Masc. | Fem. | Masc. et Fem. | |
|--------|---------|---------|---------------|-------|
| Cafés. | 1. du | de la | de l' | des |
| | 3. à du | à de la | à de l' | à des |
| | 4. du | de la | de l' | des |

EXAMPLES.

Singular Number.

Plural Number.

| | | | |
|--------|--------------|---------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| Cafés. | 1. du pain | <i>bread, some bread</i> | des pains <i>loaves, some loaves</i> |
| | 3. à du pain | <i>to, at bread, some bread</i> | à des pains <i>to loaves</i> |
| | 4. du pain | <i>bread, some bread</i> | des pains <i>loaves</i> |

| | | | | |
|--------|-------------------|--------------------|---------------|-----------------|
| Cafés. | 1. de la viande | <i>meat</i> | des viandes | <i>meats</i> |
| | 3. à de la viande | <i>to, at meat</i> | à des viandes | <i>to meats</i> |
| | 4. de la viande | <i>meat</i> | des viandes | <i>meats</i> |

| | | | | |
|--------|---------------|---------------------|------------|----------------------|
| Cafés. | 1. de l'eau | <i>water</i> | des eaux | <i>waters</i> |
| | 3. à de l'eau | <i>to, at water</i> | à des eaux | <i>to, at waters</i> |
| | 4. de l'eau | <i>water</i> | des eaux | <i>waters</i> |

E

de

ON THE ARTICLES.

de represents the PARTITIVE SENSE when an Adjective precedes the Substantive.

Singular Number.

Plural Number.

| | | | | |
|--------|------------------|---------------|-----------------|----------------|
| Cafes. | 1. de bon pain | good bread | de bons pains | good loaves |
| | 3. à de bon pain | to good bread | à de bons pains | to good loaves |
| | 4. de bon pain | good bread | de bons pains | good loaves |

| | | | | |
|--------|----------------------|--------------|---------------------|-----------|
| Cafes. | 1. de bonne viande | good meat | de bonnes viandes | good, &c. |
| | 3. à de bonne viande | to good meat | à de bonnes viandes | to, &c. |
| | 4. de bonne viande | good meat | de bonnes viandes | good, &c. |

C H A P. II.

OF NOUNS SUBSTANTIVE.

A Substantive, or noun Substantive, is the name of a person, of any being, object, or thing, or whatever we conceive in any way to exist, or of which we have any notion, as *Henri*, *Henry*; *l'homme*, the man; *l'animal*, the animal; *la maison*, the house.

The noun substantive is susceptible of gender and number.

Things are considered, in French, with relation to the distinction of sex or gender, as being male or female. Hence, substantives are of the masculine or feminine gender. The sign of the masculine gender is *le*, the, or *un*, a. The sign of the feminine gender is *la*, the, or *une*, a.

G E N D E R.

As the rules to know the genders of the French substantives are attended with such number of exceptions, we shall only make a few general observations on them.

Nouns relating to males are masculine, and those relating to females are feminine.

Nouns ending in nasal *an*, *anc*, *ant*, *ang*, *ens*, *ent*, *mens*, *ment*, are masculine, except *une dent* a tooth.

Nouns

Nouns ending in *ain*, *ain*, *in*, *ins*, *ien*, *oin*, *uin*, are masculine, except *la main*, the hand, *la fin*, the end, *la faim*, hunger.

Substantives that end in *tié* or *té* are feminine, as *la pitié*, pity, *la piété*, piety; except *le côté*, the side, *un pâté*, a pie, *un traité*, a treaty, *un comité*, a committee, *du thé*, tea, *un comté*, a county, *un été*, a summer.

Nouns ending in *eur* and *eure*, are feminine, except *bonheur*, *malheur*, *le cœur*, *un choeur*, *honneur*, *deshonneur*, *l'équateur*, *l'extérieur*, *l'intérieur*, *le beurre*, *le leurre*.

Names of metals, winds, trees, days, months, and seasons, are masculine, except *automne*, autumn, and names of months or words that take *mi*, half, before them, as *la mi-Aout*, the middle of August, *la mi-carême*, mid-lent.

Names of fruits and garden stuffs ending in *e* mute are feminine, as *une pomme*, an apple, *une rave*, a raddish. But, when such nouns do not end in *e* mute, they are masculine, as *le pois*, the pea, *le choux*, the cabbage. The same rule holds with regard to names of fishes, reptiles, and insects.

Names of holidays are feminine, because *la fête*, the feast, or *messe*, mass, is understood, as *la St Martin*, Martinmas, instead of saying, *la fête* or *la messe de St Martin*.

Names of countries and provinces, ending in *e* mute, are feminine; if they end any other way, they are masculine, except *le Mexique*, Mexico, *le Perche*, *le Rouergue*.

Nouns ending in *age*, *uge*, *acle*, *ème*, *aume*, *ôme*, *isme*, are masculine, except *une cage*, a cage, *rage*, rage, *image*, an image, *page*, page of a book, *une plage*, a flat shore, *de la crème*, cream, *la paume*, the palm of the hand.

Nouns ending *son*, or *con*, and all those ending in nasal *on*, that have not *i*, or *s*, or *z* before *on*, are masculine, except *la boisson*, drink, drinking, *la moisson*, the harvest, *la façon*, fashion or make, *une leçon*, a lesson, *la rançon*, the ransom.

Nouns ending in *ion* and *son* after a vowel, are feminine, except *un million*, a million *un pion*, a man at chess or draughts, *le Septentrion*, the north, *du poison*, poison, *un gason*, a green plot, *l'horison*, the horizon, *un tison*, a fire-brand, *le blason*, heraldry, *un oïson*, a young goose, *un peson*, a weighing machine.

Nouns ending in *ail*, *al*, *eil*, *el*, *oeil*, *ueil*, and all nouns in the last syllable of which is *a*, followed by one or many consonants, are masculine, except *une part*, a part, *une hart*, the band of a faggot.

Nouns ending in *eu*, *ieu*, *au*, *eau*, are masculine, except *de l'eau* water, *la peau*, the skin.

Nouns whose last syllable is in *o* followed by any consonant are masculine, except *une dot*, a portion, *la mort*, death.

Nouns ending in *i* or *ui*, alone or followed by any consonant, are masculine, except *une brebis* a sheep, *une fourmi*, an ant, *une souris*, a mouse, *une vis*, a screw, *la nuit*, the night ; but *minuit*, midnight, is masculine.

Nouns ending in *ace*, *asse*, *aille*, *elle*, *ile*, *ille*, *uille*, *euelle*, *iffe*, and *ife*, or *ize*, are feminine, except *un cure-oreille*, an ear-picker, *un perce-oreille*, an ear-wig ; except also a few words in *ile* and *ille*, as *un azile*, *un codicile*, *un utensile*, *le cadrille*, *l'Evangile*, *un stile*, *le chile*, *un vaudeville*, *un domicile*, *un crocodile*, and in *euelle*, *du chevre-feuille*, *un porte-feuille*.

Nouns ending in *ou*, either alone, or followed by a consonant, are masculine, except *la cour*, the court, *une tour*, a tower.

Nouns ending in *é* without *t* before it, as also those in *e*, followed by any consonant, with those in *ier*, *ais*, *ois*, *air*, *oir*, *ait*, and *ay*, *ays*, are masculine, except *une clé*, or *clef* a key, *une cuillér*, a spoon, *la forêt* the forest, *la mer*, the sea, *la nef*, the nave or body of a church.

Nouns in *ance*, *anse*, *ence*, *ense*, are feminine, except *le silence*, silence.

Nouns ending in *x* are feminine, except *le prix*, the value, *le faix*, the weight, *le choix*, the choice, *le flux et reflux*, the flowing and ebbing of the sea, *du borax*, borax.

Nouns in *ée*, *aie*, or *aye*, *ie*, and *ue*, *oe*, or *oye*, *oue*, and *ue* are feminine, as *de la soie*, silk ; except, *l'empyrée*, the highest heaven, *l'himénée*, wedlock, *lycée*, lycéum, *mausolée*, a tomb, *un trophée*, a trophy ; *genie*, genius, *incendie*, a conflagration, *le Messie*, the Messiah ; *un parapluie*, an umbrella, *le foie*, the liver.

Nouns in *igue*, *ougue*, *oure*, *ine*, *une*, *ure*, *iere*, *ire*, are feminine, except *un augure*, an omen, *un murmure*, a murmur, *du mercure*, mercury, *un parjure*, perjury, *les colures*, the coluri, *le délire*, delirium, *navire*, a ship, *un empire*, an empire, *du porphire*, porphyry.

Nouns whose last syllable is in *u* alone, or followed by any consonant, are masculine, except *de la glu*, birdlime, *la vertu*, virtue, *une tribu*, a tribe.

Names of rivers that end in *e* mute are feminine ; if they end any

any other way, they are masculine, as *le Rhin, la Tamise*; to this rule there are several exceptions, as *le Rhone, le Tibre, le Danube*.

Infinitives of verbs and adjectives used substantively; nouns of number, ordinal, and distributive; adverbs and prepositions taken substantively, are masculine, as *le boire et le manger*, drinking and eating, *le rouge*, red, *un deux*, a two, *le devant*, before, *un quart*, a fourth, *le peu*, the little.

Formation of the Plural Number of Nouns.

GENERAL RULE.

The plural number of Nouns, either substantives or adjectives, is formed by adding *s* to the singular, as,

| Singular. | Plural. |
|-----------|---------|
|-----------|---------|

| | |
|----------------------------|------------------------------|
| <i>la grammaire</i> | <i>les grammairies</i> |
| <i>the grammar</i> | <i>the grammars</i> |
| <i>une bonne grammaire</i> | <i>de bonnes grammairies</i> |
| <i>a good grammar</i> | <i>good grammars</i> |

Nouns that end in *s*, *x*, or *z*, are the same for the plural, as

| Singular. | Plural. |
|-----------|---------|
|-----------|---------|

| | | | |
|----------------|-------------------|-----------------|--------------------|
| <i>le fils</i> | <i>the son</i> | <i>les fils</i> | <i>the sons</i> |
| <i>la noix</i> | <i>the walnut</i> | <i>les noix</i> | <i>the walnuts</i> |
| <i>le nez</i> | <i>the nose</i> | <i>les nez</i> | <i>the noses</i> |

Nouns ending in *au, eau, eu, oeu, ieu, and ou*, take *x* instead of *s* in the plural.

| | | | |
|----------------|------------------|-----------------|-----------------------|
| <i>l'eau</i> | <i>the water</i> | <i>les eaux</i> | <i>the waters</i> |
| <i>nouveau</i> | <i>new</i> | <i>nouveaux</i> | <i>new, adjective</i> |
| <i>feu</i> | <i>fire</i> | <i>feux</i> | <i>fires</i> |

vœu

OF NOUNS SUBSTANTIVE.

| | | | |
|---------|-------|----------|--------|
| voeu | vow | voeux | vows |
| lieu | place | lieux | places |
| caillou | flint | cailloux | flints |
| Dieu | God | Dieux | Gods |

But *trou* a hole, *cou* neck, *clou* a nail, *fibou* a pick-pocket, *fou* a fool, *matou* a large cat, *hibou* an owl, *licou* a halter, *loup-garou* a were-wolf, *bleu* blue, *mou* soft, are regular, and take *s* for the plural instead of *x*.

Nouns ending in *al* and *ai!* change *al* and *ai!* into *aux*, as

| | |
|-----------|---------|
| Singular. | Plural. |
|-----------|---------|

| | | | |
|---------|---------|---------|----------|
| mal | evil | maux | evils |
| travail | work | travaux | works |
| amiral | admiral | amiraux | admirals |

But the following nouns are regular in the plural :

| | | | |
|-------------|---------------|---------|-------------------|
| bal | ball | portail | porch |
| camail | a short cloak | poitail | breast of a horse |
| detail | detail | regal | treat |
| éventail | fan | cal | callousness |
| épouvantail | scare-crow | féraïl | seraglio |
| gouvernail | rudder | féraïl | old iron |

These adjectives have no plural in use in the masculine gender ;

| | | | |
|----------|----------|---------|---------|
| austral | southern | frugal | frugal |
| boréal | northern | joyial | joyial |
| conjugal | conjugal | martial | martial |
| fatal | fatal | litéral | literal |
| filial | filial | natal | native |
| final | final | naval | naval |
| pastoral | pastoral | vénal | venal |

Ayeul

OF NOUNS SUBSTANTIVE.

39

Ayeul grandfather, *ciel* heaven, *oeil* eye, make their plurals, *ayeux, cieux, yeux.* *Betail*, cattle, in the plural, is *bestiaux.*

We say, *des ciels de lit* the testers of a bed, *des ciels* clouds in painting, *des oeils de boeufs,* ovals.

When a noun is compounded of a substantive and adjective, the substantive and adjective take both the mark of the plural, as *un arc-boutant* a buttress, *des arcs-boutants* buttresses, *gentilhomme, gentils-hommes, Monsieur, Madame, Mademoiselle, Monseigneur, Messieurs, Mesdames, Mesdemoiselles, Messeigneurs.*

When compound nouns are formed by a preposition, or a verb and a noun, the noun alone takes the mark of the plural, as *un avant-coureur*, a forerunner, *des avant-coureurs* forerunners.

When a compound word consists of two nouns, united by a preposition, the first of the two nouns ought only to have the mark of the plural, as *un chef d'oeuvre* a masterly performance, a trial piece, *des chefs d'oeuvre* masterly performances, *un arc-en-ciel* a rain-bow, *des arcs-en-ciel*, rain-bows.

CHAP.

CHAP. III.

OF THE ADJECTIVE.

THE Adjective is the quality added to the noun or name of any person or thing. In French, it is susceptible of number and gender, in order to make it agree with the substantive to which it is joined. We have said before, that the plural number of the adjective is formed by adding *s* to the singular. If the adjectives end in *al*, *eau*, their plural masculine ends in *aux*, *eaux*, as *un conte moral* a moral tale, *des contes moraux* moral tales, *un beau palais* a beautiful palace, *de beaux palais* beautiful palaces. But the adjectives whose feminine genders end in *ale*, or *elle*, form their plural number regularly, by adding an *s*, as *des regles generales* general rules, *de belles maisons* fine houses.

Of the Gender of the Adjectives.

GENERAL RULE.

To form the feminine gender of adjectives, and all participles preterite, except *été* been which is indeclinable, add *e* mute to the masculine, as *un homme prudent* a prudent man, *une femme prudente* a prudent woman, *un homme estimé*, *une femme estimée*. When the adjective ends in *e* mute, it is the same for both genders, as *c'est un homme aimable* he is an amiable man, *c'est une femme aimable* she is an amiable woman.

EXCEPTIONS.

imo, *Favori*, a favourite, makes *favorite* in the feminine, and *beni*, blessed, is *benite*, only in this expression, *de l'eau benite*, holy water; for in all other cases it follows the general rule.

2do, Adjectives in *c* are only seven in number, *blanc* white, *franc* free, *attract*, downright, *sec*, dry, *caduc*, frail, *Grec*, Greek, *public*, public, *Turc*, Turkish, have their feminines ending, the three

three first in *che*, and the four last in *que*, making *blanche, franche, sèche, cadaque, Grèque, publique, Turque*.

3to, Adjectives in *d*, as *nud*, naked, *crud*, raw, *verd*, green, have their feminines, *nue*, *crue*, *verte*; (the above are now written, *nu*, *cru*, *vert*, and follow the general rule.)

4to, Adjectives in *f*, change *f* into *ve*, as *neuf*, new, *neuve*, *bref*, short, *breve*, *long*, the only adjective in *g* makes *longue*.

5to, Of Adjectives ending with *l*, those which have an *a* or *i* before *l*, follow the general rule, as *fatal*, fatal, is *fatale*, *subtil*, *subtile*, is *subtile*, but *gentil*, genteel, in the feminine, is *gentille*.

The others which have *e*, *u*, or *ei*, before the *l*, double the final *l* with *e* mute, as *cruel*, *cruel*, *cruelle*, *nul*, no, *nulle*, *pareil*, alike, *pareille*.

6to, Of adjectives ending in *t*, those double *t* in their feminine, which have *e* or *o* before it; the others that have *i* or *a*, or an improper diphthong, or a consonant, follow the general rule, as

| M. | F. | M. | F. |
|--------------|---------|---------------|--------------------------|
| <i>net</i> | clean | <i>nette</i> | <i>ingrat</i> ungrateful |
| <i>sot</i> | foolish | <i>folle</i> | <i>droit</i> right |
| <i>petit</i> | little | <i>petite</i> | <i>constant</i> constant |

but *complet*, *discret*, *inquiet*, *prêt*, *replet*, *secret*, *devot*, only take *e* mute.

7°, Of adjectives ending with *n*, those only double *n* in their feminine, which have *o* before *n*, or end in *ien*, the others follow the general rule, as

| M. | F. | M. | F. |
|---------------|---------|-----------------|---------------------|
| <i>bon</i> | good | <i>bonne</i> | <i>divin</i> divine |
| <i>ancien</i> | ancient | <i>ancienne</i> | <i>plein</i> full |

8°. Adjectives ending with *as*, *ais*, *ès*, *ôs*, generally double their final *s* with *e* mute, as

| M. | F. | M. | F. |
|--------------|-------|----------------|-----------------------|
| <i>bas</i> | low | <i>basse</i> | <i>exprès</i> express |
| <i>épais</i> | thick | <i>épaisse</i> | <i>grôs</i> big |

but *frais*, cool, makes *fraiche*; *ras*, bare, open, cut close, *mauvais*, bad, *niais*, silly, only take *e* mute.

OF THE ADJECTIVE.

9mo, *Beau* beautiful, *nouveau* new, *fol* foolish, *mol* soft, have their feminines *belle*, *nouvelle*, *folle*, *molle*, from their old masculines *bel*, *nouvel*, *fol*, *mol*, which are still used before words of the masculine in the singular number beginning with a vowel, or *h* mute, as *un bel ouvrage* a fine work, *un bel honneur* a fine honour, *un nouvel attrait* a new charm, *un fol entêtement* a foolish infatuation.

10mo, *Benin* benign, *malin* malignant, make *benigne*, *maligne*; *absous* absolved, *dissous* dissolved, make *absoute*, *dissoute*; *tiers*, a third, or tertian in the feminine is *tierce*.

11mo, Adjectives ending in *eur* and *x* change the final *r* and *x* into *se*, as *flatteur* flattering, *flatterer*, *heureux* happy, *jaloux* jealous, making their feminines *flatteuse*, *heureuse*, *jalouse*; but *vieux* old, makes *vieille*, and *doux* sweet, *faux* false, *roux* red, make *douce*, *fausse*, *rousse*.

These adjectives *anterieur*, *citerieur*, *exterieur*, *inferieur*, *interieur*, *majeur*, *mineur*, *meilleur*, *posterior*, *prior*, *superieur*, *ulterior*, take *e* mute for the feminine, as *anterieure*, *meilleure*, &c.

12mo, *Enchanteur* enchanter, *pecheur* sinner, *vengeur* avenger, *chasseur* hunter, have their feminines *enchantereſſe*, *pécheresse*, *vengeſſe*, *chaffeſſe*, and in poetry *chaffereſſe*.

13mo, Many nouns in *teur* change *teur* into *trice* for the feminine, as *acteur* actor, *bienfaiteur*, benefactor, *testateur*, a testator, *debiteur* debtor, *accusateur* a plaintiff, making *actrice*, *bienfaiſtrice*, *testatrice*, *debitrice*, *accusatrice*.

OF THE COMPARISONS.

There are two degrees of comparison in French, as in English, viz. the *comparative* and the *superlative*. When the adjective is expressed with augmentation, or with reference to a less degree of the same, it is called the *comparative*, as *plus sage* more wise, or wiser, *moins sage* less wise. When it is expressed as being in the highest or lowest degree of all, it is called the *superlative*, as *le plus sage* the most wise, or wisest. The French comparative is formed by adding *plus* more, or *moins* less, to the adjective, and the superlative by adding *le plus* the most, or *le moins* the least, to the adjective, as,

Compar-

| | Compar. | Super. |
|-----------------------|---|---|
| grand <i>great</i> | plus grand <i>greater</i> or <i>more great</i> | le plus grand <i>greatest</i> or <i>most great</i> |

EXCEPTIONS.

| | Comp. | Super. |
|------------------------|----------|-------------|
| bon <i>good</i> | meilleur | le meilleur |
| petit <i>little</i> | moindre | le moindre |
| mauvais <i>bad</i> | pire | le pire |
| | worse | the worst |

ADVERBS.

| | | |
|----------------------|----------|-----------|
| bien <i>well</i> | mieux | le mieux |
| mal <i>ill</i> | meilleur | the best |
| peu <i>little</i> | pis | le pis |
| | worse | the worst |
| | moins | le moins |
| | less | the least |

Petit, mauvais, and mal, have also their comparatives and superlatives regular, as plus petit, le plus petit, &c.

When the pronouns possessive, *mon, ton, son, notre, votre, leur*, precede the comparative degree, *plus, meilleur, moindre, pire*, they take the sense of the superlative, as *mon plus grand ami*, my greatest friend. But, if *meilleur, moindre, pire, plus, moins*, be preceded by *de, à, à de*, they would be real comparatives, as *Pour se fortifier dans la vertu, il n'y a rien de meilleur que le bon exemple*, to strengthen one's self in virtue, there is nothing better than good example. *Il ne faut pas se fier à plus fort que soi*, one ought not to trust a person stronger than one's self.

Comparatives are also made by adding these words to adjectives, and even to some adverbs, *aussi, as, autant, as much, as many, tant, so much, so many, si, so ; as, aussi grand que vous, as tall as you, autant d'hommes que de femmes, as many men as women,*

OF THE ADJECTIVE.

men, *il n'a pas tant de credit que vous*, he has not so much interest as you, *il n'est pas si savant qu'elle*, he is not so learned as she.

Superlatives are also formed by these words added to adjectives, and to some adverbs, *très, fort, bien, most, very*, as *bien bon, fort bon, très bon*, very good, most good, *bien doucement*, very gently.

The following superlative kind of expressions end in *issime*, as *generalissime, generalissimo, sérénissime, éminentissime, most eminent, réveréndissime, most reverend, illustrissime, most illustrious, savantissime most learned*. The last expression is used in the low and ludicrous style.

C H A P. IV.

OF PRONOUNS.

THE pronouns are words standing instead of names as their representatives.

There are five sorts of pronouns; the personal, the possessive, the relative, the demonstrative, and the indeterminate.

PRONOUNS PERSONAL.

The eight following pronouns personal are the nominatives to verbs.

| Singular. | Plural. |
|---------------------------|------------------------|
| Masc. Fem. | Masc. Fem. |
| Je, tu, il, elle, | nous, vous, ils, elles |
| I, thou, he, it, she, it. | we, ye, you, they. |

To which may be added *on*, or *pon*, one, they, we, &c. which is always placed before the third person singular of a verb. The *p* is put before *on* for sound's sake.

The pronouns personal are divided into disjunctive and conjunctive.

OF PRONOUNS.

45

DISJUNCTIVE PRONOUNS.

| | Singular. | Plural. | |
|--------|---------------------------------|-------------------------------|----|
| Cases. | 1. moi | I nous | we |
| | 2. de moi of, from, by, with me | de nous of, from, by, with us | |
| | 3. à moi to, at me | à nous to, at us | |
| | 4. moi me | nous us | |

| | | | | |
|--------|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------|------|-----|
| Cases. | 1. toi | thou | vous | you |
| | 2. de toi of, from, by, with thee | de vous of, from, by, with you | | |
| | 3. à toi to, at thee | à vous to, at you | | |
| | 4. toi thee | vous | | you |

Masculine.

| | | | | |
|--------|----------------------------------|-------------------------------|-----|------|
| Cases. | 1. lui | he | eux | they |
| | 2. de lui of, from, by, with him | d'eux of, from, by, with them | | |
| | 3. à lui to, at him | à eux to, at them | | |
| | 4. lui him | eux them | | |

Feminine.

| | | | | |
|--------|----------------------------------|---------------------------------|-------|------|
| Cases. | 1. elle | she it | elles | they |
| | 2. d'elle of, from, by, with her | d'elles of, from, by, with them | | |
| | 3. à elle to at her | à elles to, at them | | |
| | 4. elle her, it | elles them | | |

| | | |
|--------|------------------------|------------|
| Cases. | 1. soi | one's self |
| | 2. de soi of, &c. | one's self |
| | 3. à soi to one's self | |
| | 4. soi one's self | |

Même *self* is a kind of pronoun, denoting the person or thing spoken of in a more special manner, and is declined with *de* and *à*,

| | | | |
|--------------|-------------|----------------|---------------|
| moi-même | myself | nous-mêmes | ourselves |
| toi-même | thyself | vous-mêmes | yourselves |
| lui-même | himself | eux-mêmes | { themselves |
| elle-même | herself | elles-mêmes | |
| l'homme-même | man himself | l'honneur-même | honour itself |

Même

OF PRONOUNS.

Même is an adjective, signifying *the same*, used with the articles *le*, *la*, *les*, as

| | | | |
|---------|---|-----------|----------|
| le même | } | les mêmes | the same |
| la même | | | |

CONJUNCTIVE PRONOUNS.

These pronouns are governed by verbs, and are placed before them. They are placed after them when the verb is in the second person singular, first and second persons of the plural of the imperative mood without a negation, in which case *moi* and *toi* are used instead of *me* and *te*.

me to me, to myself, me, myself.

te to thee, to thyself, thee, thyself.

se to himself, to herself, to itself, to one's self.

to themselves, himself, herself, itself, one's self, themselves.

nous to us, to ourselves, us, ourselves.

vous to you, to yourself, to yourselves, you, yourself, yourselves.

tui to him, to her, *le* him, it

leur to them, *la* her, it

y there, thither, to it. *les* them.

en of him, of her,

of it, of them,

any, some, &c.

When the verb before which these pronouns are placed, begins with a vowel, the *e* is cut off from *me*, *te*, *se*, *le*, and the *a* from *la*, thus, *m'*, *t'*, *s'*, *l'*.

PRONOUNS POSSESSIVE,

Are so called because they denote possession or property. They are twelve in number. The first six are always joined to substantives, with which they must agree in gender and number, and are declined with *de* and *à*. The last six are never joined to substantives, but suppose them either expressed before in the sentence, or understood. They are declined with the articles *le*, *la*, *les*.

| Cases. | Singular. | | Plural for both genders. | | |
|--------|-----------|-------|--------------------------|--------|--------------------------------|
| | Masc. | Fem. | mes | de mes | my <i>if, from, &c.</i> |
| | 1. mon | ma | à mes | à mes | to my |
| | 2. de mon | de ma | | | |
| | 3. à mon | à ma | | | |

OF PRONOUNS.

47

| | Singular. | | Plural for both genders. | |
|--------|--------------|--------------|--------------------------|------------------|
| Cases. | Masc. | Fem. | tes | thy |
| | 1. ton | ta | de tes | of, from, by thy |
| | 2. de ton | de ta | à tes | to thy |
| Cases. | 1. fon | fa | fes | his, her |
| | 2. de son | de sa | de ses | of his, of her |
| | 3. à son | à sa | à ses | to his, to her |
| | Masc. & Fem. | | | |
| Cases. | 1. notre | | nos | our |
| | 2. de notre | | de nos | of our |
| | 3. à notre | | à nos | to our |
| Cases. | 1. votre | | vos | your |
| | 2. de votre | | de vos | of your |
| | 3. à votre | | à vos | to your |
| Cases. | 1. leur | | leurs | their |
| | 2. de leur | | de leurs | of their |
| | 3. à leur | | à leurs | to their |
| | Singular | | Plural. | |
| | Masc. | Fem. | Masc. | Fem. |
| Cases. | 1. le mien | la miènne | les miens, | les miènnes |
| | 2. du mien | de la miènne | des miens | des miènnes |
| | 3. au mien | à la miènne | aux miens | aux miènnes |
| Cases. | 1. le tien | la tiènne | les tiens | les tiènnes |
| | 2. du tien | de la tiènne | des tiens | des tiènnes |
| | 3. au tien | à la tiènne | aux tiens | aux tiènnes |
| Cases. | 1. le sien | la siènne | les siens | les siènnes |
| | 2. du sien | de la siènne | des siens | des siènnes |
| | 3. au sien | à la siènne. | aux siens | aux siènnes |

Singular.

OF PRONOUNS.

| | Singular. | Plural. | | |
|--------|---|---------------------------------------|--|---|
| | Masc. | Masc. & Fem. | | |
| Cafes. | 1. le nôtre 2. du nôtre 3. au nôtre | la nôtre de la nôtre à la nôtre | les notres des notres aux notres | <i>ours</i> <i>of ours</i> <i>to ours</i> |
| | 1. le vôtre 2. du vôtre 3. au vôtre | la vôtre de la vôtre à la vôtre | les vôtres des vôtres aux vôtres | <i>yours</i> <i>of yours</i> <i>to yours</i> |
| Cafes. | 1. le leur 2. du leur 3. au leur | la leur de la leur à la leur | les leurs des leurs aux leurs | <i>theirs</i> <i>of theirs</i> <i>to theirs</i> |

PRONOUNS RELATIVE.

1. Qui *who, that which,*
 2. de qui *of, from, &c. whom*
 or whose used for persons)
 2. dont *of, from, by, with, whom,*
 which, or whose (used for
 persons and other objects)
 3. à qui *to whom (used for per-*
 fons).
 4. que *that, whom, which,*
 5. qui *who, (used in questions*
 for persons only.)
- quoi, que *what ? que how ?*
 de quoi { *of, what, wherewith,*
 wherewithal.

| | Singular. | Plural. | |
|--|-----------|-------------|----------|
| | Masc. | Fem. | |
| | quel | quelle | quels |
| | de quel | de quelle | de quels |
| | à quel | à quelle | à quels |
| | lequel | laquelle | lesquels |
| | duquel | de laquelle | dèsquels |
| | auquel | à laquelle | auxquels |

These

These pronouns are declined with *de* and *à* in the singular and plural.

PRONOUNS DEMONSTRATIVE.

Singular.

| | |
|---------|------------------|
| Masc. | Fem. |
| ce, cet | cette this, that |

| |
|------------------|
| Plural for |
| Masc. & Fem. |
| cès these, those |

cet is used before the masculine noun beginning with a vowel, or *h* sounded.

Masc.

| | | | |
|--------------------|-------------------------|----------|----------------------------|
| celui he, that | celle she, that | Masc. | Fem. |
| celui de, this of, | celle de this of | ceux, | celles |
| celui qui he who | celle qui, she who | ceux de, | celles de |
| celui-ci | celle ci this one here | ceux-ci, | celles ci these ones here |
| celui-là | celle là that one there | ceux-là, | celles-là those ones there |

M. celui-ci ou celui-là this or that ceux-ci ou ceux là these or those
F. celle-ci ou celle-là this or that celles-ci ou celles là these or those

ceci this, cela, that, are substantives of all genders.
 ce qui, ce que that which, what.

PRONOUNS INDETERMINATE.

Masc.

| |
|-----------------|
| l'un l'autre |
| l'un de l'autre |
| l'un à l'autre |

Fem.

| | |
|--------------------------------|-------------|
| l'une l'autre | one another |
| l'une de l'autre of, by, &c. | one another |
| l'une à l'autre to one another | |

| | |
|---------|--------------------|
| Plural: | les uns les autres |
| | les uns des autres |
| | les uns aux autres |

| | |
|---------------------|----------------|
| les unes les autres | one another |
| les unes des autres | of one another |
| les unes aux autres | to one another |

| | |
|-------|-----------------------|
| Sing. | l'un et l'autre |
| | de l'un et de l'autre |
| | à l'un et à l'autre |

| | |
|----------------------|---------|
| l'une et l'autre | both |
| l'une et l'autre | of both |
| à l'une et à l'autre | to both |

| Masc. | Fem. | |
|---|---|---|
| Plural. les uns et les autres des uns et des autres aux uns et aux autres | les unes et les autres des unes et des autres aux unes et aux autres | <i>both</i> <i>of both</i> <i>to both</i> |
| Sing. l'un ou l'autre de l'un ou de l'autre à l'un ou à l'autre | l'une ou l'autre <i>either (the one or other)</i> de l'une ou de l'autre <i>of either</i> à l'une ou à l'autre <i>to either</i> | |
| Plural. les uns ou les autres des uns ou des autres aux uns ou aux autres | les unes ou les autres des unes ou des autres aux unes ou aux autres | <i>either</i> <i>of either</i> <i>to either</i> |
| ni l'un ni l'autre &c. | ni l'une ni l'autre | <i>neither</i> |

The following pronouns are declined with *de* and *à*.

| Masc. | Fem. | Masc. | Fem. |
|---|------|---|----------------------------|
| chacun, chacune, <i>every one</i> pas un pas une <i>not one</i> | | aucun, aucune, nul nulle | <i>none</i> <i>none</i> |

Singular.

| Masc. | Fem. | Masc. | Fem. |
|---|------|--|------------|
| quelqu'un, quelqu'une, <i>some one.</i> | | quelques uns, quelques unes, <i>some ones.</i> | |
| tout, toute, | | tous toutes | <i>all</i> |

Quiconque, *any body, whoever, rien, nothing, any thing, qui que ce soit, whoever, whosoever, quoi que ce soit, whatever, plusieurs, many, chaque, every, personne, no body, any body, autrui, others, quelque, in the sing, and quelques, in the plur. some.*

CHAP. V.

OF VERBS.

THE Verb is a word that expresses either an action done, or an action received by the subject, or it signifies only the condition or state of the subject.

The subject is the person or thing spoken of. When we say, *le pécheur offense Dieu*, the sinner offends God; *pécheur*, sinner, is the subject who does the action of offending. If we say, *le pécheur sera puni*, the sinner will be punished; *pécheur*, sinner, is the subject who will receive the punishment. If I say, *mon frère dort*, my brother sleeps; *ce livre pèse*, this book weighs; these words, *dort* sleeps, *pèse* weighs, shew here the condition or state of the *book* and *brother*.

From thence arise three kinds of verbs, viz. *Active*, *Passive*, and *Neuter*.

The *Active Verb* expresses an action done by the subject, as *Dieu récompensera les bons et punira les méchants*. God will reward the good and punish the wicked. *Mon frère joue, danse, parle à son maître*, my brother plays, dances, speaks to his master.

The *Passive Verb* expresses an action received or suffered by the subject, as *les bons seront récompensés, et les méchants seront punis de Dieu*, the good will be rewarded, and the wicked will be punished by God.

The *Neuter Verb* expresses only the state of the subject; it neither denotes an action done or received by the subject, as *Mon frère dort*, my brother sleeps. *L'homme existe*, man exists.

There are likewise *Pronominal* and *Impersonal Verbs*.

Pronominal Verbs are those which are conjugated with two pronouns of the same person; *Je me repens* I repent me, or I repent, *Il se voit* he sees himself.

Pronominal verbs are called *Reflected*, when the action that they express falls on the subject that performs it, as *mon frère se*

se blesse my brother hurts himself; *mon frère* my brother, is the subject who performs the action of *hurting*, and it is on himself that the action falls.

Impersonal Verbs, or rather *Mono-personal Verbs*, are only employed in the third person singular, as *il faut* it must, *il y a* there is, *il importe* it matters, it concerns.

Of the Conjugation of Verbs.

The word *Conjugation* signifies an *assemblage*.

To conjugate a verb is to assemble its different terminations. These different terminations form *Moods*, *Tenses*, *Numbers*, and *Persons*.

The *Moods* are the different manners of using the verb. There are four moods, the *Infinitive*, the *Indicative*, *Subjunctive*, and *Imperative*.

The *Tenses* or *Times*, are terminations that shew if what is expressed relates to the present, past, or to come, as *Je parle*, I speak, *Je parlais*, I was speaking, *Je parlai*, I spoke, *J'ai parlé*, I have spoken, *Je parlerai*, I shall speak.

There are two numbers in the tenses of a verb, the Singular and Plural. In each number there are three persons. The first person is he who speaks, as *Je parle*, I speak, *Nous parlons*, we speak.

The second person is the one spoken to, as *tu parles*, thou speakest, *vous parlez*, you speak.

The third person is the person or thing spoken of, as *il* or *elle parle*, he or she speaks. *Ils* or *elles parlent*, they speak, *la pomme est bonne*, the apple is good.

Of the Infinitive Mood.

The *Infinitive* points out the time, and sometimes the number, but without denoting the persons, as *rien ne m'empêche de dire la vérité en riant*, nothing hinders me from telling the truth in joking. *A-t-elle vu mes frères ? Elle croit les avoir apperçus à la comedie.* Has she seen my brothers ? She thinks she has seen them in the play-house.

The *Indicative Mood* forms a clear sense, as *vous savez que les rois doivent aimer leurs sujets*, you knew that kings ought to love their subjects. If you suppress *vous savez que*, you know that, the rest of the sentence *les rois doivent aimer leurs sujets*, kings ought to love their subjects, forms a clear sense.

The *Subjunctive Mood*, or *Conjunctive*, so called because it depends on a conjunction that precedes it, and which, being separated from what precedes it, would not make a clear sense; as *Il faut que nous soyons modestes, quelque merite que nous ayons*. If you suppress *Il faut que, quelque merite que, nous soyons, nous ayons*, would not make a clear sense.

The *Imperative Mood* expresses the action of commanding, threatening, praying, or exhorting.

There are two participles, the *Participle Present*, and *Participle Preterite*. The *Participle Present* might be more properly called *Gerund*.

The *Participle* is so called because it partakes of the nature of an adjective and a verb.

TENSES.

The word *Tense* means the time in which an action is done.

In the *Indicative Mood* there are five *simple tenses*, the *Present, Imperfect, Preterite, Future, and Conditional*.

In the *Subjunctive Mood* there are two tenses, the *Present and Preterite*.

There are as many *compound tenses* as *simple*, known by these names, the *Compound of the present, Compound of the Imperfect, Compound of the Preterite, Compound of the Future, Compound of the Conditional, of the Indicative Mood, Compound of the Present, and Compound of the Preterite, of the Subjunctive Mood*.

As these Compound Tenses are formed by the help of *avoir* and *être*, we shall begin with these auxiliary verbs.

All the French infinitives end in *er, ir, oir, re*; as *parler* to speak, *finir* to finish, *recevoir* to receive, *vendre* to sell.

AUXILIARY VERBS.

| | | |
|-------------------------------------|-------|----------------|
| <i>Infinitive Mood</i> | avoir | <i>to have</i> |
| <i>Participle Present</i> | ayant | <i>having</i> |
| <i>Participle Preterite or Past</i> | eu | <i>had</i> |

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense, or Time.

| | |
|---------------------|------------------|
| Sing. 1. J'ai, | <i>I have</i> |
| 2. Tu as | <i>thou hast</i> |
| 3. Il a | <i>he has</i> |
| 3. Elle a | <i>she has</i> |
| Plur. 1. Nous avons | <i>we have</i> |
| 2. Vous avez | <i>you have</i> |
| 3. Ils ont | <i>they have</i> |
| 3. Elles ont | |

Imperfect Tense.

| | |
|-------------------|-------------------|
| Sing. J'avois | <i>I had</i> |
| Tu avois | <i>thou hadst</i> |
| Il avoit | <i>he had</i> |
| Plur. Nous avions | <i>we had</i> |
| Vous aviez | <i>you had</i> |
| Ils avoient | <i>they had</i> |

Preterite Tense.

| | |
|------------------|-------------------|
| Sing. J'eus | <i>I had</i> |
| Tu eus | <i>thou hadst</i> |
| Il eut | <i>he had</i> |
| Plur. Nous eumes | <i>we had</i> |
| Vous eutes | <i>you had</i> |
| Ils eurent | <i>they had</i> |

Future Tense.

| | |
|---------------|--------------------------------|
| Sing. J'aurai | <i>I shall or will have</i> |
| Tu auras | <i>thou shalt or wilt have</i> |
| Il aura | <i>he shall or will have</i> |

Plur.

| | |
|-------------------|--------------------------------|
| Plur. Nous aurons | <i>we shall or will have</i> |
| Vous aurez | <i>you shall or will have</i> |
| Ils auront | <i>they shall or will have</i> |

Conditional Tense.

| |
|---|
| Sing. J'aurois, <i>I should, would, could, might have</i> |
| Tu aurois, <i>thou wouldst, couldst, shouldest, mightest have</i> |
| Il auroit, <i>he would, could, should, or might have</i> |
| Plur. Nous aurions, <i>we should, would, could, might have</i> |
| Vous auriez, <i>you would, could, should, might have</i> |
| Ils auroient, <i>they would, could, should, might have</i> |

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

| | | |
|-----------------|-------------------------|--------------------|
| Sing. J'aye | <i>I may have</i> | |
| Tu ayes | <i>thou mayest have</i> | |
| Il ait | <i>he may have</i> | |
| Que. Plur. That | Nous ayons | <i>we may have</i> |
| Vouz ayez | <i>you may have</i> | |
| Ils ayent | <i>they may have</i> | |

Preterite Tense.

| | | |
|-----------------|-------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| Sing. J'eusse | <i>I had, or might have</i> | |
| Tu eusses | <i>thou hadst, or mightest have</i> | |
| Il eût | <i>he had, or might have</i> | |
| Que. Plur. That | Nous eussions | <i>we had, or might have</i> |
| Vouz eussiez | <i>you had, or might have</i> | |
| Ils eussent | <i>they had, or might have</i> | |

Imperative Mood.

| | |
|------------------------|------------------------------|
| Sing. Que j'aye | <i>let me have</i> |
| Aye | <i>have, or have thou</i> |
| Qu'il ait, qu'elle ait | <i>let him, let her have</i> |
| Plur. Ayons | <i>let us have</i> |
| Ayez | <i>have, or have ye</i> |
| Qu'ils aient | <i>let them have</i> |
| Qu'elles aient | |

COMPOUND TENSES.

The Compound Tenses are formed by adding the Participle Preterite of the verb conjugating, to the tenses of *avoir*, as,

INDICATIVE MOOD.

| | | |
|---|----------|--------------------|
| <i>Compound of the Infinitive</i> | avoir eu | <i>to have had</i> |
| <i>Compound of the Participle Present</i> | ayant eu | <i>having had</i> |

Compound of the Present Tense.

| | | |
|-------|---------------|----------------------|
| Sing. | J'ai eu | <i>I have had</i> |
| | Tu as eu | <i>thou hast had</i> |
| | Il a eu | <i>he has had</i> |
| Plur. | Nous avons eu | <i>we have had</i> |
| | Vous avez eu | <i>you have had</i> |
| | Ils ont eu | <i>they have had</i> |

Compound of the Imperfect.]

| | | |
|-------|----------------|-----------------------|
| Sing. | J'avois eu | <i>I had had</i> |
| | Tu avois eu | <i>thou hadst had</i> |
| | Il avoit eu | <i>he had had</i> |
| Plur. | Nous avions eu | <i>we had had</i> |
| | Vous aviez eu | <i>you had had</i> |
| | Ils avoient eu | <i>they had had</i> |

Compound of the Preterite.

| | | |
|-------|---------------|-----------------------|
| Sing. | J'eus eu | <i>I had had</i> |
| | Tu eus eu | <i>thou hadst had</i> |
| | Il eut eu | <i>he had had</i> |
| Plur. | Nous eumes eu | <i>we had had</i> |
| | Vous eutes eu | <i>you had had</i> |
| | Ils eurent eu | <i>they had had</i> |

Compound of the Future.

| | | |
|-------|-------------|----------------------------|
| Sing. | J'aurai eu | <i>I shall have had</i> |
| | Tu auras eu | <i>thou shalt have had</i> |

| | |
|----------------------|----------------------------|
| Il aura eu | <i>he shall have had</i> |
| Plur. Nous aurons eu | <i>we shall have had</i> |
| Vous aurez eu | <i>you shall have had</i> |
| Ils auront eu | <i>they shall have had</i> |

Compound of the Conditional.

| | |
|-----------------------|---|
| Sing. J'aurois eu | <i>I should, would, &c. have had</i> |
| Tu aurois eu | <i>Thou shouldst, wouldst, &c. have had</i> |
| Il auroit eu | <i>he should, would, &c. have had</i> |
| Plur. Nous aurions eu | <i>we should, would, &c. have had</i> |
| Vous auriez eu | <i>you should, would, &c. have had</i> |
| Ils auroient eu | <i>they should, would, &c. have had</i> |

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

Compound of the Present.

| | |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Sing. J'aye eu | <i>I may have had</i> |
| Tu ayes eu | <i>thou mayest have had</i> |
| Il ait eu | <i>he may have had</i> |
| Que. Plur. Nous ayons eu | <i>we may have had</i> |
| Vous ayez eu | <i>you may have had</i> |
| Ils ayent eu | <i>they may have had</i> |

Compound of the Preterite.

| | |
|------------------------|---|
| Sing. J'eusse eu | <i>I had had, or might have had</i> |
| Tu eusses eu | <i>thou hadst had, or mightest have had</i> |
| Il eût eu | <i>he had had, or might have had</i> |
| Plur. Nous eussions eu | <i>we had had, or might have had</i> |
| Vous eussiez eu | <i>you had had, or might have had</i> |
| Ils eussent eu | <i>they had had, or might have had</i> |

PASSIVE VERB.

| | |
|-----------------------------|-------------|
| <i>Infinitive</i> | être to be |
| <i>Participle Present</i> | étant being |
| <i>Participle Preterite</i> | été been. |

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

| | |
|-------------------|----------|
| Sing. Je suis | I am |
| Tu es | thou art |
| Il est | he is |
| Plur. Nous sommes | we are |
| Vous êtes | you are |
| Ils sont | they are |

Imperfect.

| | |
|-------------------|-----------|
| Sing. J'étais | I was |
| Tu étais | thou wast |
| Il étoit | be was |
| Plur. Nous étions | we were |
| Vous étiez | you were |
| Ils étoient | they were |

Preterite.

| | |
|------------------|-----------|
| Sing. Je fus | I was |
| Tu fus | thou wast |
| Il fut | be was |
| Plur. Nous fumes | we were |
| Vous futes | you were |
| Ils furent | they were |

Future.

| | |
|----------------|-----------------------|
| Sing. Je ferai | I will or shall be |
| Tu feras | thou wilt or shalt be |
| Il fera | he will or shall be |

Plur.

| | |
|-------------------|------------------------------|
| Plur. Nous ferons | <i>we shall or will be</i> |
| Vous serez | <i>you will or shall be</i> |
| Ils feront | <i>they will or shall be</i> |

Conditional.

| | |
|--------------------|--|
| Sing. Je serois | <i>I should, would, might, could be</i> |
| Tu serois | <i>thou wouldest, couldst, shouldest, &c. be</i> |
| Il seroit | <i>he could, would, shoule, might be</i> |
| Plur. Nous serions | <i>we could, would, shoule, might be</i> |
| Vous seriez | <i>you would, could, shoule, might be</i> |
| Ils seroient | <i>they would, could, shoule, might be</i> |

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

| | |
|-------------------|-----------------------|
| Sing. Je sois | <i>I may be</i> |
| Tu sois | <i>thou mayest be</i> |
| Il soit | <i>he may be</i> |
| Plur. Nous soyons | <i>we may be</i> |
| Vous soyez | <i>you may be</i> |
| Ils soyent | <i>they may be</i> |

Preterite.

| | |
|---------------------|---------------------------------|
| Sing. Je fusse | <i>I was or might be</i> |
| Tu fusses | <i>thou wast or mightest be</i> |
| Il fut | <i>he was or might be</i> |
| Plur. Nous fussions | <i>we were or might be</i> |
| Vous fussiez | <i>you were or might be</i> |
| Ils fussent | <i>they were or might be</i> |

Imperative Mood.

| | |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------|
| Sing. Que je sois | <i>let me be</i> |
| Sois | <i>be or be thou</i> |
| Qu'il soit, qu'elle soit | <i>let him, her, it be</i> |
| Plur. Soyons | <i>let us be</i> |
| Soyez | <i>be, be ye</i> |
| Qu'ils soyent, qu'elles soyent, | <i>let them be</i> |

COMPOUND TENSES.

Compound of the Infinitive, avoir été, *to have been*.
 Compound of the Part. Pret. ayant été, *having been*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

| | | |
|-------|----------------|--------------------------|
| Sing. | J'ai été | <i>I have been</i> |
| | Tu as été | <i>thou hast been</i> |
| | Il a été | <i>he has, hath been</i> |
| Plur. | Nous avons été | <i>we have been</i> |
| | Vous avez été | <i>you have been</i> |
| | Ils ont été | <i>they have been</i> |

Imperfect.

| | | |
|-------|-----------------|------------------------|
| Sing. | J'avois été | <i>I had been</i> |
| | Tu avois été | <i>thou hadst been</i> |
| | Il avoit été | <i>he had been</i> |
| Plur. | Nous avions été | <i>we had been</i> |
| | Vous aviez été | <i>you had been</i> |
| | Ils avoient été | <i>they had been</i> |

Preterite.

| | | |
|-------|----------------|------------------------|
| Sing. | J'eus été | <i>I had been</i> |
| | Tu eus été | <i>thou hadst been</i> |
| | Il eut été | <i>he had been</i> |
| Plur. | Nous eumes été | <i>we had been</i> |
| | Vous eutes été | <i>you had been</i> |
| | Ils eurent été | <i>they had been</i> |

Future.

| | | |
|-------|--------------|-----------------------------|
| Sing. | J'aurai été | <i>I shall have been</i> |
| | Tu auras été | <i>thou shalt have been</i> |
| | Il aura été | <i>he shall have been</i> |

Plur.

OF VERBS.

61

| | |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------|
| Plur. Nous aurons été | <i>we shall have been</i> |
| Vous aurez été | <i>you shall have been</i> |
| Ils auront été | <i>they shall have been</i> |

Conditional.

| | |
|------------------------|---|
| Sing. J'aurois été | <i>I should, would, &c. have been</i> |
| Tu aurois été | <i>thou wouldst, shouldest, &c. have been</i> |
| Il auroit été | <i>he wouldest, shouldest, &c. have been</i> |
| Plur. Nous aurions été | <i>we would, shouldest, &c. have been</i> |
| Vous auriez été | <i>you would, shouldest, &c. have been</i> |
| Ils auroient été | <i>they would, shouldest, &c. have been</i> |

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

| | |
|----------------------|------------------------------|
| Sing. J'aye été | <i>I may have been</i> |
| Que. Tu ayes été | <i>thou mayest have been</i> |
| That. Il ait été | <i>he may have been</i> |
| Plur. Nous ayons été | <i>we may have been</i> |
| Vous ayez été | <i>you may have been</i> |
| Ils ayent été | <i>they may have been</i> |

Preterite.

| | |
|-------------------------|--|
| Sing. J'eusse été | <i>I had been, or might have been</i> |
| Que. Tu eusses été | <i>thou hadst been, mightest have been</i> |
| That. Il eût été | <i>he had been, might have been</i> |
| Plur. Nous eussions été | <i>we had been, might have been</i> |
| Vous eussiez été | <i>you had been, might have been</i> |
| Ils eussent été | <i>they had been, might have been</i> |

Though the French infinitives end in *er, ir, oir, re*, and though we shall give four verbs of these terminations conjugated at length, yet every verb of the similar termination is not conjugated in the same manner as these four verbs.

The easiest way of conveying to the learner the knowledge of the French verbs, is, 1^{mo}, To give the terminations of the tenses. 2^{do}, Observations on these terminations. 3^{ro}, Rules for the formation of the tenses, from the *infinitive Mood*, the *participle*.

ciple present, and participle preterite, which may be called the roots of verbs; the whole will be exemplified by two verbs, by which means above 2963 verbs can be learned in a very short time; and by the same assistance, a number of verbs that puzzle and perplex scholars will become easy, as the tenses not formed according to the rules given, are not very numerous; for the irregularities only fall on the present, preterite, and future of the Indicative, and the present of the Subjunctive. Besides, many verbs have only one irregular tense, some have two, others three, and very few have four.

TERMINATIONS OF THE TENSES.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Singular.

| | | |
|----|----|---|
| 1 | 2 | 3 |
| e | es | e |
| s | s | t |
| x | x | t |
| ts | ts | t |
| ds | ds | d |

Plural.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | 2 | 3 |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |

Imperfect.

| | | | | | |
|-----|-----|-----|------|-----|--------|
| vis | ois | oit | ions | iez | orient |
|-----|-----|-----|------|-----|--------|

Preterite.

| | | | | | |
|-------|-----|-----|-------|-------|--------|
| ai | as | a | ames | ates | érent |
| is | is | it | imes | ites | irent |
| us | us | ut | umes | utes | urent |
| * ins | ins | int | inmes | intes | inrent |

Future.

| | | | | | |
|-----|-----|----|------|-----|------|
| rai | ras | ra | rons | rez | ront |
|-----|-----|----|------|-----|------|

* For Verbs in enir.

Conditional!

Conditional.

| | Singular. | | Plural. | |
|------|-----------|------|---------|------|
| rois | rois | roit | rions | riez |

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

| e | es | e | | | |
|------|------|------|------|-----|-----|
| mute | mute | mute | ions | iez | ent |

Preterite.

| | | | | | |
|---------|--------|-----|---------|--------|--------|
| asse | asses | ât | assions | assiez | assent |
| isse | isses | ît | issions | issiez | issent |
| usse | usses | ût | ussions | ussiez | ussent |
| * insse | insses | înt | insions | insiez | insent |

The *ent* is mute in the third person plural.

2do, *Observations on the Terminations.*

All the first persons plural end in *ons*, except in the Preterites of the Indicative, which end in *ames*, *imes*, *umes*, *inmes*, except *nous sommes* we are.

All the second persons plural end in *ez*, except in the Preterites, which end in *ates*, *ites*, *utes*, *intes*, except *vous êtes*, you are, *vous dites*, you say, *vous faites*, you do.

All the third persons plural end in *ent*, except in the Futures, which end in *ront*, and these verbs, *ils ont*, they have, *ils sont*, they are, *ils font*, they do, *ils vont*, they go.

For the Singular Number.

If the first person ends in *e* mute, the second takes *s*, and the third is like the first, as *Je parle*, *tu parles*, *il parle*, except the Preterites subjunctive that end in *ât*, *it*, *ût*, *înt*, as also *il ait*, he may have.

If

* For verbs in *enir*.

If the first person ends in *ds* or *ts*, the second is like the first and the third suppresses the *s*, as *je vends*, *tu vends*, *il vend*, *je mèts*, *tu mèts*, *il met*.

If the first person ends in *s* or *x*, the second is the same, and the third ends in *t*, as *je joins*, *tu joins*, *il joint*, *je parlois*, *tu parlois*, *il parleit*; *je veux*, *tu veux*, *il veut*.

When the first person ends in *ai* the second ends in *as*, and the third in *a*; *je parlai*, *tu parlas*, *il parla j'ai*, *tu as*, *il a*.

310, RULES for the Formation of the TENSES from the Infinitive, the Participle Present, and Participle Preterite.

The future is formed from the infinitive, by adding *ai* to the final *r*, as *finir*, *je finirai*, I shall finish. The exceptions are to be seen in the verbs. The conditional is formed always from the future, by changing final *rai*, into *rois*, as *je finirai*, *je finirois*, I should finish.

The imperfect is formed from the participle present, by changing final *ant* into *ois*, *finissant*, *je finissois*, I did finish, except these two verbs, *je savoys*, I did know, and *j'avois*, I had.

The first person plural of the present indicative is formed from the participle present, by changing final *ant* into *ons*, as *finissant*, *nous finissons*, we finish, except *nous avons*, we have, *nous sommes*, we are, *nous savons*, we know.

The present subjunctive is formed from the participle present, by changing *ant* into *e* mute, as *finissant*, *je finisse*. The exceptions are found in the irregular tenses of the verbs.

The preterite of the indicative is formed from the participle preterite by adding *s* to it, if it does not end in *s*, and if it ends in *s*, no *s* is added; *fini*, *je finis* I finished; *mis* put, *je mis* I put.

The preterite of the subjunctive mood is formed from the preterite of the Indicative, by adding *se* to the final *s*, *je finis*, *je finisse*; but verbs in *enir* that have their preterites in *ins*, only add *e* mute to *s* final, as *je tins*, *je tinsé* I held.

Verbs ending in *er*, in number 2700, have all their participles preterite ending in *é*, marked with the acute accent.

Their tenses are formed according to the rules given here, except the preterite indicative, and preterite subjunctive; the former is made by changing the final *é* accented into *ai*, and the latter by changing the same *é* into *asse*; *parlé*, *je parlai*, I spoke, *je parlasse*.

Verbs ending in *ger*, having their participles preterite in *gé*, retain the *é* but not accented, as *jugé* judged, *je jugeai*, *je jugeasse* I judged ; and those in *cé* have their preterites regular, only the *c* is marked thus *ç*, to make it sound soft, as *commencè* begun, *je commençai*, *je commençasse*.

It has been said, that generally the *present* of the subjunctive mood is formed from the *participle present*, by changing *ant* final into *e* mute ; but this rule does not hold for verbs that have their participle present ending in *geant*, as *jugeant*, judging ; the *ant* is struck off without adding *e*, as *jugeant*, *que je juge*.

General Rules for the Formation of the Present of the Indicative Mood.

The *presents* of the Indicative are all formed from the Infinitives. Verbs ending in *er* have the final *r* struck off, *parler*, *je parle* I speak. Those in *mir*, *tir*, *vir*, change *mir*, *tir*, *vir*, into *s*, as *dormir*, *je dors* I sleep *sortir*, *je sorts* I go out ; *servir*, *je sers* I serve. But *assortir* to match, being conjugated as *finir* to finish, has the present, *j'assortis* I match.

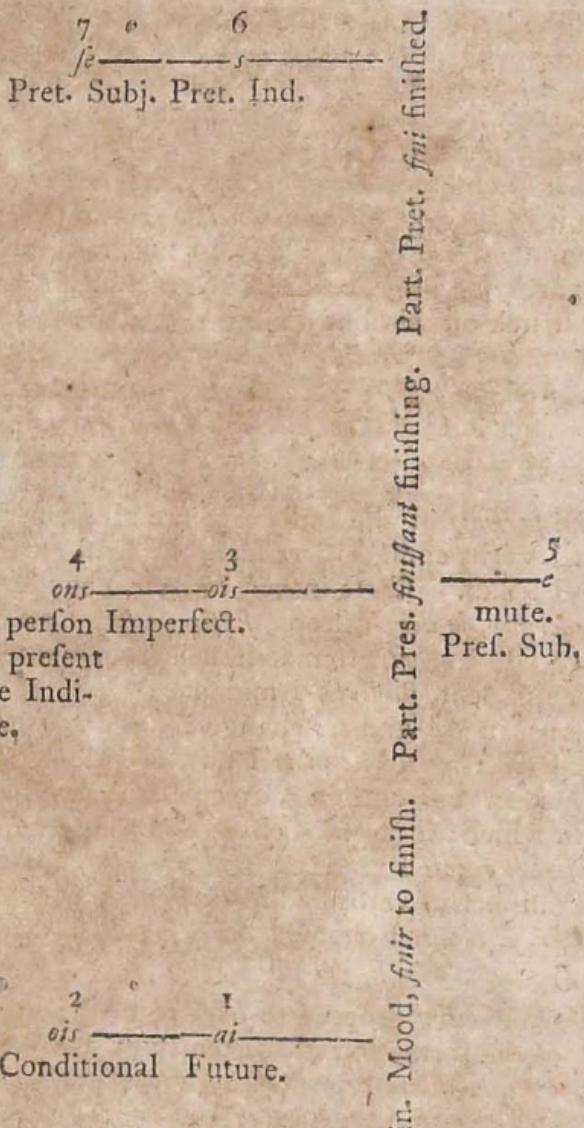
Verbs in *dre* and *tre* change *dre* and *tre* into *s*, as *vendre*, *je vends* I sell ; *mettre*, *je mets* I put.

Those in *evoir* and *enir*, except *benir* to *bles*, and *hennir* to *neigh*, which are as *finir*, change *evoir* into *ois*, and *enir* into *iens*, *recevoir*, *je reçois* I receive ; *venir*, *je viens* I come.

A number of verbs ending in *ir* and *re* change *r* and *re* into *s*, *choisir*, *je choisis* I choose, *boire*, *je bois* I drink.

We shall now proceed to exhibit to the eye of the learner a Tree of the formation of the tenses of two verbs from the Infinitive, the Participle Present, and Participle preterite.

TREE of the Formation of the TENSES from the Infinitive Mood,
Participle Present, and Participle Preterite.



EXPLANATION OF THE TREE.

On the left of the Infinitive Mood, *finir*, you see under figure 1. *ai*, you add that *ai* to the final *r*, to form the future, which makes *je finirai*, I shall finish, I say final *r*, because, if the verb ends in *re*, it is to the *r* you add the *ai*, as *boire*, *je boirai*, I shall drink, and the *e* is suppressed.

Further on the left, under figure 2. you see *ois*; this is to form the conditional, which is always done by changing the final *ai* of the future into *ois*, as *finirai*, *je finirois*, I should finish. In a direct line on the left from the Participle Present *finissant*, under figure 3. you see *ois*; this is to form the Imperfect, which is done by changing final *ant* into *ois*, *finissant*, *je finissois*, I did finish. Further on the left you see, under figure 4. *ons*; this is to form the first person plural of the Present Indicative, which is done by changing final *ant*, into *ons*, as *finissant*, *nous finissons*, we finish. On the right hand from *finissant*, you see under figure 5. *e* mute; this is to form the Present Subjunctive, which is done by changing *ant* final, into *e* mute, as *finissant*, *que je finisse* that I may finish.

In a direct line on the left from the Participle Preterite *fini* under figure 6. you see *s*; this is to form the Preterite Indicative, which is done by adding *s* to the vowel, if it does not end in *s*; and, if it ends in *s*, you add no *s*, *fini*, *je finis*, I finished; *mis*, *je mis*, I put.

Further on the left, under figure 7, you see *ſe*; this is to form the Preterite Subjunctive, which is done by adding that *ſe* to the Preterite of the Indicative, as *je finis* I finished, *que je finisse* that I finished, or might finish. The first person singular of the Present of the Indicative is formed by changing the final *r* of the Infinitive into *s*, *finir*, *je finis*, I finish.

TREE of the Formation of the Tenses of a Verb *in er, ant, é, as*
parler, parlant, parlé.

6 7
 Change *é* into *ai* for Pret. In-Change *é* into *asse* for Prete-
 dicative, *ie parlai I spoke.* rite Sub. *je parlaſſe.*

4 3 5
ons ————— *ois* ————— *e*
 first person plural. Imperfect. Parlant mute.
 Present Indica- Pref. subj
 tive.

2 1
ois ————— *ai* ————— *parler*
 Conditional. Fut.

For the Present Indicative strike off the final *r* of the Infinitive, *parler, je parle, I speak.*

Here

Here follows the conjugation of four verbs ending in *er*, *ir*, *oir*, *re*, viz. *parler*, to speak, *finir*, to finish, *recevoir*, to receive, and *vendre*, to sell. Then we shall proceed to the verbs, which are commonly called irregular; after which we shall give an example of a reflected verb, and finish with a short recapitulation of the rules for the formation of the tenses of verbs, and give, at one view, all the irregular tenses. The impersonal verbs shall be also set down, with a list of a few Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions, and Interjections.

Conjugation of a Verb in er.

| | | |
|------------------------------------|--------------------|-----------------------------|
| <i>Infinitive Mood</i> | <i>Parler</i> | <i>to speak</i> |
| <i>Participle Present</i> | <i>parlant,</i> | <i>speaking</i> |
| <i>Participle Preterite</i> | <i>parlé</i> | <i>spoken, being spoken</i> |
| <i>Compound of the Infinitive</i> | <i>avoir parlé</i> | <i>to have spoken</i> |
| <i>Compound of the Part. Pres.</i> | <i>ayant parlé</i> | <i>having spoken</i> |

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

| | | |
|-------|---------------------|--|
| Sing. | <i>Je parle</i> | <i>I speak, do speak, am speaking</i> |
| | <i>Tu parles</i> | <i>thou speakest, dost speak, art speaking</i> |
| | <i>Il parle</i> | <i>he speaks, does speak, is speaking</i> |
| Plur. | <i>Nous parlons</i> | <i>we speak, do speak, are speaking</i> |
| | <i>Vous parlez</i> | <i>you, ye speak, do speak, are speaking</i> |
| | <i>Ils parlent</i> | <i>they speak, do speak, are speaking</i> |

Imperfect Tense.

| | | |
|-------|----------------------|--|
| Sing. | <i>Je parlois</i> | <i>I did speak, was speaking</i> |
| | <i>Tu parlois</i> | <i>thou didst speak, wast speaking</i> |
| | <i>Il parloit</i> | <i>he did speak, was speaking</i> |
| Plur. | <i>Nous parlions</i> | <i>we did speak, were speaking</i> |
| | <i>Vous parliez</i> | <i>you did speak, wers speaking</i> |
| | <i>Ils parloient</i> | <i>they did speak, were speaking</i> |

Preterite

Preterite Tense.

| | | |
|-------|---------------|---------------------|
| Sing. | Je parlai, | <i>I spoke</i> |
| | Tu parlas | <i>thou spakest</i> |
| | Il parla | <i>he spoke</i> |
| Plur. | Nous parlames | <i>we spoke</i> |
| | Vous parlates | <i>you spoke</i> |
| | Ils parlèrent | <i>they spoke</i> |

Future Tense.

| | | |
|-------|----------------|-------------------------------|
| Sing. | Je parlerai | <i>I shall, will speak</i> |
| | Tu parleras | <i>thou shalt, wilt speak</i> |
| | Il parlera | <i>he shall, will speak</i> |
| Plur. | Nous parlerons | <i>we shall, will speak</i> |
| | Vous parlerez | <i>you shall, will speak</i> |
| | Ils parleront | <i>they shall, will speak</i> |

Conditional Tense.

| | | |
|-------|------------------|--|
| Sing. | Je parlerois | <i>I shouldst, would, could, might speak</i> |
| | Tu parlarios | <i>thou shouldst, wouldst, mightest, speak</i> |
| | Il parleroit | <i>he should, would, could, might speak</i> |
| Plur. | Nous parlerions | <i>we would, could, should, might speak</i> |
| | Vous parlerez | <i>you would, could, should, might speak</i> |
| | Ils parleroient. | <i>they could, would, should, might speak</i> |

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

| | | |
|------------|---------------|--------------------------|
| Que. Sing. | Je parle | <i>I may speak</i> |
| | Tu parles | <i>thou mayest speak</i> |
| | Il parle | <i>he may speak</i> |
| Que. Plur. | Nous parlions | <i>we may speak</i> |
| | Vous parliez | <i>you may speak</i> |
| | Ils parlent | <i>they may speak</i> |

Preterite

Preterite Tense.

| | | |
|------------|------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Sing. | Je parlaſſe | <i>I spoke, might speak</i> |
| | Tu parlaſſes | <i>thou spokeſt, mighteft ſpeak</i> |
| | Il parlăt | <i>he ſpoke, might ſpeak</i> |
| Que. Plur. | Nous parlaſſions | <i>we ſpoke, might ſpeak</i> |
| | Vous parlaſſiez | <i>you ſpoke, might ſpeak</i> |
| | Ils parlaſſent | <i>they ſpoke, might ſpeak</i> |

Imperative Mood.

| | | |
|-------|--------------------|---------------------------|
| Sing. | Que je parle | <i>let me ſpeak</i> |
| | Parle | <i>ſpeak thou</i> |
| | Qu'il parle | <i>let him ſpeak</i> |
| | Qu'elle parle | <i>let her ſpeak</i> |
| Plur. | Parlons | <i>let us ſpeak</i> |
| | Parlez | <i>ſpeak, or ſpeak ye</i> |
| | Qu'ils parlent | <i>let them ſpeak</i> |
| | Qu'elles parlent } | |

Compound Tenses, as mentioned before, are formed by adding the Participle Preterite of the verb that you are conjugating, to the ſimple or ſingle tenses of the verb *avoir* to have.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Compound of the Present.

| | | |
|-------|------------------|-------------------------|
| Sing. | J'ai parlé | <i>I have ſpoken</i> |
| | Tu as parlé | <i>thou haſt ſpoken</i> |
| | Il a parlé | <i>he has ſpoken</i> |
| | Elle a parlé | <i>ſhe has ſpoken</i> |
| Plur. | Nous avons parlé | <i>we have ſpoken</i> |
| | Vous avez parlé | <i>you have ſpoken</i> |
| | Ils ont parlé | <i>they have ſpoken</i> |
| | Elles ont parlé | <i>they have ſpoken</i> |

Compound of the Imperfect.

| | | |
|-------|----------------|--------------------------|
| Sing. | J'avois parlé | <i>I had ſpoken</i> |
| | Tu avois parlé | <i>thou hadſt ſpoken</i> |
| | Il avoit parlé | <i>he had ſpoken</i> |

Plur.

| | | |
|-------|-------------------|-------------------------|
| Plur. | Nous avions parlé | <i>we had spoken.</i> |
| | Vous aviez parlé | <i>you had spoken.</i> |
| | Ils avoient parlé | <i>they had spoken.</i> |

Compound of the Preterite.

| | | |
|-------|------------------|--------------------------|
| Sing. | J'eus parlé | <i>I had spoken</i> |
| | Tu eus parlé | <i>thou hadst spoken</i> |
| | Il eut parlé | <i>he had spoken</i> |
| Plur. | Nous eumes parlé | <i>we had spoken</i> |
| | Vous eutes parlé | <i>you had spoken</i> |
| | Ils eurent parlé | <i>they had spoken</i> |

Compound of the Future.

| | | |
|-------|-------------------|-------------------------------|
| Sing. | J'aurai parlé | <i>I shall have spoken</i> |
| | Tu auras parlé | <i>thou shalt have spoken</i> |
| | Il aura parlé | <i>he shall have spoken</i> |
| Plur. | Nous aurons parlé | <i>we shall have spoken</i> |
| | Vous aurez parlé | <i>you shall have spoken</i> |
| | Ils auront parlé | <i>they shall have spoken</i> |

Compound of the Conditional.

| | | |
|-------|--------------------|---------------------------------|
| Sing. | J'aurois parlé | <i>I should have spoken</i> |
| | Tu aurois parlé | <i>thou wouldst have spoken</i> |
| | Il auroit parlé | <i>he would have spoken</i> |
| Plur. | Nous aurions parlé | <i>we should have spoken</i> |
| | Vous auriez parlé | <i>you would have spoken</i> |
| | Ils auroient parlé | <i>they would have spoken</i> |

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Compound of the Present.

| | | |
|------------|------------------|--------------------------------|
| Sing. | J'aye parlé | <i>I may have spoken</i> |
| | Tu ayes parlé | <i>thou mayest have spoken</i> |
| | Il ait parlé | <i>he may have spoken</i> |
| Que. Plur. | Nous ayons parlé | <i>we may have spoken</i> |
| | Vous ayez parlé | <i>you may have spoken</i> |
| | Ils ayent parlé | <i>they may have spoken</i> |

Compound

Compound of the Preterite.

| | | |
|------------|---------------------|--|
| Sing. | J'eusse parlé | <i>I had spoken, might have spoken</i> |
| | Tu eusses parlé | <i>thou hadst spoken</i> |
| | Il eût parlé | <i>he had spoken</i> |
| Que. Plur. | Nous eussions parlé | <i>we had spoken</i> |
| | Vous eussiez parlé | <i>you had spoken</i> |
| | Ils eussent parlé | <i>they had spoken</i> |

After the same manner are conjugated about 2700 verbs, of which the infinitives end in *er*. Envoyer, *to send*, renvoyer, *to send back*, are conjugated like *parler*, except in the Future and Conditional. The former is *j'envérrai I shall send*, *j'envérois I should send*; and the latter is *je renvérrai I shall send back*, *je renvérrois I should send back*. Puer, *to stink*, has the Present Tense of the Indicative Mood, *je pus*.

Conjugation of a Verb in ir, issant, i.

| | | |
|-----------------------------|-------------------|-------------------------|
| <i>Infinitive</i> | <i>Finir</i> | <i>to finish</i> |
| <i>Participle Present</i> | <i>finissant</i> | <i>finishing</i> |
| <i>Participle Preterite</i> | <i>fini</i> | <i>finished</i> |
| <i>Compound Infinitive</i> | <i>avoir fini</i> | <i>to have finished</i> |
| <i>Compound Participle</i> | <i>ayant fini</i> | <i>having finished.</i> |

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present:

| | | |
|-------|----------------|-----------------------|
| Sing. | Je finis | <i>I finish</i> |
| | Tu finis | <i>thou finishest</i> |
| | Il finit | <i>he finishes</i> |
| Plur. | Nous finissons | <i>we finish</i> |
| | Vous finissez | <i>you finish</i> |
| | Ils finissent | <i>they finish</i> |

Imperfect.

| | | |
|-------|--------------|--------------------------|
| Sing. | Je finissois | <i>I did finish</i> |
| | Tu finissois | <i>thou didst finish</i> |
| | Il finissoit | <i>he did finish</i> |

K

Plur.

OF VERBS.

| | | |
|-------|-----------------|------------------------|
| Plur. | Nous finissions | <i>we did finish</i> |
| | Vous finissiez | <i>you did finish</i> |
| | Ils finisoient | <i>they did finish</i> |

Preterite.

| | | |
|-------|--------------|------------------------|
| Sing. | Je finis | <i>I finished</i> |
| | Tu finis | <i>thou finishedst</i> |
| | Il finit | <i>he finished</i> |
| Plur. | Nous finimes | <i>we finished</i> |
| | Vous finites | <i>you finished</i> |
| | Ils finirent | <i>they finished</i> |

Future.

| | | |
|-------|---------------|-------------------------|
| Sing. | Je finirai | <i>I shall finish</i> |
| | Tu finiras | <i>thou wilt finish</i> |
| | Il finira | <i>he will finish</i> |
| Plur. | Nous finirons | <i>we shall finish</i> |
| | Vous finirez | <i>you will finish</i> |
| | Ils finiront | <i>they will finish</i> |

Conditional.

| | | |
|-------|----------------|-----------------------------|
| Sing. | Je finirois | <i>I should finish</i> |
| | Tu finirois | <i>thou wouldest finish</i> |
| | Il finiroit | <i>he woul'd finish</i> |
| Plur. | Nous finirions | <i>we should finish</i> |
| | Vous finiriez | <i>you would finish</i> |
| | Ils finiroient | <i>they woul'd finish</i> |

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

| | | |
|------------|-----------------|---------------------------|
| Sing. | Je finisse | <i>I may finish</i> |
| | Tu finisses | <i>thou mayest finish</i> |
| | Il finisse | <i>he may finish</i> |
| Que. Plur. | Nous finissions | <i>we may finish</i> |
| | Vous finissiez | <i>you may finish</i> |
| | Ils finissent | <i>they may finish</i> |

Preterite.

Preterite.

| | | |
|------------|-----------------|------------------------------------|
| Sing. | Je finisse | <i>I finished, or might finish</i> |
| | Tu finisses | <i>thou finishedst</i> |
| | Il finit | <i>he finished</i> |
| Que. Plur. | Nous finissions | <i>we finished</i> |
| | Vous finissiez | <i>you finished</i> |
| | Ils finissent | <i>they finished</i> |

Imperative.

| | | |
|-------|------------------|------------------------|
| Sing. | Que je finisse | <i>let me finish</i> |
| | finis | <i>finish</i> |
| | qu'il finisse | <i>let him finish</i> |
| Plur. | finissions | <i>let us finish</i> |
| | finissez | <i>finish</i> |
| | qu'ils finissent | <i>let them finish</i> |

Compound Tenses.

| | | |
|--------------|------------------------------|---|
| J'ai fini | <i>I have finished</i> | J'aurois fini <i>I should have finished</i> |
| J'avois fini | <i>I had finished</i> | |
| J'eus fini | <i>I had finished</i> | J'aye fini <i>I may have finished</i> |
| J'aurai fini | <i>I shall have finished</i> | J'eusse fini <i>I had finished</i> |

Conjugation of a Verb in evoir, evant, u.

| | | |
|----------------------|------------|---------------------------------|
| Infinitive | Recevoir | <i>to receive</i> |
| Participle Present | recevant | <i>receiving</i> |
| Participle Preterite | reçu | <i>received, being received</i> |
| Compound Infinitive | avoir reçu | <i>to have received</i> |
| Compound Participle | ayant reçu | <i>having received</i> |

INDICATIVE MOOD.*Present.*

| | | |
|-------|-----------|-----------------------|
| Sing. | Je reçois | <i>I receive</i> |
| | Tu reçois | <i>thou receivest</i> |
| | Il reçoit | <i>he receives</i> |
| | | Plur. |

| | |
|---------------------|---------------------|
| Plur. Nous recevons | <i>we receive</i> |
| Vous recevez | <i>you receive</i> |
| Ils reçoivent | <i>they receive</i> |

Imperfect.

| | |
|----------------------|---------------------------|
| Sing. Je recevois | <i>I did receive</i> |
| Tu recevois | <i>thou didst receive</i> |
| Il recevoit | <i>he did receive</i> |
| Plur. Nous recevions | <i>we did receive</i> |
| Vous receviez | <i>you did receive</i> |
| Ils recevoient | <i>they did receive</i> |

Preterite.

| | |
|--------------------|------------------------|
| Sing. Je reçus | <i>I received</i> |
| Tu reçus | <i>thou receivedst</i> |
| Il reçut | <i>he received</i> |
| Plur. Nous reçumes | <i>we received</i> |
| Vous reçûtes | <i>you received</i> |
| Ils reçurent | <i>they received</i> |

Future.

| | |
|----------------------|--------------------------|
| Sing. Je recevrai | <i>I shall receive</i> |
| Tu recevras | <i>thou wilt receive</i> |
| Il recevrà | <i>he will receive</i> |
| Plur. Nous recevrons | <i>we shall receive</i> |
| Vous recevrez | <i>you will receive</i> |
| Ils recevront | <i>they will receive</i> |

Conditional.

| | |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------|
| Sing. Je recevrois | <i>I should receive</i> |
| Tu recevrois | <i>thou wouldst receive</i> |
| Il recevroit | <i>he would receive</i> |
| Plur. Nous recevrions | <i>we should receive</i> |
| Vous recevriez | <i>you would receive</i> |
| Ils recevroient | <i>they would receive</i> |

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

| | | |
|------------|----------------|----------------------------|
| Sing. | Je reçoive | <i>I may receive</i> |
| | Tu reçois | <i>thou mayest receive</i> |
| | Il reçoive | <i>he may receive</i> |
| Que. Plur. | Nous recevions | <i>we may receive</i> |
| | Vous récevez | <i>you may receive</i> |
| | Ils reçoivent | <i>they may receive</i> |

Preterite.

| | | |
|------------|-----------------|------------------------|
| Sing. | Je reçusse | <i>I received</i> |
| | Tu reçusses | <i>thou receivedst</i> |
| | Il reçut | <i>he received</i> |
| Que. Plur. | Nous reçussions | <i>we received</i> |
| | Vous reçussiez | <i>you received</i> |
| | Ils reçussent | <i>they received</i> |

Imperative Mood.

| | |
|------------------|-------------------------|
| Que je reçoive | <i>let me receive</i> |
| reçois | <i>receive</i> |
| qu'il reçoive | <i>let him receive</i> |
| reçevons | <i>let us receive</i> |
| reçevez | <i>receive</i> |
| qu'ils reçoivent | <i>let them receive</i> |

| | | | |
|--------------|------------------------------|---------------|-------------------------------|
| J'ai reçu | <i>I have received</i> | J'aurois reçu | <i>I should have received</i> |
| J'avois reçu | <i>I had received</i> | | [ed] |
| J'eus reçu | <i>I had received</i> | J'aye reçu | <i>I may have received</i> |
| J'aurai reçu | <i>I shall have received</i> | J'eusse reçu | <i>I had received</i> |

The Verbs conjugated like *recevoir* are,

| | | | |
|--|--------------------|-----------|------------------------------|
| Appercevoir | <i>to perceive</i> | devoir | <i>to owe, to be obliged</i> |
| concevoir | <i>to conceive</i> | percevoir | <i>to gather</i> |
| décevoir | <i>to deceive</i> | redevoir | <i>to owe again.</i> |
| Instead of <i>decevoir</i> we use <i>tromper</i> . | | | The |

The tenses of *devoir*, followed by an infinitive, are often Englished in this manner:

| | | | |
|-----------|--------------------|----------------------------------|-------------------|
| Je dois | <i>I am to</i> | nous devons | <i>we are to</i> |
| tu dois | <i>thou art to</i> | vous devez | <i>you are to</i> |
| il doit | <i>he is to</i> | ils doivent } <i>they are to</i> | <i>diner</i> |
| elle doit | <i>she is to</i> | elles doivent } | |

Je devois, &c. *I was to, &c.* J'aurois du, &c. *I ought to have, &c.*

Conjugation of a Verb in endre, ant, u.

| | | |
|--------------------------------------|-------------|-------------------------|
| <i>Infinitive Mood</i> | Vendre | <i>to sell</i> |
| <i>Participle Present</i> | vendant | <i>selling</i> |
| <i>Participle Preterite</i> | vendu | <i>sold, being sold</i> |
| <i>Compound of the Infinitive</i> | avoir vendu | <i>to have sold</i> |
| <i>Compound of the Part. Present</i> | ayant vendu | <i>having sold</i> |

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

| | |
|--------------------|---------------------|
| Sing. Je vends | <i>I sell</i> |
| Tu vends | <i>thou sellest</i> |
| Il vend | <i>he sells</i> |
| Plur. Nous vendons | <i>we sell</i> |
| Vous vendez | <i>you sell</i> |
| Ils vendent | <i>they sell</i> |

Imperfect.

| | |
|---------------------|------------------------|
| Sing. Je vendois | <i>I did sell</i> |
| Tu vendois | <i>thou didst sell</i> |
| Il vendoit | <i>he did sell</i> |
| Plur. Nous vendions | <i>we did sell</i> |
| Vous vendiez | <i>you did sell</i> |
| Ils vendoient | <i>they did sell</i> |

Præterite.

| | |
|-----------------|---------------------|
| Sing. Je vendis | <i>I sold</i> |
| Tu vendis | <i>thou soldest</i> |
| Il vendit | <i>he sold</i> |

Plur.

| | | |
|-------|---------------|------------------|
| Plur. | Nous vendîmes | <i>we sold</i> |
| | Vous vendîtes | <i>you sold</i> |
| | Ils vendirent | <i>they sold</i> |

Future.

| | | |
|-------|---------------|-----------------------|
| Sing. | Je vendrai | <i>I shall sell</i> |
| | Tu vendras | <i>thou wilt sell</i> |
| | Il vendra | <i>he will sell</i> |
| Plur. | Nous vendrons | <i>we shall sell</i> |
| | Vous vendrez | <i>you will sell</i> |
| | Ils vendront | <i>they will sell</i> |

Conditional.

| | | |
|-------|----------------|--------------------------|
| Sing. | Je vendrois | <i>I should sell</i> |
| | Tu vendrois | <i>thou wouldst sell</i> |
| | Il vendroit | <i>he would sell</i> |
| Plur. | Nous vendrions | <i>we should sell</i> |
| | Vous vendriez | <i>you would sell</i> |
| | Ils vendroient | <i>they would sell</i> |

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

| | | |
|------------|---------------|-------------------------|
| Sing. | Je vende | <i>I may sell</i> |
| | Tu vendes | <i>thou mayest sell</i> |
| | Il vende | <i>he may sell</i> |
| Que. Plur. | Nous vendions | <i>we may sell</i> |
| | Vous vendiez | <i>you may sell</i> |
| | Ils vendent | <i>they may sell</i> |

Preterite.

| | | |
|------------|------------------|---------------------|
| Sing. | Je vendisse | <i>I sold.</i> |
| | Tu vendisses | <i>thou soldest</i> |
| | Il vendit | <i>he sold</i> |
| Que. Plur. | Nous vendissions | <i>we sold</i> |
| | Vous vendissiez | <i>you sold</i> |
| | Ils vendissent | <i>they sold</i> |

Imperative.

Imperative Mood.

| | | |
|-------|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| Sing. | Que je vende vends qu'il vende | let me sell sell let him sell |
| Plur. | vendons vendez qu'ils vendent | let us sell sell let them sell |

Compound Tenses.

| | | | |
|----------------|-------------------|----------------|-------------------------|
| J'ai vendu | I have sold | J'aurois vendu | I should have (sold |
| J'avois vendu, | I had sold | J'aye vendu | I may have sold |
| J'eus vendu | I had sold | J'eusse vendu | I had sold |
| J'aurai vendu | I shall have sold | | |

The following Verbs are conjugated as vendre.

Abattre, to pull down.
 attendre, to expect, to wait for.
 combattre, to fight.
 condescendre, to comply.
 confondre, to confound.
 correspondre, to correspond.
 se débattre, to struggle.
 défendre, to forbid, defend.
 descendre, to descend.
 s'ébattre, to sport.
 entendre, to hear, understand.
 étendre, to extend.
 fendre, to cleave.
 fondre, to melt, to rush on.
 mordre, to bite.
 pendre, to hang.

battre, to beat.
 se battre, to fight.
 perdre, to loss.
 pondre, to lay eggs.
 pretendre, to pretend.
 rabattre, to abate.
 rebattre, to beat again, to repeat.
 refondre, to recast.
 rendre, to render.
 répandre, to spread, spill.
 repondre, to lay eggs again.
 répondre, to answer.
 survendre, to over-rate.
 tendre, to bend, to stretch, to tend.
 tondre, to shear.
 tordre, to twist.

The *Passive* is formed by adding the Participle Preterite of the verb which you are conjugating, to the tenses of *être*. But the learner must remember to make the Participle Preterite agree in gender and number with the nominative, or agent of the verb.

Present

| | | |
|--------------|---|---|
| Present. | Je suis vendu, &c. nous sommes vendus, | <i>I am sold.</i> <i>we are sold.</i> |
| Imperfect. | J'étois vendu, &c. nous étions vendus, | <i>I was sold.</i> <i>we were sold.</i> |
| Preterite. | Je fus vendu, &c. nous fumes vendus, | <i>I was sold.</i> <i>we were sold.</i> |
| Future. | Je serai vendu, nous serons vendus, | <i>I shall be sold.</i> <i>we shall be sold.</i> |
| Conditional. | Je seroient vendu, nous serions vendus, | <i>I should be sold.</i> <i>we should be sold.</i> |
| Comp. Pres. | J'ai été vendu, nous avions été vendus, | <i>I have been sold.</i> <i>we have been sold.</i> |
| Comp. Imp. | J'avois été vendu, nous avions été vendus, | <i>I had been sold.</i> <i>we had been sold.</i> |
| Comp. Pret. | J'eus été vendu, | <i>I had been sold.</i> |
| Comp. Fut. | J'aurai été vendu, | <i>I shall have been sold.</i> |
| Comp. Cond. | J'aurois été vendu, | <i>I shguld have been sold.</i> |
| Pref. Subj. | Je sois vendu, | <i>I may be sold.</i> |
| Preterite. | Je fusse vendu | <i>I was sold, might be sold.</i> |
| Comp. Pres. | J'aye été vendu, | <i>I may have been sold.</i> |
| Comp. Pret. | J'easse été vendu, | <i>I had been sold.</i> |

Imperative.

| | |
|--|---|
| Que je sois vendu, <i>let me be sold.</i> | foyons vendus, <i>let us be sold.</i> |
| sois vendu, <i>be thou sold.</i> | foyez vendu, <i>be ye sold.</i> |
| qu'il soit vendu, <i>let him be sold.</i> | qu'ils soient vendus, <i>let them be sold.</i> |

Formation of the Imperative Mood.

The Imperative mood is formed from the present Indicative and Present Subjunctive. The persons from the Present Indicative are, the Second Singular, First and Second Plural, suppressing *tu*, *nous*, and *vous*, as,

| Pres. Ind. | Imperative. |
|-----------------|----------------------------------|
| Tu finis, | finis, <i>finish.</i> |
| Nous finissons, | finissons, <i>let us finish.</i> |
| Vous finissez, | finissez, <i>finish.</i> |

The other three persons are taken from the first and third persons singular, and the third person plural, of the Subjunctive Mood, by adding *que* to each person, as,

| | |
|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| Que je finisse | <i>let me finish</i> |
| Qu'il, qu'elle finisse | <i>let him, her finish</i> |
| Qu'ils, qu'elles finissent | <i>let them finish</i> |

Verbs in *er*, and those whose second person singular of the present of the indicative is in *es*, have *e* mute in the second person singular of the imperative; but if followed by *en*, or *y*, the *s* is retained, as,

| | |
|-------------|--------------------|
| apportes-en | <i>bring some</i> |
| portes y | <i>carry there</i> |

The Imperative Mood of *avoir* and *être* is like the Present Subjunctive of these verbs, only suppressing *tu*, *nous*, and *vous*, as

| | | | |
|--------------|---------------------|----------|-----------------------------|
| Que j'aye | <i>let me have</i> | Ayons | <i>let us have</i> |
| Aye, | <i>have (thou)</i> | Ayez | <i>have</i> |
| Qu'il ait | <i>let him have</i> | Qu'ils | <i>ayent, let them have</i> |
| Qu'elle ait | <i>let her have</i> | Qu'elles | |
| Que je sois | <i>let me be</i> | Soyons | <i>let us be</i> |
| Sois | <i>be</i> | Soyez | <i>be</i> |
| Qu'il soit | <i>let him be</i> | Qu'ils | <i>soyent, let them be</i> |
| Qu'elle soit | <i>let her be</i> | Qu'elles | |

The second person singular of the Imperative Mood of *avoir* is *aye* without *s*; but it is written and sounded with *s* before *en* and *y*, as *ayes-en*, *ayes-y*.

The Imperative Mood of *savoir* to know, is

| | | | |
|---------------|---------------------|------------------|----------------------|
| Que je sache | <i>let me know</i> | Sachons | <i>let us know</i> |
| Sache | <i>know thou</i> | Sachez | <i>know</i> |
| Qu'il sache | <i>let him know</i> | Qu'ils sachent | <i>let them know</i> |
| Qu'elle sache | <i>let her know</i> | Qu'elles sachent | |

Verba

Verbs commonly called IRREGULAR.

| Inf. | Aller to go. | Part. Pref. | allant going. | Part. Pret. | allé gone. |
|----------|---------------------|-------------|------------------|-------------|---------------|
| Pref. | Je vais, or vas, | vas | va | allons | allez |
| Imp. | J'all-ois | ois | oit | ions | iez |
| Pret. | J'all-ai | as | a | âmes | âtes |
| Fut. | J'i-rai | ras | ra | r ons | rez |
| Cond. | J'i rois | rois | roit | r ions | riez |
| Sub. Pr. | J'aill-e | es | e | allions | alliez |
| ¶ Pret. | J'all-asfe | asse | ât | affions | affiez |

Imperative Mood.

| | | |
|-------------|-------|----------------|
| Que j'aille | va | qu'il aille |
| let me go | go | let him go |
| allons | allez | qu'ils aillent |
| let us go | go | let them go |

This verb takes *être* in the compound tenses. *S'en aller, to go away*, points out the direct departure from a mentioned or supposed place.

| | |
|----------|-----------------------|
| Infin. | Acquérir, to acquire. |
| P. Pres. | acquérant, acquiring. |
| P. Pres. | acquis, acquired. |

| | | | | | | |
|------------|---------------|-------|------|-------------|--------|------------|
| Pref. | J'acqui-érs | érs | ért | acquér-ons | ez | acquièrent |
| Imp. | J'acquér-ois | ois | oit | ions | iez | oient |
| Pret. | J'acqu-is | is | it | imes | ites | irent |
| Fut. | J'acquér-rai | ras | ra | r ons | rez | ront |
| Cond. | J'acquér-rois | rois | roit | r ions | riez | roient |
| Sub. Pres. | J'acqui-ére | ères | èrre | acquè-rions | riez | acquierent |
| ¶ Pret. | J'acqui-is | issés | it | iffions | issiez | issent |

Conquérir *to conquer*, is used only in the Infinitive, Preterites, Compound Tenses, and Participle Present. Requérir *to require*, is used in law. Quérir *to fetch*, is used only in the Infinitive,

OF IRREGULAR VERBS.

nitive, with *aller*, *venir* to come, and *envoyer* to send; as *venez quérir* come and fetch, *allez quérir* go and fetch, *envoyez quérir* send to fetch; instead of *enquérir*, *s'enquérir*, to inquire after, we say *s'informer*.

Inf. Boire, to drink.
 P. Pref. buvant, drinking.
 P. Pret. bu, drank.

| | | | | | | |
|---------------|--------------------------|-------|------|---------|--------|---------|
| Pres. | Je b-ois | ois | oit | buв-ons | ez | boivent |
| Imp. | Je buv-ois | ois | oit | ions | iez | oient |
| Pret. | Je b-us | us | ût | ûmes | ûtez | urent |
| Fut. | Je boi-rai | ras | ra | rons | rez | ront |
| Cond. | Je boi-rois | rois | roit | rions | riez | roient |
| que. S. Pres. | Je boiv-e | es | e | buvions | buviez | boivent |
| que. Pret. | Je b-usse | usses | ût | ussions | ussiez | ussent |
| | reboire, to drink again. | | | | | |

Bouillir, to boil.
 bouillant, boiling.
 bouilli, boiled.

| | | | | | | |
|---------------|-----------------|-------|------|------------|--------|-----------|
| Pres. | Je b-ous | ous | out | bouill-ons | ez | bouillent |
| Imp. | Je bouill-ois | ois | oit | ions | ièz | oient |
| Pret. | Je bouill-is | is | it | îmes | îtes | irent |
| Fut. | Je bouilli-rai | ras | ra | rons | rez | ront |
| Cond. | Je bouilli-rois | rois | roit | rions | riez | roient |
| que. S. Pres. | Je bouill-e | es | e | ions | iez | ent |
| que. Pret. | Je bouill-is | isses | it | issions | issiez | issent |

This verb is used only in the Infinitive and third persons of the Tenses. As it is a neuter verb, we never say, *bouillir quelque chose*, to boil something, but *faire bouillir quelque chose*. *Ebouillir* to overboil.

Cheoir, or Choisir, to fall.
 chu, fallen.

This verb is seldom used; Tomber, to fall, has taken its place.

Déchoir, or Décheoir, to fall from
 déchoyant, or déchéant, falling from } to waste away.
 déchu, fallen from } to decay.

Pref.

| | | | | | | |
|----------|----------------|-------|------|-------------|---------|----------|
| Pref. | Je déch-ois | ois | oit | oyons or | oyez | oyent |
| | | | | dechéons | dechéez | dechéent |
| Imp. | Je déchoy-ois | ois | oit | ions | iez | oient |
| Pret. | Je déch-us | us | ut | ûmes | ûtés | urent |
| Fut. | Je déchèr-rai | ras | ra | rons | rez | ront |
| Cond. | Je déchèr-rois | rois | roit | rions | riez | roient |
| S. Pref. | Je déchoy-e | es | e | ions | iez | ent |
| Pret. | Je déch-usse | usses | ût | ussions | ussiez | ussent |

This verb takes either *avoir* or *être* for its Compound Tenses. In law books we find *qu'il dechée*, *qu'ils dechéent*, in the Present Tense of the Subj. Mood.

Echoir, *to expire, to fall to, to escheat.*
échéant, expiring, falling to.
échu, expired, fallen to.

This verb is used impersonally ; *il échète*, it expires ; *le terme est échu*, the time is out, or expired ; *le terme écherra demain*, the time will be out to-morrow. We say too, *si le cas y échète*, if the occasion occurs.

Clore, *to close, or clôre.*
clos, closed.

| | | | | | | |
|-------|----------|------|------|------|-----|------|
| Pref. | Je clos | clos | clot | | | |
| Fut. | clor-rai | ras | ra | rons | rez | ront |

Derivatiyes, *éclorre* to hatch, *éclos* hatched, speaking of insects or birds. It signifies also to blow open, to bloom, or bud ; *enclore* to enclose, *enclos* inclosed, *déclorre* to disclose, *déclos* disclosed, *forclorre* to forcloose, *forclos* foreclofed.

Confire, *to confect.*
confisant, confecting.
confit, confected.

| | | | | | | |
|-------|------------|-----|-----|------------|------|-------|
| Pref. | Je conf-is | is | it | confis-ons | ez | ent |
| Imp. | confis-ois | ois | oit | ions | iez | oient |
| Pret. | conf-is | is | it | îmes | îtes | irent |
| Fut. | confi-rai | ras | ra | r ons | rez | ront |

Cond.

| | | | | | | |
|---------------------------------|---------------|-------|------|---------|--------|--------|
| Cond. | Je confi-rois | rois | roit | rions | riez | roient |
| S. Pres. | confi-e | es | e | ions | iez | ent |
| Pret. | confi-isse | isses | it | issions | issiez | issent |
| <i>déconfire, to discomfit.</i> | | | | | | |

*Conclure, to conclude.
concluant, concluding.
conclu, concluded.*

| | | | | | | |
|----------|-------------|-------|------|---------|--------|--------|
| Pref. | Je concl-us | us | ut | uons | uez | uent |
| Imp. | conclu-ois | ois | oit | ions | iez | oient |
| Pret. | concl-u | us | ut | ûmes | ûtes | urent |
| Fut. | conclu-rai | ras | ra | rons | rez | ront |
| Cond. | conclu-rois | rois | roit | rions | riez | roient |
| S. Pres. | conclu-e | es | e | ions | iez | ent |
| Pret. | concl-uſſe | uſſes | ut | uſſions | uſſiez | uſſent |

The derivative, *exclure* to exclude, is conjugated as its primitive ; but the Participle Preterite is *exclus*, and the Feminine is *exclude* or *exclue*.

*Connoître, to know.
connoissant, knowing.
conu, known.*

| | | | | | | |
|----------|---------------|-------|------|---------|---------|---------|
| Pref. | Je conn-ois | ois | oit | oiffons | oiffiez | oiffent |
| Imp. | connœſſi-ois | ois | oit | ions | iez | oient |
| Pret. | connœu | us | ut | ûmes | ûtes | urent |
| Fut. | connœiſſ-rai | ras | ra | rons | rez | ront |
| Cond. | connœiſſ-rois | rois | roit | rions | riez | roient |
| S. Pres. | connœiſſ-e | es | e | ions | iez | ent |
| Pret. | connœuſſe | uſſes | ut | uſſions | uſſiez | uſſent |

*Accroître, to increase, to grow
apparoître, to appear
comparoître, to appear
croître, to grow
decroître, to decrease
disparoître, to disappear
méconnoître, to forget*

*paroître, to appear
reconnoître, to know again, to
acknowledge, to re-
connoître, a mili-
tary expression
recroître, to grow again
reparoître, to appear again
Apparoître*

Apparoître or apparoir, and comparoître, are law terms, meaning to appear before a judge, as when a person has received a summons to appear before him.

| | |
|----------|----------------|
| Coudre, | <i>to sew.</i> |
| cousant, | <i>sewing.</i> |
| cousu, | <i>sewed.</i> |

| | | | | | | |
|------------|-----------|-------|------|---------|--------|---------|
| Pref. | Je cou-ds | ds | d | cousons | ez | cousent |
| Imp. | cous-ois | ois | oit | ions | iez | orient |
| Pret. | cous-is | is | it | îmes | îtes | irent |
| Fut. | coud-rai | ras | ra | rôns | rez | ront |
| Cond. | coud-rois | rois | roît | rions | riez | roient |
| S. Pres. | cous-e | es | e | ions | iez | ent |
| que. Pret. | cous-isſe | isſes | ît | isſions | isſiez | isſent |

Découdre to unsew, and recoudre to sew again, are like their primitives.

| | |
|----------|-----------------|
| Courir, | <i>to run.</i> |
| courant, | <i>running.</i> |
| couru, | <i>run.</i> |

| | | | | | | |
|------------|-----------|-------|------|---------|--------|--------|
| Pref | Je cour-s | s | t | ons | ez | ent |
| Imp. | cour-ois | ois | oit | ions | iez | orient |
| Pret. | cour-us | us | ut | ûmes | ûtes | urent |
| Fut. | cour-rai | ras | ra | rôns | rez | ront |
| Cond. | cour-rois | rois | roît | rions | riez | roient |
| S. Pres. | cour-e | es | e | ions | iez | ent |
| que. Pret. | cour-uſſe | uſſes | ût | uſſions | uſſiez | uſſent |

These seven verbs are conjugated in the same way :

Accourir, *to run to*
concourir, *to concur*
discourir, *to discourse*
encourir, *to incur*

parcourir, *to run over*
recourir, *to have recourse*
fécourir, *to assist*

Accourir is conjugated with avoir or être.

| | |
|----------|------------------|
| Couvrir, | <i>to cover.</i> |
| couvant, | <i>covering.</i> |
| couvert, | <i>covered.</i> |

Pres.

| | | | | | | |
|----------|-------------|-------|------|---------|--------|--------|
| Pref. | Je couvr-e | es | e | ons | ez | ent |
| Imp. | couvr-ois | ois | oit | ions | iez | oient |
| Pret. | couvr-is | is | it | îmes | ites | irent |
| Fut. | couvri-rai | ras | ra | r ons | rez | ront |
| Cond. | couvri-rois | rois | roit | r ions | riez | roient |
| S. pref. | couvr-e | es | e | ions | iez | ent |
| Pret. | couvr-isſe | isſes | it | isſions | isſiez | isſent |

In the same manner the following verbs are conjugated :

| | | | |
|--|---------------------|------------|--------------------------------|
| découvrir, | <i>to discover.</i> | méſoffrir, | <i>to underbid.</i> |
| offrir, | <i>to offer.</i> | recouvrir, | <i>to cover again ; but</i> |
| ouvrir, | <i>to open.</i> | | <i>do not confound it with</i> |
| souffrir, | <i>to suffer.</i> | | <i>recouvrer, to recover.</i> |
| The verb <i>méſoffrir</i> is very ſeldom uſed. | | | |

| | |
|------------|-----------------|
| Craindre, | <i>to fear.</i> |
| craignant, | <i>fearing.</i> |
| caint, | <i>feared.</i> |

| | | | | | | |
|----------|-------------|--------|-------|------------|--------|--------|
| Pref. | Je crains | crains | caint | craign-ons | ez | ent |
| Imp. | craign-ois | ois | oit | ions | iez | oient |
| Pret. | craign-is | is | it | îmes | ites | irent |
| Fut. | craind-rai | ras | ra | r ons | rez | ront |
| Cond. | craind-rois | rois | roit | r ions | riez | roient |
| S. Pref. | craign-e | es | e | ions | iez | ent |
| Pret. | craigniffe | isſes | it | isſions | isſiez | isſent |

| | |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Aſtreindre, to restrain, tie up. | éteindre, to extinguish. |
| atteindre, to reach, hit. | étreindre, to bind faster. |
| aveindre, to overtake. | feindre, to feign. |
| (hardly uſed) | joindre, to join. |
| ceindre, to gird. | oindre, to anoint. |
| contraindre, to constrain. | peindre, to paint. |
| déceindre, to ungird. | plaindre, to pity. |
| déteindre, to uncolour. | poindre, to peep, to dawn. |
| disjoindre, to disjoin. | receindre, to gird again. |
| enceindre, to enclose. | reſtraindre, to restrain. |
| enfreindre, to infringe. | reteindre, to dye again. |
| enjoindre, to enjoin. | ſe plaindre, to complain. |
| épreindre, to squeeze out. | teindre, to dye, to colour. |

Croire,

Croire, *to believe*
croyant; believing
cru, believed

| | | | | | | |
|---------------|-----------|-------|------|----------|---------|--------|
| Pref. | Je cr-ois | ois | oit | croy-ons | ez | ent |
| Imp. | croy-ois | ois | oit | ions | iez | orient |
| Pret. | cr-us | us | ut | ûmes | ûtes | urent |
| Fut. | croi-rai | ras | ra | rôns | rez | ront |
| Cond. | croi-rois | rois | roit | rions | riez | roient |
| S. Pref. | croy-e | es | e | ions | iez | ent |
| que. Pret. | cr-usse | usses | ût | ussions | usseiez | ussent |

Its derivative *accroire* is used in the infinitive only, and that too with the verb *faire* before it, as *faire accroire* to impose upon, and *s'en faire accroire* to be self-conceited.

Cueillir, *to gather, to pick up*
cueillant, gathering
cueilli, gathered

| | | | | | | |
|---------------|--------------|-------|------|---------|--------|--------|
| Pref. | Je cueill-e | es | e | ons | ez | ent |
| Imp. | cueill-ois | ois | oit | ions | iez | orient |
| Pret. | cueill-is | is | it | îmes | îtes | irent |
| Fut. | cueille-rai | ras | ra | rôns | rez | ront |
| Cond. | cueille-rois | rois | roit | rions | riez | roient |
| S. Pref. | cueill-e | es | e | ions | iez | ent |
| que. Pret. | cueill-isse | isses | ît | issions | issiez | issent |

Accueillir, to entertain, make welcome; recueillir, to collect, to gather in.

Dire, *to say, to tell*
distant, saying, telling
dit, said, told

| | | | | | | |
|---------------|---------|-------|------|---------|--------|--------|
| Pref. | Je dis | dis | dit | disons | dites | disent |
| Imp. | dis-ois | ois | oit | ions | iez | orient |
| Pret. | d-is | is | it | îmes | îtes | irent |
| Fut. | di-rai | ras | ra | rôns | rez | ront |
| Cond. | di-rois | rois | roit | rions | riez | roient |
| S. Pref. | dis-e | es | e | ions | iez | ent |
| que. Pret. | disse | isses | ît | issions | issiez | issent |

Contredire,

OF IRREGULAR VERBS.

| | | | |
|-------------------|----------------------|------------|---------------------|
| Contredire, | <i>to contradict</i> | prédire, | <i>to foretel</i> |
| interdire, | <i>to interdict</i> | redire, | <i>to say again</i> |
| médire, <i>to</i> | <i>flander</i> | se dédire, | <i>to unsay</i> |

All these derivatives have their second persons of the plural of the present indicative in *isez*, as *vous prédissez* you foretel, except *redire*, which is *vous redites*. *Maudire* to curse, *maudissant* cursing, *maudit* cursed, doubles the *s* through all its tenses. *Circoncire* to circumcise, is like *dire*, except the participle preterite, which is *circoncis*; and its second person plural, present indicative, is *vous circoncisez*.

| | |
|----------|-----------------|
| Dormir, | <i>to sleep</i> |
| dormant, | <i>sleeping</i> |
| dormi, | <i>sleep</i> |

| | | | | | | |
|--------------|------------|-------|------|----------|--------|--------|
| Pref. | Je dors | dors | dort | dorm-ons | ez | ent |
| Imp. | dorm-ois | ois | oit | ions | iez | oient |
| Pret. | dorm-is | is | it | imes | îtes | irent |
| Fut. | dormi-rai | ras | ra | rons | rez | ront |
| Cond. | dormi-rois | rois | roit | rions | riez | roient |
| S. Pref. | dorm-e | es | e | ions | iez | ent |
| que Pret. | dorm-iſſe | iſſes | it | iſſions | iſſiez | iſſent |

| | | | |
|-------------|-----------------------|---------------|-----------------------------|
| s'endormir, | <i>to fall asleep</i> | redormir, | <i>to sleep again</i> |
| endormir, | <i>to lull asleep</i> | se rendormir, | <i>to fall asleep again</i> |

| | |
|-----------|-----------------|
| Ecrire, | <i>to write</i> |
| écrivant, | <i>writing</i> |
| écrit, | <i>written</i> |

| | | | | | | |
|--------------|------------|-------|------|-----------|--------|--------|
| Pref. | J'écr-is | is | it | écriv-ons | ez | ent |
| Imp. | écriv-ois | ois | oit | ions | iez | oient |
| Pret. | écriv-is | is | it | imes | îtes | irent |
| Fut. | écri-rai | ras | ra | rons | rez | ront |
| Cond. | écri-rois | rois | roit | rions | riez | roient |
| S. Pref. | écriv-e | es | e | ions | iez | ent |
| que Pret. | écriv-iſſe | iſſes | it | iſſions | iſſiez | iſſent |

| | | | |
|---------------|------------------------|-------------|-----------------------|
| Circonscrire, | <i>to circumscribe</i> | proscrire, | <i>to proscribe</i> |
| décrire, | <i>to describe</i> | récrire, | <i>to write again</i> |
| inscrire, | <i>to inscribe</i> | souscrire, | <i>to subscribe</i> |
| prescrire, | <i>to prescribe</i> | transcrire, | <i>to transcribe</i> |

Faire,

Faire, *to make, to do*
 fesant, *making, doing*
 fait, *made, done*

| | | | | | | |
|----------|----------|--------|-------|----------|---------|---------|
| Pref. | Je f-ais | ais | ait | fesons | faites | font |
| Imp. | fes-ois | ois | oit | ions | iez | oient |
| Pret. | f-is | is | it | imes | ites | irent |
| Fut. | fe-rai | ras | ra | ron̄s | rez | ront |
| Cond. | fe-rois | rois | roit | rions | riez | roient |
| S. Pres. | fasse | fasses | fasse | fassions | fassiez | fassent |
| Pret. | f-isſe | iſſes | it | iſſions | iſſiez | iſſent |

contrefaire, *to counterfeit* refaire, *to do again*
 défaire, *to undo* satisfaire, *to satisfy*
 faire faire, *to bespeak, to order* surfaire, *to exact*
 redéfaire, *to undo again*

Many authors spell the participle present and imperfect *faisant, faisois*.

Forsaire to fail, *trespafs*, *malfaire* to do mischief, are used only in the infinitive and compound tenses, as *il a malfait*. We do not say, *nous malfesons*, but *nous fesons mal*.

Fleurir, *to flourish*
 fleurissant, *flourishing*
 fleuri, *flourished*

Is like *finir* to finish; but, speaking of empires, sciences, and arts, we write and say, *florisoit*, *florissent*, *florissant*, *florante*; as *le royaume étoit florissant*, *les lettres florisoient en Italie*, the kingdom was flourishing, letters were flourishing in Italy.

Frir, *to fry*
 fesant frir, *frying*
 frit, *fried*

This verb is only used in the Infinitive and Part. Preterite; we conjugate it by adding *faire* to it, as *nous fesons frir*, *je fesois frir*, &c. we fry, I did fry.

Fuir, *to shun, to fly*
 fuyant, *shunning*
 fui, *shunned*

OF IRREGULAR VERBS.

| | | | | | | |
|----------|----------|------|------|---------|--------|--------|
| Pref. | Je fu-is | is | it | yons | yez | yent |
| Imp. | fuy-ois | ois | oit | ions | iez | orient |
| Pret. | fu-is | is | it | îmes | ites | irent |
| Fut. | fui-rai | ras | ra | rons | rez | roient |
| Cond. | fui-rois | rois | roit | rions | riez | roient |
| S. Pres. | fuy-e | es | e | fuyions | fuyiez | fuyent |

S'envuir to run away ; its compound tenses are, as all the reflected verbs, conjugated with *être*, as *je me suis enfui*, I have run away. The simple preterite tenses are not used ; instead of which we say, *je pris la fuite*, *que je pris la fuite*, I took to flight, from *prendre*, to take.

Gefir, to lie,

Is only used in the Third Person ; *il git* he lies, *ils gisent* they lie, *il gisoit* he did lay, *il gisoit malade dans son lit*. *Ci* or *cy git* here lies, is the usual way of the beginning of epitaphs.

| | |
|-----------|---------|
| Hair, | to hate |
| haissant, | hating |
| hai, | hated |

| | | | | | | |
|-------|-----------|-----|-----|----------|---------|----------|
| Pref. | Je hais | ais | ait | haïssons | haïssez | haïssent |
| Imp. | haïss-ois | ois | oit | ions | iez | orient |

This verb is like *finir*. The *h* is sounded ; the *ai* marked with the two titles through all the verb is a real diphthong ; but the singular of the present is sounded as if written *he*,

| | |
|---------|---------|
| Lire, | to read |
| lisant, | reading |
| lu, | read |

| | | | | | | |
|----------|---------|-------|------|---------|-------|--------|
| Pref. | Je lis | lis | lit | lis-ons | ez | ent |
| Imp. | lis-ois | ois | oit | ions | iez | orient |
| Pret. | l-is | is | ut | ûmes | ûtes | urent |
| Fut. | li-rai | ras | ra | rons | rez | ront |
| Cond. | li-rois | rois | roit | rions | riez | roient |
| S. Pres. | lis-e | es | e | ions | iez | ent |
| Pret. | l-usse | usses | ût | ussions | usiez | ussent |

Rélier

Relire to read again, *élire* to elect, *suffire* to suffice, are conjugated as *lire*; but the Part. Pret. of *suffire* is *suffi* sufficed, and the Preterites are *je suffis*, *je suffise*.

Mentir, *to lie*
mentant, *lying*
menti, *lied*

| | | | | | | |
|----------|------------|-------|------|----------|--------|--------|
| Pres. | Je mens | mens | ment | ment-ons | ez | ent |
| Imp. | ment-ois | ois | oit | ions | ies | oient |
| Pret. | ment-is | is | it | imes | îtes | irent |
| Fut. | menti-rai | ras | ra | rons | rez | ront |
| Cond. | menti-rois | rois | roit | rions | riez | roient |
| S. Pres. | ment-e | es | e | ions | iez | ent |
| Pret. | ment-isſe | isſes | it | iffions | isſiez | iffent |

| | | | |
|--------------|---|---|--|
| Consentir, | <i>to consent.</i> | fèrvir, | <i>to serve.</i> |
| démentir, | <i>to give the lie.</i> | se fèrvir, | <i>to make use of.</i> |
| départir, | <i>to separate.</i> | sortir, | <i>to go out.</i> |
| se départir, | <i>to desist, yield.</i> | repartir, | <i>to set out again, to reply.</i> |
| déſſèrvir, | <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> <i>to perform the duty</i> <i>of a parson.</i> <i>to clear a table.</i> <i>to do a bad office.</i> </div> | <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> répartir, répartiſ- fant, réparti, as finir, </div> | <i>to divide.</i> |
| partir, | <i>to set out.</i> | repentir, | <i>to repent.</i> |
| mi-partir, | <i>to divide through the middle.</i> | resentir, | <i>to resent, to feel again.</i> |
| préſſentir, | <i>to forefee.</i> | reſſortir, | <i>to go out again.</i> |
| ſentir, | <i>to ſmell, feel.</i> | <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> reſſortir, reſſor- tissant, reſſor- ti, as finir, </div> | <i>to be within the jurisdiction of a court.</i> |

Partir, repartir, sortir, and reſſortir, are conjugated with être in the Compound Tenses.

Mettre, *to put*
mèttant, *putting*
mis, *put*

| | | | | | | |
|----------|-----------|-------|------|----------|--------|--------|
| Pres. | Je m-èts | èts | èt | mètt-ons | ez | ent |
| Imp. | mètt-ois | ois | oit | ions | iez | oient |
| Pret. | m-is | is | it | imes | îtes | irent |
| Fut. | mètt-rai | ras | ra | rons | rez | ront |
| Cond. | mètt-rois | rois | roit | rions | riez | roient |
| S. Pres. | mètt-e | es | e | ions | iez | ent |
| Pret. | m-isſe | isſes | it | iffions | isſiez | iffent |

Admettre,

| | | | | |
|----------------|---------------------------|---|--------------|------------------------------|
| Admettre, | <i>to admit</i> | . | omettre, | <i>to omit</i> |
| commettre, | <i>to commit</i> | | permettre, | <i>to permit</i> |
| compromettre, | <i>to compromise</i> | | promettre, | <i>to promise</i> |
| démettre, | <i>to remove, dismiss</i> | | remettre, | <i>to deliver, put again</i> |
| se démettre, | <i>to resign</i> | | soumettre, | <i>to submit</i> |
| s'entremettre, | <i>to intermingle</i> | | transfettre, | <i>to transmit</i> |

| | |
|-----------|-----------------|
| Moudre, | <i>to grind</i> |
| moultant, | <i>grinding</i> |
| moulu, | <i>ground</i> |

| | | | | | | |
|----------|-------------------|--------------|-------------|------------------|--------------|---------------|
| Pref. | Je mou- <i>ds</i> | <i>ds</i> | <i>d</i> | moul- <i>ons</i> | <i>ez</i> | <i>ent</i> |
| Imp. | moul- <i>ois</i> | <i>ois</i> | <i>oit</i> | ions | <i>iez</i> | <i>oient</i> |
| Pret. | moul- <i>us</i> | <i>us</i> | <i>ut</i> | ûmes | <i>ûtes</i> | <i>urent</i> |
| Fut. | moud- <i>rai</i> | <i>ras</i> | <i>ra</i> | rôns | <i>rez</i> | <i>ront</i> |
| Cond. | moud- <i>rois</i> | <i>rois</i> | <i>roit</i> | rions | <i>riez</i> | <i>roient</i> |
| S. Pref. | moul- <i>e</i> | <i>es</i> | <i>e</i> | ions | <i>iez</i> | <i>ent</i> |
| Pret. | moul- <i>usse</i> | <i>usses</i> | <i>ût</i> | ussions | <i>usiez</i> | <i>ussent</i> |

Its derivatives are *remoudre* to grind again, and *enmoudre* to whet, to set on edge.

| | |
|----------|---------------|
| Mourir, | <i>to die</i> |
| mourant, | <i>dying</i> |
| mort, | <i>died</i> |

| | | | | | | |
|----------|-------------------|--------------|-------------|-------------------|--------------|----------------|
| Pref. | Je m-eurs | <i>eurs</i> | <i>eurt</i> | mour- <i>ons</i> | <i>ez</i> | <i>meurent</i> |
| Imp. | mour- <i>ois</i> | <i>ois</i> | <i>oit</i> | ions | <i>iez</i> | <i>oient</i> |
| Pret. | mour- <i>us</i> | <i>us</i> | <i>ut</i> | ûmes | <i>ûtes</i> | <i>urent</i> |
| Fut. | mour- <i>rai</i> | <i>ras</i> | <i>ra</i> | rôns | <i>rez</i> | <i>ront</i> |
| Cond. | mour- <i>rois</i> | <i>rois</i> | <i>roit</i> | rions | <i>riez</i> | <i>roient</i> |
| S. Pref. | meur- <i>e</i> | <i>es</i> | <i>e</i> | mour- <i>ions</i> | <i>iez</i> | <i>meurent</i> |
| Pret. | mour- <i>usse</i> | <i>usses</i> | <i>ût</i> | ussions | <i>usiez</i> | <i>ussent</i> |

Se mourir to be a-dying; *mourir* takes *être* in its Compound Tenses.

| | |
|----------|----------------|
| Mouvoir, | <i>to move</i> |
| mouvant, | <i>moving</i> |
| mu, | <i>moved</i> |

Pref.

| | | | | | | |
|------------|-----------|-------|------|-----------|-------|---------|
| Pref. | Je m-eus | eus | eut | mouv-ons | ez | meuvent |
| Imp. | mouv-ois | ois | oit | ions | iez | oient |
| Pret. | m-us | us | ut | ûmes | ûtes | urent |
| Fut. | mouv-rai | ras | ra | rons | rez | ront |
| Cond. | mouv-rois | rois | roit | rions | riez | roient |
| S. Pres. | meuv-e | e | e | mouv-ions | iez | meuvent |
| que. Pret. | m-usse | usses | ûs | ussions | ussez | ussent |

Se démouvoir to desist, *émuvoir* to move; and, in the sense of *working*, when one takes a dose of physic, as *vous êtes difficile à émuvoir*, you are hard to be purged; used only in the Infinitive. *S'émouvoir* to be moved. *Promouvoir* to promote, is used only in the Part. Pret. *Promu*, as *promu a un évêché*, promoted to a bishopric: *démouvoir*, to make one desist, a law term. Generally *remuer* to move, is used instead of *mouvoir*.

Naître, *to be born*
naissant, *being born*
né, *born, or been born*

| | | | | | | |
|------------|-----------|-------|------|-----------|--------|--------|
| Pref. | Je naïs | naïs | naît | naïff-ons | ez | ent |
| Imp. | naïff-ois | ois | oit | ions | iez | oient |
| Pret. | naqu-is | is | it | îmes | îtes | irent |
| Fut. | naït-rai | ras | ra | rons | rez | ront |
| Cond. | naït-rois | rois | roit | rions | riez | roient |
| S. Pres. | naïff-e | es | é | ions | iez | ent |
| que. Pret. | naqu-isse | isses | ît | issions | issiez | issent |

Naître is conjugated with *être*. Its derivative is *renaître* to be born again. *Paître* to feed, has its Part. Pret. *pu*; it is only used in falconry, as *l'oiseau a pu* the bird has fed; but *repaître* to feed, and *se repaître* to feed upon, have their Preterites, *je repus*, *je me repus*, *je repusse*.

Plaire, *to please*
plaisant, *pleasing*
plu, *pleased*

| | | | | | | |
|-------|-----------|-----|-----|-----------|------|-------|
| Pref. | Je pl-ais | ais | ait | plaiſ-ons | ez | ent |
| Imp. | plaiſ-ois | ois | oit | ions | iez | oient |
| Pret. | pl-us | us | ut | îmes | îtes | urent |
| Fut. | plai-rai | ras | ra | rons | rez | ront |

Cond.

OF IRREGULAR VERBS.

| | | | | | | |
|------------|--------------|-------|------|---------|--------|--------|
| Cond. | Je plai-rois | rois | roit | rions | riez | roient |
| S. Pref. | plais-e | es | e | ions | iez | ent |
| que. Pret. | pl-usse | usses | ût | ussions | ussiez | ussent |

Se plaisir to take a pleasure, or delight in; *déplaire* to dis-please, *taire* to conceal, *se taire* to be silent, to hold one's tongue.

Pouvoir, *to be able*
pouvant, *being able*
pu, *been able*

| | | | | | | |
|------------|-----------|-------|------|----------|--------|---------|
| Pref. | Je puis, | peux | peut | pouv-ons | ez | peuvent |
| | or peux | | | | | |
| Imp. | pouv-ois | ois | oit | ions | iez | oient |
| Pret. | p-us | us | ut | ûmes | ûtes | urent |
| Fut. | pour-rai | ras | ra | rons | rez | ront |
| Cond. | pour-rois | rois | roit | rions | riez | roient |
| S. Pref. | puiss-e | es | e | ions | iez | ent |
| que. Pret. | p-usse | usses | ût | ussions | ussiez | ussent |

Prendre, *to take*
prénant, *taking*
pris, *taken*

| | | | | | | |
|------------|------------|-------|------|------------|--------|----------|
| Pref. | Je pr-ends | ends | end | pré-n-ons | ez | prènent |
| Imp. | prén-ois | ois | oit | ions | iez | oient |
| Pret. | pr-is | is | it | îmes | îtes | irent |
| Fut. | prend-rai | ras | ra | rons | rez | ront |
| Cond. | prend-rois | rois | roit | rions | riez | roient |
| S. Pref. | prènn-e | es | e | pré-n-ions | iez | prènnent |
| que. Pret. | pr-isse | isses | ít | issions | issiez | issent |

Apprendre, *to learn*
comprendre, *to understand*
désapprendre, *to unlearn*
entreprendre, *to undertake*
se méprendre, *to be mistaken*
reprendre, *to retake, reply, rebuke*
surprendre, *to surprise*

S'en prendre à, *to lay the fault or blame upon one, to come upon one*.

Produire, *to produce*
produisant, *producing*
produit, *produced*

Pref.,

| | | | | | | |
|----------|--------------|-------|------|-------------|--------|--------|
| Pref. | Je produis | uis | uit | produis-ons | ez | ent |
| Imp. | produis-ois | ois | oit | ions | iez | oient |
| Pret. | produis-is | is | it | îmes | ites | irent |
| Fut. | produi-rai | ras | ra | rons | rez | ront |
| Cond. | produi-rois | rois | roit | rions | riez | roient |
| S. Pref. | produis-e | es | e | ions | iez | ent |
| Pret. | produis-isſe | isſes | it | isſions | isſiez | isſent |

Conduire, *to conduct*
 construire, *to construct*
 cuire, *to bake, boil, to do meat*
 déduire, *to deduct*
 détruire, *to destroy*
 éconduire, *to reject*
 enduire, *to plaster, to do over*
 induire, *to induce*
 instruire, *to instruct*
 introduire, *to introduce*

luire, *to shine*
 nuire, *to hurt*
 reconduire, *to reconduct*
 recuire, *to boil, bake again, to do again*
 réduire, *to reduce*
 reproduire, *to reproduce*
 séduire, *to seduce*
 traduire, *to translate*

Nuire, luire, reluire, have their Part. Pret. nui, lui, relut.
 Bruire to rustle, is used only in the Imperfect; il bruyoit, and the Participle Present bruyant, which is used adjectively.

Ravoir, *to have again.*
 se ravoir, *to recover one's strength.*

That verb is only used in the Infinitive, as je veux de ravoir, I will have it again; elle a de la peine à se ravoir, she recovers her strength slowly.

Résoudre, *to resolve.*
 résolvant, *resolving.*
 résolu, *resolved.*

| | | | | | | |
|----------|-------------|-------|------|---------|--------|--------|
| Pref. | Je résous | ous | out | olvons | olvez | olvent |
| Imp. | résolv-ois | ois | oit | ions | iez | oient |
| Pret. | résol-us | us | ut | ûmes | ûtes | urent |
| Fut. | résoud-rai | ras | ra | rons | rez | ront |
| Cond. | résoud-rois | rois | roit | rions | riez | roient |
| S. Pref. | résolv-e | es | e | ions | iez | ent |
| Pret. | résol-uſſe | uſſes | ut | uſſions | uſſiez | uſſent |

Soudre

OF IRREGULAR VERBS.

Soudre to solder, is used in the Infinitive only; *absoudre* to absolve, and *dissoudre* to dissolve, have no preterites; they have their Participles Preterite, Masc. *absous*, Fem. *absoute*; Masc. *dissous*, Fem. *dissoute*; *résoudre* has *résous* for its Part. Pret. when it implies the changing of a thing into another, as *le brouillard résous en pluie*, the mist resolved into rain.

| | |
|--------|-----------|
| Rire, | to laugh. |
| riant, | laughing. |
| ri, | laughed. |

| | | | | | | |
|------------|--------------------|-------|------|---------|-------|--------|
| Pres. | Je r-is | is | it | ri-ons | ez | ent |
| Imp. | ri-ois | ois | oit | ions | iez | oient |
| Pret. | r-is | is | it | imes | îtes | irent |
| Fut. | ri-rai | ras | ra | r ons | rez | ront |
| Cond. | ri-rois | rois | roit | rions | riez | roient |
| S. Pres. | ri-e | es | e | ions | iez | ent |
| que. Pret. | r-is | isses | it | issions | issez | issent |
| | sourire, to smile. | | | | | |

| | |
|----------|-----------|
| Rompre, | to break. |
| rompant, | breaking. |
| rompu, | broken. |

| | | | | | | |
|------------|-----------|-------|------|---------|-------|--------|
| Pres. | Je romp-s | s | t | ons | ez | ent |
| Imp. | romp-ois | ois | oit | ions | iez | oient |
| Pret. | romp-is | is | it | imes | îtes | irent |
| Fut. | romp-rai | ras | ra | r ons | rez | ront |
| Cond. | romp-rois | rois | roit | rions | riez | roient |
| S. Pres. | romp-e | es | e | ions | iez | ent |
| que. Pret. | romp-is | isses | it | issions | issez | issent |

Corrompre, interrompre, to corrupt, to interrupt.

| | |
|----------|----------|
| Savoir, | to know. |
| sachant, | knowing. |
| su, | known. |

| | | | | | | |
|-------|---------|------|------|--------|------|-------|
| Pres. | Je fais | fais | fait | favons | avez | avez |
| Imp. | fav-ois | ois | oit | ions | iez | oient |
| Pret. | f-us | us | ut | ûmes | ûtes | urent |
| Fut. | fau-ra | ras | ra | r ons | rez | ront |

Cond.

| | | | | | | |
|----------|---------------------|-----------|----------|-------------|------------|------------|
| Cond. | Je fau- <i>iois</i> | rois | roit | rions | riiez | roient |
| S. Pref. | sach- <i>e</i> | <i>es</i> | <i>e</i> | <i>ions</i> | <i>iez</i> | <i>ent</i> |
| Pret. | fusse | usse | ut | ussions | ussez | ussent |

This verb is sometimes spelt with a *ç* after the *s* thus, *ſçavoir*, *je ſçais*, *je ſçavois*, &c. The conditional with *ne* signifies *cannot*, as *je ne faurois* I cannot, *tu ne faurois* thou canst not, &c. ; but with *ne* and *pas* it takes its proper sense, *je ne faurois pas* I should not know. *Savoir gré* or *bon gré*, means to take a thing kindly of one. *Savoir mauvais gré*, to take it ill of one.

Séoir, to fit or to be decent.
ſeyant, fitting.

| | | |
|-------|---------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Pres. | Il ſied, it fits. | ils ſiéent, they fit. |
| Imp. | il ſiéoit, it did fit. | ils ſiéoient, they did fit. |
| Pret. | | |
| Fut. | il ſiera, it will fit. | ils ſieront, they will fit. |
| Cond. | il fieroit, it would fit. | ils fieroient, they would fit. |

Sis ſife, lying, ſituated, and ſeant ſitting, are verbal adjectives; *un heritage ſis auprès de Douay*, an inheritance ſituated near Douay. *Scoir* is uſed for *afferir* in the infinitive and Part. Present, as *Le parlement va ſeoir à Blois*, the parliament is going to ſit at Blois; *le parlement ſeant au Châtelet*, the parliament fitting in the Châtelet.

Aſſeoir, to ſeat.
affeyant, ſeating.
affis, ſeated.

| | | | | | | |
|----------|---------------------|--------------|-------------|---------|--------|--------|
| Pres. | J' aff- <i>ieds</i> | <i>ieds</i> | <i>ied</i> | éyons | éyez | éyent |
| Imp. | afsey- <i>ois</i> | <i>ois</i> | <i>oit</i> | ions | iez | oient |
| Pret. | aff- <i>is</i> | <i>is</i> | <i>it</i> | imes | ites | irent |
| Fut. | affie- <i>rai</i> | <i>ras</i> | <i>ra</i> | rons | rez | ront |
| Cond. | affie- <i>rois</i> | <i>rois</i> | <i>roit</i> | rions | riez | roient |
| S. Pres. | afsey- <i>e</i> | <i>es</i> | <i>e</i> | ions | iez | ent |
| Pret. | aff- <i>iffe</i> | <i>ifſes</i> | <i>it</i> | iffions | ifſiez | iffent |

This verb is ſeldom uſed actively; it is employed in the reflected manner, as *s'affeoir*, to ſeat one's ſelf, or to fit down; *ſ'affeyant*, ſeating one's ſelf, or ſitting down; *affis*, ſeated. Some

OF IRREGULAR VERBS.

Some authors write the Future and Conditional, *assèrai* or *af-*
séyrai, *asserois* or *af-séyrois*. Many modern authors recommend
 this way of conjugating.

Assoir

assoyant

assis

| | | | | | | |
|------------|---------------|-----|-----|-----------|-----|-----|
| Pref. | J'ass-ois | ois | oit | assoy-ons | ez | ent |
| Imp. | assoy-ois | ois | oit | ions, &c. | | |
| Pret. | ass-is | is | it | imes, &c. | | |
| Fut. | assoirai, &c. | | | | | |
| Cond. | assirois, &c. | | | | | |
| S. Pres. | assoy-e | es | e | ions | iez | ent |
| Que. Pret. | assisse, &c. | | | | | |

Ser rasseoir, to sit down again, to settle; as laisser rasseoir une liqueur, or ses esprits, to let a liquor, or one's spirits settle; *surseoir*, to adjourn, to supersede.

Suivre, to follow,

suivant, following.

suivi, followed.

| | | | | | | |
|------------|-----------------|-------------|------|----------|------|--------|
| Pref. | Je suiv-is | is | it | suiv-ons | ez | ent |
| Imp. | suiv-ois | ois | oit | ions | iez | ent |
| Pret. | suiv-is | is | it | imes | ies | irent |
| Fut. | suiv-rai | ras | ra | rons | rez | ront |
| Cond. | suiv-rois | rois | roit | rions | riez | roient |
| S. Pres. | suiv-e | es | e | ions | iez | ent |
| Que. Pret. | suiv-is- sse | is- sies | it | issions | iez | issent |

Poursuivre, to pursue; *s'ensuivre*, (used in third persons) to ensue; it is also used impersonally; as *il s'ensuit de là que*, it follows from thence that.

Traire, to milk.

trayant, milking.

trait, milked.

Pref.

OF IRREGULAR VERBS.

101

| | | | | | | | |
|----------|----|-----------|------|------|----------|------|--------|
| Pref. | Je | tr-a-is | ais | ait | tray-ons | ez | ent |
| Imp. | | tray-ois | ois | oit | ions | iez | oient |
| Fut. | | trai-rai | ras | ra | rons | rez | ront |
| Cond. | | trai-rois | rois | roit | rions | riez | roient |
| S. Pres. | | tray-e | es | e | ions | iez | ent |

This verb has no Preterite Tenses.

Abstraire to abstract, *distrainre* to divert from, *extraire* to extract, *soustraire* to subtract. They are only used in the Infinitive, Part. Pret. Present, and Future tenses. *Rentrainer* signifies to fine-draw. We say, *de l'or, de l'argent trait*, gold or silver wire; *braire*, to bray like an ass, is used in the infinitive and third persons of the present and Future; *il brait, ils Brayent, il braira, ils brairont*.

Tréffaillir, *to start.*
tréffaillant, *starting.*
tréffailli, *started.*

| | | | | | | |
|----------|------------------|--------|------|---------|--------|--------|
| Pref. | tréffaill-e | es | e | ons | ez | ent |
| Imp. | tréffaill-ois | ois | oit | ions | iez | oient |
| Pret. | tréffaill-is | is | it | imes | ites | irent |
| Fut. | tréffailli-rai | ras | ra | rons | rez | ront |
| Cond. | tréffailli-rois | rois | roit | rions | riez | roient |
| S. Pres. | tréffaill-e | es | e | ions | iez | ent |
| Pret. | tréffaill-is-ses | is-ses | it | iss-ons | issiez | issent |

Affaillir to assault, is used in the Participle Preterite, which is *affailli* assaulted. *Faire saillir* is a term in architecture, meaning to project. *Saillir, saillissant, sailli* to gush out, is like *finir*.

Vaincre, *to vanquish.*
vainquant, *vanquishing.*
vaincu, *vanquished.*

| | | | | | | |
|----------|---------------|--------|------|------------|--------|--------|
| Pref. | vain-c | s | t | vainqu-ons | ez | ent |
| Imp. | vainqu-ois | ois | oit | ions | iez | oient |
| Pret. | vainqu-is | is | it | imes | ites | irent |
| Fut. | vaine-rai | ras | ra | rons | rez | ront |
| Cond. | vaine-rois | rois | roit | rions | riez | roient |
| S. Pres. | vainqu-e | es | e | ions | iez | ent |
| Pret. | vainqu-is-ses | is-ses | it | iss-ons | issiez | issent |

This

OF IRREGULAR VERBS.

This verb is seldom used in the singular number of the present of the Indicative. Convaincre to convince, is like vaincre.

| | | |
|--|---------|---------------------|
| | Valoir, | <i>to be worth.</i> |
| | valant, | <i>being worth.</i> |
| | valu, | <i>been worth.</i> |

| Pref. | vaux or | vaux | vaut | val-ons | ez | ent |
|------------|------------|-------|------|----------|-------|----------|
| | vaus | vaus | vaut | | | |
| Imp. | val-ois | ois | oit | ions | iez | oient |
| Pret. | val-us | us | ut | ûmes | ûtes | urent |
| Fut. | vaud-rai | ras | ra | rôns | rez | ront |
| Cond. | vaud-rois | rois | roit | rions | riez | roient |
| S. Pref. | vaill-e | es | e | val-ions | iez | vaillent |
| que. Pret. | val-usse | usses | ût | ussions | ussez | ussent |

Equivaloir to be equivalent, *prévaloir* to prevail, *revaloir* to return like for like, to be even with. When used in the present Subjunctive, they are *équivale*, *prévale*, &c.

| | | |
|--|---------|-----------------|
| | Venir, | <i>to come.</i> |
| | venant, | <i>coming.</i> |
| | venu, | <i>come.</i> |

| Pref. | viens | viens | vient | ven-ons | ez | viennent |
|------------|------------|--------|-------|----------|--------|----------|
| Imp. | ven-ois | ois | oit | ions | iez | oient |
| Pret. | vins | vins | vint | vinmes | vinces | vinrent |
| Fut. | viend-rai | ras | ra | rôns | rez | ront |
| Cond. | viend-rois | rois | roit | rions | riez | roient |
| S. Pref. | vienn-e | es | e | ven-ions | iez | viennent |
| que. Pret. | vinse | vinses | vint | vinsons | vinsez | vinsent |

S'abstenir, to abstain.
appartenir, to belong.
 contenir, to contain.
 contrevenir, to contravene.
 convenir, to agree.
 détenir, to detain.
 devenir, to become.
 disconvenir, to disagree.
 entretenir, to keep up.

s'entretenir, to discourse.
 intervenir, to intervene.
 maintenir, to maintain.
 obtenir, to obtain.
 parvenir, to attain to.
 prévenir, to prevent.
 provenir, to proceed, to issue.
 redevenir, to become again.
 revenir, to return, come again.
 soutenir

soutenir, to sustain.

survenir, to befall.

se souvenir, to remember.

se ressouvenir, to recollect.

subvenir, to relieve.

tenir, to hold.

venir, revenir, devenir, parvenir, survenir, intervenir, take être in the compound tenses instead of avoir.

Convenir takes avoir in the compound tenses, when it means to answer, to be convenient, as cette maison lui auroit convenu; but it takes être when it signifies to agree, as il est convenu du prix, he has agreed about the price.

All verbs ending in *enir* are conjugated like *venir*, except *bénir* to bless, *benissant beni*, and *hennir* to neigh, *hennissant henni*, which are as *finir* to finish.

Vêtir, to cloth.

vêtant, clothing.

vêtu, clothed.

The verb *habiller* is used instead of it; but its derivative is conjugated thus:

Revêtir, to invest with.

revêtant, investing.

revêtu, invested.

| | | | | | | |
|----------|--------------|-------|------|---------|-------|--------|
| Pref. | rev-âts, | êts | êt | êtons | ez | ent |
| Imp. | revêt-ois | ois | oit | ions | iez | oient |
| Pret. | revêt-is | is | it | îmes | ites | irent |
| Fut. | revêt-i-rai | ras | ra | rons | rez | ront |
| Cond. | revêt-i-rois | rois | roit | rions | riez | roient |
| S. Pret. | revêt-e | es | e | ions | iez | ent |
| Pret. | revêt-isse | isses | it | issions | issez | issent |

Investir to invest, travestir to disguise, are conjugated like finir. Ouir to hear, is used in the compound tenses with dire, j'ai eui dire, &c. I have heard.

Vivre, to live

vivant, living

vécu, lived

Pref.

OF IRREGULAR VERBS.

| | | | | | | |
|----------|----------|-------|------|---------|--------|--------|
| Pres. | vis | vis | vit | viv-ons | ez | ent |
| Imp. | viv-ois | ois | oit | ions | iez | oient |
| Pret. | véc-us | us | ut | ûmes | ûtes | urent |
| Fut. | viv-rai | ras | ra | rôns | rez | ront |
| Cond. | viv-rois | rois | roit | rions | riez | roient |
| S. Pres. | viv-e | es | e | ions | iez | ent |
| Pret. | véc-usse | usses | ût | ussions | ussiez | ussent |

revivre to revive, survivre to outlive, to survive.

Voir, to see.
voyant, seeing.
vu, seen.

| | | | | | | |
|----------|----------|-------|------|---------|--------|--------|
| Pres. | v-ois | bis | oit | voy-ons | ez | ent |
| Imp. | voy-ois | ois | oit | ions | iez | oient |
| Pret. | v-is | is | it | îmes | îtes | irent |
| Fut. | vér-rai | ras | ra | rôns | rez | ront |
| Cond. | vér-rois | rois | roit | rions | riez | roient |
| S. Pres. | voy-e | es | e | ions | iez | ent |
| Pret. | v-isse | isses | ît | issions | issiez | issent |

Entrevoir to have a glimpse of, pourvoir to provide, prévoir to foresee; pourvoir and prévoir have their Fut. and Cond. pourvoirai, pourvoirois, prévoirai, prévoirois; and pourvoir has the Preterites pourvus, pourvusse.

Vouloir, to be willing.
voulant, being willing.
voulu, been willing.

| | | | | | | |
|----------|-----------|-------|------|-----------|--------|-----------|
| Pres. | veux | veux | veut | voul-ons | ez | veulent. |
| Imp. | voul-ois | ois | oit | ions | iez | oient |
| Pret. | voul-us | us | ut | ûmes | ûtes | urent |
| Fut. | voud-rai | ras | ra | rôns | rez | ront |
| Cond. | voud-rois | rois | roit | rions | riez | roient |
| S. Pres. | veuill-e | es | e | voul-ions | iez | veuillent |
| Pret. | voul-usse | usses | ût | ussions | ussiez | ussent |

Vouloir du bien à, means to wish one well, vouloir du mal, to wish one ill. En vouloir, to have a spite, an aversion. Vouloir dire, signifies to mean.

105-106 PAGES MISS

Participle Preterite must be of the same gender and number as the Nominative.

With a Nominative Feminine.

Je me suis levée
tu t'es levée
elle s'est levée
nous nous sommes levées
vous vous êtes levées
elles se sont levées

*I have raised myself
thou hast raised thyself
she has raised herself*

With a Nominative Masculine.

Imp. Je m'étois levé
tu t'étois levé
il s'étoit levé
nous nous étions levés
vous vous étiez levés
ils s'étoient levés

*I had raised myself, I had risen
thou hadst raised thyself
he had raised himself
we had raised ourselves
you had raised yourselves
they had raised themselves*

Pret. Je me fus levé
tu te fus levé
il se fut levé
nous nous fumes levés
vous vous futes levés
ils se furent levés

I had raised myself, &c

Fut. Je me serai levé
tu te seras levé
il se sera levé
nous nous serons levés
vous vous serez levés
ils se feront levés

*I shall have raised myself
thou shalt have raised thyself, &c.*

Cond. Je me seroïs levé
tu te seroïs levé
il se seroit levé
nous nous serions levés
vous vous seriez levés
ils se seroient levés

*I should have raised myself
thou wouldst have raised thyself
he would have raised himself
we should, &c.
you, &c.*

S. Pres. Je me sois levé,
tu te sois levé,
il se soit levé,
nous nous soyons levés,
vous vous soyez levés,
ils se soient levés.

Pret. Je m'e fusse levé, *I had raised myself, &c. might have, &c.*
tu te fusses levé,
il se fût levé,
nous nous fussions levés,
vous vous fussiez levés,
ils se fussent levés.

The verb *aller*, to go, though a neuter verb, is conjugated in the reflected way, with the addition of the pronoun conjunctive *en*.

Conjugation of s'en aller to go away.

| | | |
|----------------------|--------------|------------|
| Infinitive Mood | s'en aller | to go away |
| Participle Present | s'en allant, | going away |
| Participle Preterite | allé, | gone |

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

| | |
|----------------------|-----------------|
| Je m'en vais or vas, | I go away |
| tu t'en vas, | thou goest away |
| il s'en va, | he goes away |
| nous nous en allons, | we go away |
| vous vous en allez, | you go away |
| ils s'en vont, | they go away |

Imperfect.

| | |
|-----------------|--------------------|
| Je m'en allois, | I did go away |
| tu t'en allois, | thou didst go away |
| il s'en alleit, | he did go away. |

nous

nous nous en allions,
vous vous en alliez,
ils s'en alloient,

*we did go away
you did go away
they did go away*

Preterite.

Je m'en allai,
tu t'en allas,
il s'en alla,
nous nous en allâmes,
vous vous en allâtes,
ils s'en allèrent,

*I went away
thou wentest away
he went away
we went away
you went away
they went away*

Future.

Je m'en irai,
tu t'en iras,
il s'en ira,
nous nous en irons,
vous vous en irez,
ils s'en iront,

*I shall go away
thou shalt, wilt go away
he will go away
we shall go away
you will go away
they will go away*

Conditional.

Je m'en irois,
tu t'en irois,
il s'en iroit,
nous nous en irions,
vous vous en iriez,
ils s'en iroient,

*I should go away
thou wouldst go away
he would go away
we should go away
you would go away
they would go away*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

que.
Je m'en aille,
tu t'en ailles,
il s'en aille,
nous nous en allions,
vous vous en alliez,
ils s'en aillent,

*I may go away
thou mayest go away
he may go away
we may go away
you may go away
they may go away*

Preterite.

OF IRREGULAR VERBS.

Preterite.

| | |
|--------------------------|-------------------|
| Je m'en allasse, | I went away |
| tu t'en allasses, | thou wentest away |
| il s'en allât, | he went away |
| nous nous en allassions, | we went away |
| vous vous en allassiez, | you went away |
| ils s'en allaissent, | they went away |

Imperative Mood.

| | |
|------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Que je m'en aille, | let me go away |
| va-t-en, | go thou away, get thee gone |
| qu'il s'en aille, | let him go away |
| alions-nous en, | let us go away |
| allez-vous en, | go ye away, get away |
| qu'ils s'en aillent, | let them go away |
| qu'elles s'en aillent. | |

The *t* between *va* and *en*, in the 2d person sing. of the Imperative, stands for *toi*.

Compound Tenses.

| | |
|--------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Infinitive Mood | s'en être allé, to have gone away |
| Participle Present | s'en étant allé, being gone away |

Present.

| | |
|---------------------------|------------------|
| Je m'en suis allé, | I have gone away |
| tu t'en es allé | |
| ils s'en est allé | |
| nous nous en sommes allés | |
| vous vous en êtes allés | |
| ils s'en sont allés | |

Imperfect.

| | |
|---------------------------|-----------------|
| Je m'en étois allé, | I had gone away |
| tu t'en étois allé | |
| il s'en étoit allé | |
| nous nous en étions allés | |
| vous vous en étiez allés | |
| ils s'en étoient allés | |

Preterite.

OF IRREGULAR VERBS.

212

Preterite.

| | |
|--------------------------|------------------------|
| Je m'en fus allé | <i>I had gone away</i> |
| tu t'en fus allé | |
| il s'en fut allé | |
| nous nous en fumes allés | |
| vous vous en futes allés | |
| ils s'en furent allés | |

Future.

| | |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------|
| Je m'en ferai allé | <i>I shall have gone away</i> |
| tu t'en seras allé | |
| il s'en sera allé | |
| nous nous en serons allés | |
| vous vous en ferez allés | |
| ils s'en seront allés | |

Conditional.

| | |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Je m'en ferois allé | <i>I should have gone away</i> |
| tu t'en ferois allé | |
| il s'en feroit allé | |
| nous nous en ferions allés | |
| vous vous en seriez allés | |
| ils s'en feroient allés | |

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

| | |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Je m'en sois allé | <i>I may have gone away</i> |
| tu t'en sois allé | |
| il s'en soit allé | |
| nous nous en soyons allés | |
| vous vous en soyiez allés | |
| ils s'en soyent allés | |

Preterite.

que.

OF IRREGULAR VERBS.

Preterite.

que.
 Je m'en fusse allé, *I had gone away*
 tu t'en fusses allé
 il s'en fût allé
 nous nous en fussions allés
 vous vous en fussiez allés
 ils s'en fussent allés

The verbs that take *être* instead of *avoir*, in their Compound Tenses, are, 1^{mo}, All reflected verbs; 2^{do}, These neuter verbs,

accourir, *to run to*
 aller, *to go*
 aborder, *to land*
 arriver, *to arrive*
 choir, *to fall*
 décéder, *to die*
 descendre, *to descend*
 entrer, *to enter*
 monter, *to mount*

mourir, *to die*
 naître, *to be born*
 partir, *to depart*
 retourner, *to return*
 sortir, *to go out*
 tomber, *to fall*
 venir, *to come*
 with the derivatives marked under *venir*, page 102.

Convenir takes *avoir* when it is used impersonally, as *il auroit convenu que vous eussiez présenté vous même la requête*, it would have been proper that you had presented the petition yourself.

Demeurer, descendre, passer, have their compound tenses sometimes with *être*, and sometimes with *avoir*.

Demeurer takes *avoir* when we want to say, That the person is no more in the place of which we are speaking, as *Le Roi a demeuré un mois à Fontainebleau*, the King lived a month at Fountainebleau.

Demeurer takes *être* when we hint, That the person is still in the place; as *mon frère est demeuré en province*, my brother has remained in the country.

Descendre takes *avoir* when it is used actively, as *les tonneliers ont descendu les tonneaux*, the coopers have brought down the casks; but *descendre*, in the neuter sense, takes *être*, as *Jesus Christ est descendu en terre*.

Passer and *monter*, when used actively, take *avoir*, as *nous ayons passé les Alpes*, we have crossed the Alps. *Avez-vous monté*

La pendule? did you wind up the clock? When they are neither verbs, they take *être*, as *les troupes sont passées*, the troops have passed by. *Ce soldat est monté à une lieutenance*, that soldier has got up to a lieutenancy.

Recapitulation.

It is supposed that the learner is acquainted, 1^{mo}, With the terminations of the verbs; 2^{do}, With the observations on the terminations; 3rd, With the rules for the formation of the tenses.

If he be master of all these rules, nothing is requisite to know but the irregular tenses of the verbs, which, not being very numerous, we shall set down here, that they may be seen at one view; and at the same time, we shall make a recapitulation, and add a few observations.

Present Indicative is formed from the Infinitive.

| | | | | | | |
|---------|------------------------------|-----------|-------|---------|---------|----------|
| parler, | strike off <i>r</i> | parl-e es | e | ons | ez | ent |
| finir, | <i>r</i> into <i>s</i> | fin-is is | ít | issons | issez | issent |
| dormir | <i>mir</i> into <i>s</i> | dor-s s | t | dormons | dormez | dorment |
| sentir | <i>tir</i> into <i>s</i> | sen-s s | t | sentons | sentez | sentent |
| servir | <i>vir</i> into <i>s</i> | ser-s s | t | servons | servez | servent |
| tenir | <i>enir</i> into <i>iens</i> | tiens | tiens | tient | tenez | tiennent |
| devoir | <i>eoivr</i> into <i>ois</i> | dois | dois | doit | deyons | devez |
| vendre | <i>re</i> into <i>s</i> | vends | vends | vend | vendons | vendez |
| mettre | <i>tre</i> into <i>s</i> | mets | mets | met | mèttons | mètent |

Irregular Presents of the Indicative Mood.

| | | | | | | |
|----------|--------------------------|----------|----------|------------|-------|------------|
| avoir | ai | as | a | av-ons | ez | ont |
| aller | <i>vas</i> or <i>vas</i> | vas | va | all-ons | ez | vant |
| acquérir | acquiërs | acquiërs | acquiërt | acquér-ons | ez | acquièrent |
| boire | bois | bois | boit | buvons | buvez | boivent |
| bouillir | bous | bous | bout | bouill-ons | ez | ent |
| courir | cours | cours | court | cour-ons | ez | courrent |
| cueillir | cueille | cueilles | cueille | cueill-ons | ez | ent |
| dire | dis | dis | dit | disons | dites | disen |

OF IRREGULAR VERBS.

| | | | | | | |
|----------|--------------|--------|----------|------------|--------------|---------|
| être | suis | ès | est | sommes | êtes | sont |
| falloir | | | il faut | | | |
| faire | fais | fais | fait | sesons | faites | font |
| mourir | meurs | meurs | meurt | mour-ons | ez meurent | |
| ouvrir | ouvre | ouvres | ouvre | ouvr-ons | ez ouvrent | |
| souffrir | souffre | es | e | souffr-ons | ez souffrent | |
| pouvoir | puis or peux | peux | peut | pouv-ons | ez peuvent | |
| pleuvoir | | | il pleut | | | |
| puer | pus | pus | put | pu-ons | ez | puent |
| revêtir | revêts | revêts | revêt | revêt-ons | ez | ent |
| savoir | fais | fais | fait | fav-ons | ez | savent |
| valoir | vaux | vaux | vaut | val-ons | ez | valent |
| voir | vois | vois | voit | voy-ons | ez | ent |
| vouloir | veux | veux | veut | voul-ons | ez | veulent |

The Preterite of the Indicative is formed according to the rule we have given before, by adding *s* to the participle preterite, if it does not end in *s*; if it ends in *s*, no *s* is added. Verbs that have their participles Preterite ending in *é*, accented with the acute mark, change *é* into *ai* for the Preterite Indicative, and into *asse* for the Preterite Subjunctive, as *parlé* spoken, *je parlai* I spoke, *je parlaſſe* I spoke.

Verbs ending in *aindre*, *eindre*, *oindre*, have their Preterites in *aignis*, *eignis*, *oignis*, as *croindre* to fear, *je craignis*; *ceindre* to gird, *je ceignis*; *joindre* to join, *je joignis*. Verbs in *dre*, *tre*, have their Preterites in *is*, as *vendre* to sell, *je vendis*, *battre* to beat, *je battis*. Those in *uire* have theirs in *uisis*, as *instruire* to instruct, *j'instruisis*. Finally, those in *enir* have theirs in *ins*, *int*, *inmes*, *intes*, *inrent*.

Irregular Preterites.

| Infin. | Pret. | Infin. | Pret. |
|------------|----------------|----------|-------------|
| convaincre | je convainquis | naitre | je naquis |
| coudre | je coufis | ouvrir | j'ouvris |
| dire | je dis | pleuvoir | il plut |
| écrire | j'écrivis | rompre | je rompis |
| être | je fus | souffrir | je souffris |
| falloir | il fallut | revêtir | je revêtis |
| faire | je fis | vaincre | je vainquis |
| mourir | je mourus | voir | je vis |

The future is formed by adding *ai* to the final *r* of the Infinitive.

Verbs in *enir* and *eoir* have their futures in *iendrai* and *evrai*, as *tenir, je tiendrai, devoir, je devrai*.

Irregular Futures.

| Infin. | Fut. | Infin. | Fut. |
|----------|---------------|-------------------------------|---------------------------|
| avoir | j'aurai | mourir | je mourrai |
| aller | j'irai | pleuvoir | il pleuvra |
| acquérir | j'acquèrrai | pouvoir | je pourrai |
| courir | je courrai | faire | je faurai |
| choir | chèrrai | valoir | je vaudrai |
| cueillir | je cueillerai | falloir | il faudra |
| déchoir | déchèrrai | pourvoir and their futures | prevoir have regularly |
| envoyer | envérrai | voir | je verrai |
| être | serai | vouloir | je voudrai |
| faire | je ferai | | |

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

This Tense is formed from the Participle present by changing *ant* into *e* mute.

Exceptions.

| | | | | |
|----------|--------------------|----|---------------|----------------|
| acquérir | j'acquièrr-e | es | e acquér-ions | iez acquièrent |
| aller | aill-e | es | e allions | alliez |
| boire | boiv-e | es | e buvions | iez boivent |
| enir | iènne iènnes iènne | | | |
| eoir | oive oives oive | | | |
| être | sois sois soit | | | |
| falloir | il faille | | | |
| faire | fass-e | es | e ions | iez ent |
| mourir | meur-e | es | e mour-ions | iez meurent |
| pouvoir | puiss-e | es | e ions | iez ent |
| pleuvoir | il pleuve | | | |
| | | | | prendre |

| | | | | | | |
|---------|----------|----|---|-----------|--------|-----------|
| prendre | prēnn-e | es | e | prēn-ions | iez | prēnent |
| valoir | vaill-e | es | e | valions | valiez | valilent |
| vouloir | veuill-e | es | e | voul-ions | iez | veuillent |

The first and second persons of the plural of the Present Subjunctive are like the same persons of the Imperfect, except *ayons*, *ayez*, *soyons*, *soyez*, *sussions*, *suffiez*, *puissions*, *puissiez*, *sachions*, *sachiez*; and the third person plural of the said tense is formed by adding *nt* to the first person singular, except *ils soyent*. Verbs ending in *enir* have their preterite subjunctive in *insé*, *inses*, *int*, *insions*, *insiez*, *insent*.

Impersonal, or Monopersonal Verbs.

| | |
|-------------|---------------------|
| y avoir, | there to be. |
| y ayant, | there being. |
| y avoir eu, | there to have been. |
| y ayant eu, | there having been. |

Pres. Il y a, there is, there are. Il y a eu, there has, have been.

Imp. il y avoit, there was, il y avoit eu, } there were. } there had been.

Pret. il y eut, there was, there were. il y eut eu, }

Fut. il y aura, there will be. il y aura eu, there shall have been.

Cond. il y auroit, there would be. il y auroit eu, there would have been.

que. S. Pres. il y ait, there be, may be. il y ait eu, there may have been.

Pret. il y éut, there was, there were, might be. il y éut eu, there had been.

Il faut, it must.

Part. Pret. fallu, been necessary.

Il faut, it must, one must, it is necessary. il a fallu, it has been necessary.

il falloit, } it was necessary. il avoit fallu, } it had been necessary.

il fallut, } it was necessary. il eut fallu, } it was necessary.

il faudra, it will be necessary.

| | |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| il faudroit, it would be ne- | il auroit fallu, it would have |
| cessary. | been necessary. |
| il faille, it may be necessary. | il ait fallu, it may have been ne- |
| cessary. | cessary. |

que,
il fallut, it was necessary. il eût fallu, it had been necessary.

C'est, it is.

| | | | |
|--------------|--------------|---------------|---------------------|
| C'est, | it is. | ç'a été, | it had been. |
| c'étoit { | it was. | ç'avoit été, | it had been. |
| ce fut, } | | ç'eût été, | it had been. |
| ce sera, | it will be. | ç'auroit été, | it would have been. |
| ce seroit, | it would be. | ç'ait été | it may have been. |
| ce soit, | it may be. | ç'eut, été, | it had been. |
| que, ce fut, | it was. | | |

Il pleut, it rains,
From pleuvoir, pluvant, plu.

| | | | |
|-----------------|----------------|----------------|-----------------------|
| Il pleut, | it rains. | il a plu, | it has rained. |
| il pleuvoit, | it did rain. | il avoit plu, | it had rained. |
| il plut, | it rained. | il eut plu, | it had rained. |
| il pleuvra, | it will rain. | il aura plu, | it shall have rained. |
| il pleuvroît, | it would rain. | il auroit plu, | it would have rained. |
| que, il pleuve, | it may rain. | il ait plu, | it may have rained. |
| il plût, | it rained. | il eût plu, | it had rained. |

| | Infin. | Patt. | P. Pret. |
|----------------------|-----------|--------|----------|
| Il arrive, | arriv-er | ant | é |
| il bruine, | bruin-er | ant | é |
| il éclaire, | éclair-er | ant | é |
| il gèle, | gél-er | ant | é |
| il grêle, | grêl-er | ant | é |
| il nèige, | néig-er | eant | é |
| il tonne, | tonn-er | ant | é |
| il convient, | conven-ir | ant | u |
| il est à propos, | | | |
| it is proper, fit. | | | |
| il suffit que, | suff-ire | issant | i |
| it suffices. | | | |
| il importe, | import-er | ant | é |
| it is of importance. | | | |
| il semble, | sembl-er | ant | é |
| it seems. | | | |

il

| | | | |
|---|-------------|--------|------|
| il paroît, it appears. | paroi-tre | sstant | paru |
| il s'ensuit, it follows. | s'ensuiv-re | ant | i |
| il s'agit de cela, that is the case. | ag-ir | issant | i |
| il vaut mieux, it is better. | val-oir | ant | u |
| il se peut que } it may be | pouvoir | ant | pu |
| il se peut faire que } happen that. | | | |
| il y va de l'honneur, honour is at stake. | pouv-oir | ant | é |
| il plait à, it pleases such a one to. | plai-re | sant | plu |

Of Negations.

The French have two negative terms that attend verbs, *ne pas*, or *point*, which answer the English words, *no* or *not*.

The *ne* is placed immediately after the Nominative, whether it be a noun or a pronoun, and *pas* or *point*, after the verb, as

Le Roi ne parlera pas, *the King will not speak.*
Nous ne finissons point, *we do not finish.*

In the compound tenses, the *pas* or *point* is placed between the auxiliary verb *avoir* or *être* and the Part. Pret. as,

L'homme ne sera pas aimé, *the man will not be loved.*
Elle n'a pas or point parlé, *she has not spoken.*

The *e* is cut off from *ne*, thus *n'*, before a verb beginning with a vowel.

The scholar should be exercised to conjugate the verbs with the negations and questions, as,

Active.

| | |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| Je ne parle pas, <i>I speak not,</i> | je n'ai pas parlé, <i>I have not spoken,</i> &c. |
| tu ne parles pas | tu n'as pas parlé |
| il ne parle pas | il n'a pas parlé |
| nous ne parlons pas | nous n'avons pas parlé |
| vous ne parlez pas | vous n'avez pas parlé |
| ils ne parlent pas | ils n'ont pas parlé |

Passive.

Passive.

| | |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| Je ne suis pas aimé, I am not loved, | Je n'ai pas été aimé, I have not been loved, |
| &c. | &c. |
| tu n'ès pas aimé | tu n'as pas été aimé |
| il n'est pas aimé | il n'a pas été aimé |
| nous ne sommes pas aimés | nous n'avons pas été aimés |
| vous n'êtes pas aimés | vous n'avez pas été aimés |
| ils ne sont pas aimés | ils n'ont pas été aimés] |

Questions.

In questions, the pronouns personal are placed after the verb with a hyphen; and if the third person singular ends with a vowel, you put *t*, for sound's sake, between two hyphens; thus, *parle-t-il*, does he speak?

In the compound tenses, the pronouns personal come immediately after the auxiliary verbs *avoir* or *être*.

| | | | |
|---------------|--------------------------|-------------------|--------------------------|
| parle-je, | <i>do I speak?</i> | parlons-nous, | <i>do we speak?</i> |
| parles-tu, | <i>doest thou speak?</i> | parlez-vous, | <i>do you speak?</i> |
| parle-t-il, | <i>does he speak?</i> | parent-ils, | <i>do they speak?</i> |
| ai-je-parlé, | <i>have I spoken?</i> | avons-nous parlé, | <i>have we spoken?</i> |
| as-tu parlé, | <i>hast thou spoken?</i> | avez-vous parlé, | <i>have you spoken?</i> |
| a-t-il parlé, | <i>has he spoken?</i> | ont ils parlé, | <i>have they spoken?</i> |

Passive.

| | |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| Suis-je aimé, am I loved? | sommes-nous aimés, are we loved? |
| es-tu aimé, art thou loved? | êtes-vous aimés, are you loved? |
| est-il aimé, is he loved? | sont-ils aimés, [are they |
| est-elle aimée, is she loved? | sont-elles aimées, [loved? |
| ai-je été aimé, have I been loved? | avons-nous été aimés, have we been loved? |
| as-tu été aimé, hast thou been loved? | avez-vous été aimés, have you been loved? |
| a-t-il été aimé, has he been loved? | ont-ils été aimés, have they been loved? |

Questions.

Questions Negatively.

| | |
|---|--|
| Ne parlerai-je pas, shall I not speak ? | ne parlerons-nous pas, shall we not speak ? |
| ne parleras-tu pas, wilt thou not speak ? | ne parlerez-vous pas, will you not speak ? |
| ne parlera-t-il pas, will he not speak ? | ne parleront-ils pas, will they not speak ? |
| n'ai-je pas parlé, have I not spoken ? | n'avons-nous pas parlé, have we not spoken ? |
| n'as-tu pas parlé, hast thou not spoken ? | n'avez-vous pas parlé, have you not spoken. |
| n'a-t-il pas parlé, has he not spoken ? | n'ont-ils pas parlé, have they not spoken. |

A Reflected Verb used negatively.

| | |
|----------------------------|---------------------------------|
| Je ne me léverai pas, | I shall not raise myself. |
| tu ne te léveras pas, | thou wilt not raise thyself. |
| il ne se lévera pas, | he will not raise himself. |
| elle ne se lévera pas, | she will not raise herself. |
| nous ne nous léverons pas, | we shall not raise ourselves. |
| vous ne vous léverez pas, | you will not raise yourselves. |
| ils ne se léveront pas, | they will not raise themselves. |
| elles ne se léveront pas, | |

Compound Tense.

| |
|--------------------------------|
| Je ne me suis pas levé, |
| tu ne t'es pas levé, |
| il ne s'est pas levé, |
| elle ne s'est pas levée, |
| nous ne nous sommes pas levés, |
| vous ne vous êtes pas levés, |
| ils ne se sont pas levés, |
| elles ne se sont pas levées, |

| |
|----------------------------------|
| I have not raised myself. |
| thou hast not raised thyself. |
| he has not raised himself. |
| she has not raised herself. |
| we have not raised ourselves. |
| you have not raised yourselves. |
| they have not raised themselves. |

Questions

Questions affirmatively with a reflected Verb.

| | |
|---------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Me léverai-je, | <i>shall I raise myself</i> |
| te léveras-tu, | <i>wilt thou raise thyself</i> |
| se lévera-t-il, | <i>will he raise himself</i> |
| se lévera-t-elle, | <i>will she raise herself</i> |
| nous léverons-nous, | <i>shall we raise ourselves</i> |
| vous léverez-vous, | <i>will you raise yourselves</i> |
| se léveront-ils, | <i>will they raise themselves</i> |
| se léveront-elles, | |

Compound Tense.

| | |
|-------------------------|------------------------------------|
| Me suis-je levé, | <i>have I raised myself</i> |
| t'es tu levé, | <i>hast thou raised thyself</i> |
| s'est-il levé, | <i>has he raised himself</i> |
| s'est-elle levée, | <i>has she raised herself</i> |
| nous sommes-nous levés, | <i>have we raised ourselves</i> |
| vous êtes-vous levés, | <i>have you raised yourselves</i> |
| se sont-ils levés, | <i>have they raised themselves</i> |
| se sont-elles levées, | |

Questions negatively with a reflected Verb.

| | |
|----------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Ne me léverai je pas, | <i>shall I not raise myself</i> |
| ne te léveras-tu pas, | <i>wilt not thou raise thyself</i> |
| ne se lévera-t-il pas, | <i>will he not raise himself</i> |
| ne se lévera-t-elle pas, | <i>will she not raise herself</i> |
| ne nous léverons-nous pas, | <i>shall we not raise ourselves</i> |
| ne vous léverez-vous pas, | <i>will you not raise yourselves</i> |
| ne se léveront-ils pas, | <i>will they not raise themselves</i> |
| ne se léveront-elles pas, | |

Compound Tense.

| | |
|--------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Ne me suis-je pas levé, | <i>have I not raised myself</i> |
| ne t'es-tu pas levé, | <i>hast thou not raised thyself</i> |
| ne s'est-il pas levé, | <i>has he not raised himself</i> |
| ne s'est-elle pas levée, | <i>has she not raised herself</i> |

OF IRREGULAR VERBS.

ne nous sommes- nous pas levés,
ne vous êtes-vous pas levés,
ne se sont-ils pas levés, }
ne se sont-elles pas levées, } have we not raised ourselves
 have you not raised yourselves.
 have they not raised themselves

The Impersonal Verbs Il y a and C'est used with Negations and Questions.

| | |
|--------------------|----------------------------------|
| Il n'y a pas, | there is not, or there are not |
| il n'y avoit pas, | there was not, or there were not |
| il n'y eut pas, | there was not, or there were not |
| il n'y aura pas, | there will not be |
| il n'y auroit pas, | there would not be, &c. |

Compound Tense.

| | |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------------|
| Il n'y a pas eu, | there has not, or have not been |
| il n'y avoit pas eu, } | there had not been } |
| il n'y eut pas eu, | there would not have been, &c. |

Questions Affirmatively.

Y a-t-il, is there, are there y a-t-il eu, has, have there been
y avoit-il, was there, were there y avoit-il eu, had there been
y eut-il, was there, were there y eut-il eu, had there been
y aura-t-il, will there be y auroit-il eu, would there have
y auroit-il, would there be been.

Questions Negatively.

N'y a-t-il pas, is, are there not n'y a-t-il pas eu, has, have there
n'y avoit-il pas, was, were there not been.
not n'y avoit-il pas eu, had there
n'y eut-il pas, was, were there not n'y eut-il pas eu, not been
n'y aura-t-il pas, will there not be n'y auroit-il pas eu, would there
n'y auroit-il pas, would there not be not have been
Ce

| | |
|-------------------|---------------------------------|
| Ce n'est pas, | <i>it is not</i> |
| ce n'étoit pas, | <i>it was not</i> |
| ce ne fut pas, | <i>it was not</i> |
| ce ne sera pas, | <i>it will not be</i> |
| ce ne seroit pas, | <i>it would not be, &c.</i> |

Compound Tenses.

| | |
|---------------------|------------------------|
| ce n'a pas été, | <i>it has not been</i> |
| ce n'avoit pas été, | <i>it had not been</i> |
| ce n'eut pas été, | <i>it had not been</i> |

Questions Affirmatively and Negatively.

| | | | |
|------------|--------------------|-------------------|------------------------|
| Est-ce, | <i>is it</i> | n'est-ce pas, | <i>is it not</i> |
| étoit-ce, | <i>was it</i> | n'étoit-ce pas, | <i>was it not</i> |
| fut-ce, | <i>was it</i> | ne fut-ce pas, | <i>was it not</i> |
| sera-ce, | <i>will it be</i> | ne sera-ce pas | <i>will it not be</i> |
| seroit-ce, | <i>would it be</i> | ne seroit-ce pas, | <i>would it not be</i> |

C H A P. VI.

O F A D V E R B S.

ADVERBS are indeclinable, and arranged into nine classes, viz. Adverbs of *quality* and *manner*, *place*, *time*, *number*, *order*, *question*, *affirmation*, *negation*, *comparison*, *collection*, and *separation*.

Generally speaking, you can form as many adverbs in French as there are adjectives, by adding *ment* to their feminine, as, *forte* strong, *fortement* strongly, *religieuse* religious, the feminine of *religieux*, *religieusement* religiously.

Adverbs that end in *ant* and *ent*, except *lent* flow, and *present* present, which follow the general rule, change *ant* into *amment*, and *ent* into *ement*, as *élégant*, *élégamment*, elegantly, *éloquent*, *éloquentement*, eloquently.

The

The adjectives, whose feminines end with *e* mute, preceded immediately with another vowel, suppress the final *e* mute, as *sensée*, *sensemēt*, sensibly, *infinie*, *infiniment*, infinitely.

Gentil genteel, makes *gentiment* genteelly, *eperdu* makes *éperdument* desperately, *dû* due, *dûment* duly, &c.

If the *e* in the middle of the adverbs has the acute accent over it, it is sounded; if it is not accented, it is mute, as *confusément*, *sagement*.

Adverbs of Quality and Manner.

| | |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| bien well | à la légère lightly |
| mal ill | à la vîlœ headlong, inconsiderately |
| fort bien very well | derrière behind |
| fort mal very ill | à l'étourdie giddily |
| à l'aise easily, at ease, comfortably | de bon jeu { fairly |
| à peine scarce | de bonne guerre } |
| à regret with reluctance | en sursaut out of one's sleep, at an unawares |
| de bon cœur heartily | expiès on purpose |
| de gré willingly | à dessein designedly |
| de plein gré { so one's own ac- | de son chef } of his, her own |
| de bon gré { cord | de sa tête } mind or accord |
| à mon gré to my mind | d'accord agreed |
| de gaité de cœur on purpose, | de but en blanc point blank, blunt- |
| for the sake of mischief | ly |
| tout de bon seriously | à reculons { backwards |
| à l'improviste unexpectedly | en arrière } |
| à bon droit deservedly, justly | à l'envie with emulation |
| à tort wrongfully | |
| au naturel to the life | |

Adverbs of Place.

| | |
|-----------------------|----------------------|
| où where | deca on this side |
| d'où whence | d'ailleurs besides |
| ici here | en haut above |
| ça here | d'en haut from above |
| là here | proche near |
| d'ici hence | dehors out |
| dela thence | dedans within |
| ici dessus here above | bas, à bas down |

| | |
|--------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| ici dessous here below | par quel endroit through what place |
| jusqu'o how far | de quel endroit from what place |
| jusqu'ici down to here | bien près very near |
| jusques-là down to there | autre part somewhere else |
| près near | de côté et d'autre up and down |
| loin far | à terre down |
| vis à vis opposite | nulle part no where |
| céans here within | en aucun endroit in no place |
| par où which way | par tout all about, every where |
| ailleurs elsewhere | |

Adverbs of Time.

| | |
|------------------------------------|---|
| quand when | après after |
| hier yesterday | de bonne heure early |
| aujourd'hui to day | tard late |
| avant b fore | tôt soon |
| vite quick | tous les jours every day |
| bientôt very soon | de jour en jour from day to day |
| d'abord at first | lorsque when |
| maintenant now | jadis formerly |
| alors then | à cette heure at this hour, present ly, now |
| souvent often | demain to morrow |
| tout à l'heure directly | depuis peu of late |
| sur le champ on the spot, directly | n'aguères not long since |
| tout à coup all on a sudden | tantôt sometimes, by and by, lately |
| au refois formerly | désormais hereafter |
| ensuite afterwards | dorénavent henceforth |
| à tems in time | pour lors at that time |
| tojours always | |
| tout le jour all the day | |

Adverbs of Number and Order.

| | |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| une fois once | à peu près near about, pretty near |
| deux fois twice | |
| premièrement first | à peu de choses près within small matter |
| secondement secondly | |
| en première lieu in the first place | plus davantage } more |
| dernierement lately | au moins } at least |
| de suite one after another | du moins } at least |
| guères but little | |
| enfin at last | pour le moins } at least |

tour

tour à tour *in turns*
 à la file *on a line*
 d'ordre *orderly*
 pêle mêle *promiscuously*
 ensemble *together*
 devant *before*
 à la fois *at once*
 combien *how much, how many*
 un peu *a little, few*
 tant soit peu *never so little*
 assez *enough*

trop *too much, too many, too*
 ayant *before*
 ensuite *afterwards*
 en foule *in a crowd*
 à la fois *at once*
 à la ronde *round about*
 de front } *abreast*
 de rang } *upside down, topsy*
 sens dessus } *turvy*
 dessous }
 de fond en comble *utterly, wholly*

Adverbs of Questions.

pourquoi *why*
 combien *how much, many*
 que *how*
 que de *what a deal of*

quoi, que *what*
 d'où vient que *how comes it*
 comment *how*

Adverbs of Affirmation and Negation.

oui, si *yes*
 oui dà *yes indeed*
 si fait *yes indeed*
 certes *truly*
 en vérité *indeed*
 soit be it so

non, ne pas, point, no, not
 point du tout *not at all*
 non pas *not*
 jamais *never*
 non plus *neither*
 nullement *by no means*

Adverbs of Comparison.

ainsi *so, as, thus*
 aussi *as*
 autant *as much, as many*
 tant *so much, so many*
 de même *in the same way*
 pareillement *likewise*
 comme *as, like*
 tout autant *as much, exactly so*

à côté *aside, by one's self*
 de pis en pis *worse and worse*
 de mieux en mieux *better and better*
 ni plus ni moins *neither more nor less*
 surtout *above all*
 à plus forte raison *much more*
 Adverbs

Adverbs of Collection and Separation.

ensemble *together*
 tout ensemble *altogether*
 à part *aside*
 à l'écart *out of the way*

de part et d'autre *on both sides*
 au contraire *on the contrary*
 universellement *universally*
 à quartier *aside*

C H A P. VII.

OF PREPOSITIONS

SOME Prepositions govern the fourth case or *accusative*, some the second or *genitive*, and others the third or *dative*.

Prepositions that govern the Fourth Case or Accusative.

après *after*
 avant *before*
 avec *with*
 attendu *considering*
 chez *to, at*
 contre *against*
 à travers *through*
 dedans *within*
 depuis *since, from*
 de dessus *from above*
 de dessous *from under*
 devant *before*
 derrière *behind*
 durant *during*
 hormis *except*
 environ *about*

malgré *in spite*
 nonobstant *notwithstanding*
 outre *besides*
 par *by*
 par dessus *above*
 par dessous *below*
 par deça *on this side*
 par delà *on that side*
 parmi *among*
 pendant *during*
 pour *for*
 sans *without*
 sous *under*
 suivant *according to*
 sur *upon*
 dans, en *in*

entre

entre *between*
touchant *concerning*

vers
envers } *towards*

Prepositions that govern the Second or Genitive Case, and consequently are followed by du, de la, de l', des or de, most of which are compounded of à, au, en.

à cause *because*
à côté *by, side*
au delà *on the other side*
au dessus *above*
au dessous *below*
au derrière *behind*
à force *by strength*
à l'atri *secure*
à l'égard *as to*
au lieu *instead*
à l'entour } *about*
au tour } *in the middle*
au milieu *in the middle*
au niveau *even with*
à couvert *under cover*

au deça *on this side*
auprès *near*
au prix *at the expence, in comparison of*
au travers *through*
à rais n *at the rate*
à rebours *against the grain, cross-way*
en dépit *in spite*
faute *for want*
hors *out*
près } *near*
proche } *near*
vis à vis *opposite*

Prepositions that govern the third or Dative Case.

jusque } *till*
jusques }
par rapport *with regard to*

quant *as to, as for*
eu ègard *regard being had*

C H A P. VIII.

OF CONJUNCTIONS.

THEY either govern the verb in the Indicative or Subjunctive Mood.

Conjunctions that govern the Indicative Mood.

| | | | |
|----------------------------------|--------------|-------------------------------|-------------------------|
| à cause que | { because | de manière que | { in such a manner that |
| parceque | | de façon que | |
| a peine scarce | { | tellement que | { |
| aussitôt que | | en sorte que | |
| si tôt que | { as soon as | comme | { as |
| dès que | | en tant que | |
| d'abord que | { | si if | { |
| si bien que | | comme si as if | |
| de sorte que | { so that | à ce que according as | { |
| lorsque | | vu que seeing, being that | |
| quand | { when | à mesure que in proportion as | { |
| pendant que | | tant que as long as | |
| tandis que | { whilst | autant que as much as | { |
| pourquoi why | | outre que besides | |
| d'où vient que how comes it that | { | selon que | { as, according as |
| aussi long tems que as long as | | suivant que | |
| après que after, when | { | peut-être que perhaps | { |
| dequis que since the time that | | or est-il que now is that | |
| puisque since | { | d'autant que whereas, for as | { |
| attendu que considering that | | much as. | |
| au lieu que instead that | | | |

Conjunctions that govern the Subjunctive Mood.

Quoique }
 bienque } though, although
 encore que }
 avant que before
 soit que whether
 de peur. lest, or
 de crainte for fear
 à moins que unless
 au cas que } in case that
 en cas que }
 jusqu'à ce que till
 pour peu que if
 non pas que not but
 pourvu que provided that
 non que not that
 il s'en faut bien que we, he, they,
 people are so far from, &c.
 Loin que far from
 bien loin que very far from

si ce n'est que unless
 ce n'est pas que it is not but
 supposez que suppose that
 Dieu veuille que God grant
 plaisir or plutôt à Dieu que would
 to God that
 à Dieu ne plaise que God forbid
 tant s'en faut que it is so far
 malgré que in spite, for all that
 à la bonne heure que I grant
 excepté que except
 hors que } save
 hormis que }
 posez le cas put the case
 moyennant que provided that
 afin que } that, to the end that
 pour que } that, to the end that
 supposé que suppose that
 supposons que let us suppose that.

These govern the Infinitive Mood.

à de to
 par by
 afin de in order to
 faute de for want of
 après after
 au lieu de instead of
 à moins de } unless
 à moins que de } unless
 bien loin de very far from

de peur de } for fear, lest
 de craint, de } excepted
 excepté except
 jusqu'à till, to that degree
 loin de far from
 plutôt que de rather than to
 And every conjunction hav-
 ing after it de.

Besides the above Conjunctions, there are other Conjunctions which may be divided into Copulative and Comparative, Conditional, Adversative, Conclusive, Declarative, Transitive, and Casual.

Conjunctions Copulative and Comparative.

| | |
|---|---------------------------------|
| ni non | ainsi que <i>as, as also</i> |
| aussi (followed by <i>que</i>) <i>as, as</i> | mais encore but <i>also</i> |
| aussi bien que <i>as well as</i> | de plus moreover |
| si bien que <i>so that</i> | outre cela <i>besides that,</i> |
| de même que <i>as, just as</i> | outre que <i>besides,</i> |
| savoir <i>to wit</i> | joint que <i>add to that</i> |
| comme <i>as</i> | mais même but even |
| d'autant <i>whereas, for as much as</i> | si followed by <i>que so as</i> |
| davantage <i>more</i> | enfin <i>in fine, at last</i> |
| au reste <i>for the rest</i> | encore <i>yet</i> |
| donc <i>then</i> | or <i>but now</i> |

Conjunctions Conditional.

| | |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| à condition que } upon condi- | savoir si the question is whether |
| bien entendu que } tion that | ou bien or else |
| si non if not | pourvu que provided |
| en tout cas at any rate | soit whether |
| à moins de less, unless | en tout cas at any rate |
| sans without | though, fol- |
| au cas que } in case that | quand followed by |
| en cas que } | quand même the condi- |
| si ce n'est que } except | quand bien même tional tense |
| | ou or |

Conjunctions Adversative.

| | |
|------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| mais but | bien loin de very far from |
| néanmoins nevertheless | non obstant que notwithstanding |
| pourtant yet, however | that |
| toute fois yet, for all that | cependant in the mean time |

Conjunctions

OF CONJUNCTIONS.

Conjunctions Conclusive.

cela étant *that being*
c'est à dire que that is to say
c'est pourquoi it is for why
therefore
pour conclusion to conclude

cela étant ainsi *that being so*
d'autant que for as much as
pour cet effet for that end
par conséquent consequently
c'est pour cela it is for that

Conjunctions Declarative.

sur tout *above all*
pour lors then
oui yes
en effet really
sope done
à propos to the purpose
certes truly

comme par example *as, as for*
instance
ouïda yes indeed
d'accord done, agreed
à la vérité indeed
soit be it so
j'en conviens I grant it

Conjunctions Transitive.

puis *then*
même even
de même likewise
ensuite then, afterwards
après tout after all
d'un autre côté on the other side

d'ailleurs besides
sur quoi whereupon
là dessus thereupon
là dessous thereunder
et puis and then
sans doute without doubt

Conjunctions Casual.

parceque *because*
car for
attendu que seeing, being that
à cause de because of

afin de in order to
d'autant plus que so much the
more as

C H A P. IX.

OF INTERJECTIONS.

THE Interjections express the sudden emotions and transports of the soul. There are severals of them.

1. Of Joy.

ah ! ah ! *hab ! ab !*
allons, courage! *come be cheerful!* ô ciel ! *oh heaven !*

3. Of Pain.

ah ! aih ! ouf ! *ah ! pho !*

helas ! ah ! alas ! ah !
ah mon Dieu ! *oh my God !*
eh Seigneur ! *oh Lord !*

allons ! ça ! *come on !*
or sus ! *but now !*
bon ! *good !*

5. To Warn.

Prenez garde ! } *have & care !*
garre ! }
tout beau ! *softly !*

8. Of Aversion.

fh ! pouah ! *fye, fough !*
fi le vilain ! *fye, nasty !*

6. To Call.

hola ! ho ! *ho, here !*
hola l'homme ! *you man !*
hem *here !*

9. Of Laughter.

ha, ha, he, hihi ! *ab, eh !*

7. Of Admiration.

ah ouidà ! *ah marry !*

10. Of Silence.

chut ! 'st ! *hiss, hush !*
silence ! *silence !*
paix, paix-là ! *peace, peace there !*

C H A P. X.

Idiomatical Expressions of French with regard to English.

- A** AVOIR beau to be in vain
 j'ai beau it is in vain for me
 tu as beau it is in vain for thee
 il a beau it is in vain for him, &c.
 n'avoir garde de faire } to be far from doing any thing
 se garder bien de faire } to be sure not to do it
 quel âge avez-vous how old are you
 avoir tort to be in the wrong
 avoir raison to be in the right
 avoir bon visage to look well
 avoir mauvais visage to look ill
 avoir affaire to want, to have need
 n'avoir que faire de } to want none of
 n'avoir affaire de } to have no occasion for
 avoir soif, faim, to be thirsty, hungry
 avoir mal to have a sore, pain
 avoir froid, avoir chaud to be cold, to be warm
 avoir 5, 6, 10, 15, ans, to be 5, 6, 10, 15, years of age
 avoir la bonté to be so good as
 être bien auprès de quelqu'un to be in great favour with one
 faire cas } to value, to esteem
 faire état }
 faire le bel esprit to set up for a wit, to pretend
 ne faire que de se lever to be just up
 ne faire que to do nothing but
 savoir to know, to understand
 connoître to be acquainted with, to know persons, to know countries
 faire savoir to inform, to let one know
 faire en sorte que to do in such a manner that
 se faire fort de to take upon one's self
 faire la chambre to clean the room

faire

- faire la cuisine *to cook, dress victuals*
 se faire des affaires *to bring one self into trouble*
 c'en est fait de lui *he is undone, all is over with him*
 faire grace *to forgive, to excuse*
 se faire à la fatigue *to inure one's self to hardships*
 aimer mieux *to love rather, to choose rather*
 prêter serment *to take an oath*
 penser *to be like*
 il a pensé tomber *he was like to fall*
 venir à bout de *to accomplish, to bring about any thing*
 se passer de *to do without, to be easy without any thing*
 trouver mauvais que *to take ill if*
 ne tenir qu'à *to be in one's power*
 il ne laisse pas *he fails not nevertheless*
 se donner de garde *to beware of one*
 prendre les devants *to get the start of one, to go before*
 se porter bien, ou mal, *to be in good, or bad health*
 rompre, casser, briser *to break*
rompre is said of a thing broken asunder; and, when it is in pieces, *briser* is used
rompre is used when speaking of metals, stones, and wood
casser is used when speaking of glass, earthen ware
la colonne est rompue ou cassée *the pillar is broken*
le pot est cassé *the pot is broken*
les verres sont cassés *the glasses are broken*
casser un testament *to annul a will*
casser le parlement *to dissolve the parliament*
je vais m'en aller *I am going away*
il alloit y aller *he was going hither*
être en, or à main pour, &c. *to be at hand, in a situation for*
en venir aux mains *to come to blows*
prêter main forte à quelqu'un *to succour one, to give assistance*
donner de main en main *to hand about*
un coup de main *a bold action*
un homme de main *a bold man, fit for a bold action*
à pleines mains *largely, plentifully*
sous main *underhand*
s'entendre à faire une chose *to have a good hand at doing a thing*
marier *to marry*, is said of the clergyman who performs the ceremony of marriage, when used actively.
épouser *to espouse* is said of persons who join in wedlock
il ne veut pas se marier *he will not marry*
parents kindred, kinsfolk, relations; pere et mere parents

se bien prendre à quelque chose }
 s'y prendre de la bonne façon } to go the right way to work
 s'y prendre mal to go the wrong way to work
 se prendre à quelque chose to take hold of something
 prendre parti to enlist, prendre son parti to resolve
 en combien de points va la partie? how many is up, how many is game

avoir du bien to be worth money

un homme de bien a man of probity, a good man

il ne s'en faut guerre little is wanting

gare! have a care, make way, stand out of the way

se tenir sur le bout des piés to stand a tiptoe

cela va sans dire that is understood, that is without question

va, tu n'es qu'une bête away, thou art a stupid creature

les soi disant beaux esprits pretenders to wit.

CHAP.

C H A P. XI.

Marks used in Writing French.

THese marks are 1. the Elision ; 2. the hyphen ; 3. the Cedilla ; 4. the Diæresis,

I.

ELISION is the suppression of a letter before a word beginning with a vowel or *h* not sounded, and the place of the vowel suppressed is supplied by a comma set above the empty space, thus (') as *l'autre*, instead of *le autre*.

The apostrophe (') marks the suppression of one of these three letters, *a*, *e* mute, and *i*.

The *a* and *e* are cut off in *le*, *la*, *je*, *me*, *te*, *de*, *ce*, *ne*, *que*, and the conjunctions compounded of *que*, as *jusque*, *parceque*, *puisque*, *quoique*, &c. and the *i* in *si*, if, only before *il*, *ils*, as *s'il*, *s'ils*.

A and *e* are not suppressed in *le* him, it, *la* her, it, after an Imperative, nor in the adverb *là* there; as *venez-le à Londres* take him to London, *emmenez-le avec votre frere* carry him with your brother, *mettez-là au plutôt vos hardes* put your cloaths directly there; yet we say, *tirez-l'en* take him, her, it, from it, *laissez l'y aller* let him, her, it go thither.

The *a* and *e* are not cut off in *de*, *le*, *la*, *que*, *ce*, before *huit*, eight, *huitieme* the eighth, or eighth part, *huitaine* eight days, together, and *oui* yes, ay; as *de huit que nous avions*, *il n'en reste qu'un* of eight we had, only one remains, *vous êtes le huitieme* you are the eighth, *la huitaine* within eight days, *ils ne sont que huit* they are only eight, *le oui et le non* the ay and the nay; yet we say and write, *je dis qu'oui* I say yes.

We say also, *le onze* the eleventh, *du onze*, *au onze*, *le onzième*, *du onzième*, *au onzième*, *la onzième*; as *la onzième année* the eleventh year, *vous êtes le onzième* you are the eleventh, *ce onze Novembre* this eleventh of November.

The *e* is cut off at the end of *entre*, *jusque*, *quelque*, followed by *a*, *au*, *aux*, *eux*, *elle*, *elles*, *ici*, *autre*, *un*; as *entr' eux*, *entr' elles*, *jusqu'à*, *jusqu'au*, *jusqu'ici*, *jusqu'aujourd'hui*, *quelqu'un*, *quelqu'autre*. We write also *s'entr'ouvrir*, *s'entr'aimer*, &c.

The *i* is not cut off in *si* in the sense of *so*, and when it signifies *yet*. *Elle n'est pas si aimable que sa soeur* she is not so amiable as her sister, *le témoin le savoit, si il n'en a rien dit* the witness knew it, yet he said nothing of it. *M'amie, m'amour*, my dear, my love, or love, are expressions of kindness, instead of *mon amie, mon amour*.

The *e* of the feminine *grande* in the familiar style is cut off before words beginning with a consonant, as *Grand'Messe* High Mass, *grand'chambre* great chamber, *grand'chose* great matter, *grand'chère* great chear, *grand'merci* great thanks, *grand'peine* great difficulty, *grand'peur* great fear, *grand'soif* great thirst, *grand'faim* great hunger, *grand'pieté* great pity indeed.

Quand je vous offre ou vers, ou prose,
Grand Ministre, je le fais bien,
Je ne vous offre pas grand'chose,
Mais je ne vous demande rien.

H.

HYPHEN, a note of conjunction marked thus—. It is put between the verbs and the pronouns *je*, *moi*, *tu*, *toi*, *il*, *elle*, *nous*, *vous*, *le*, *la*, *les*, *tut*, *leur*, *y*, *en*, *ori*, when these pronouns are placed after the verb; as *irai-je* shall I go? *viens-je* do I come? *donnez-moi* give me; *sera-toi* serve thyself, *iront-ils* will they go? *donnez-lui* give to him, or to her, *allez-y* go thither, *donnez-en* give some, *voit-on* does one see?

When the part of the verb ends with *a* or *e*, *t* is used for sound's sake, with two hyphens; as *a-t-il* has he? *a-t-elle*, *donnera-t-il* will he give? *va-t-en* get thee gone.

The hyphen is used to join *ci*, *là*, *ça*, to words which are attended by them, and from which they cannot be parted properly, as also with *ce* after *être*; as, *celui-ci*, *celui-là*, *celle-ci*, *celle-là*, *ceux-ci*, *ceux-là*, *celles-ci*, *celles-là*, *cet homme-ci*, *cette femme-là*, *demeurez-là*, *là haut*, *là-dedans*, *là-bas*, *venez-ça* come hither, *est-ce là votre montre?* is that your watch? *sont-ce-là vos souliers?* are these your shoes? *jusque-là*, *alors-là* stop there.

Some

Some compound words have the hyphen, as *l'arc-en-ciel* the rainbow, *porte-manteau*, *avant-coureur* forerunner, *peut-être* perhaps, &c.

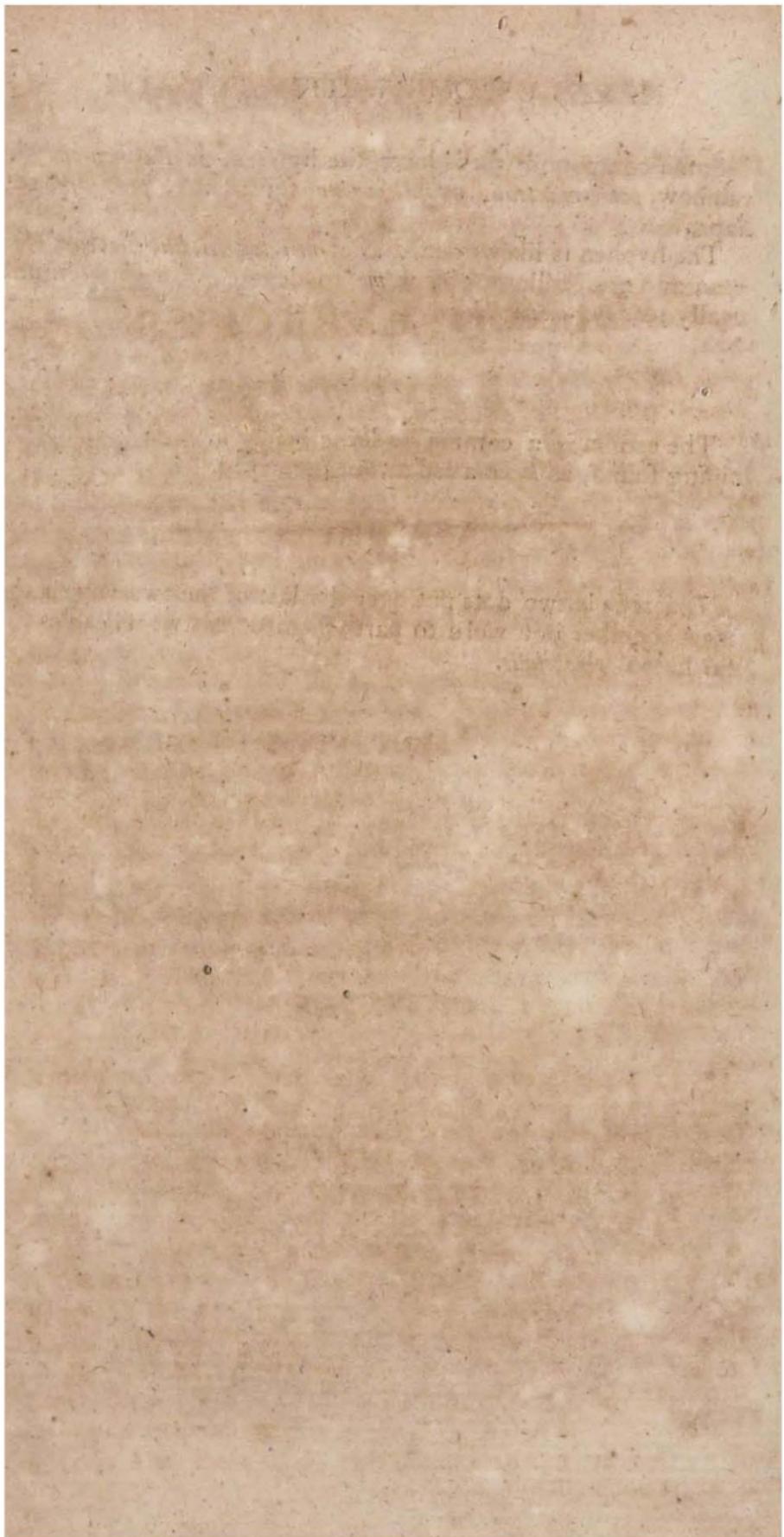
The hyphen is likewise used after *moi*, *toi*, *soi*, *lui*, *elle*, *eux*, *elles*, *nous*, and *vous*, followed by *même*, to denote self or selves emphatically ; as *moi-même*, *lui-même*.

III.

The cedilla is a comma under *ç* before *a*, *o*, *u*, to denote its hissing sound, as *legçon* a lesson, *reçu* received.

IV.

Diaeresis is two dots put over the last of the two vowels that meet together in a word to part them into two syllables ; as *hâï* hated, *Archelaüs*.



FRENCH EXERCISES.

PART III.

OF SENTENCES.

A SENTENCE is an assemblage of words expressed and arranged in a proper form and order, concurring to make a complete sense.

A complete sense cannot be effectuated without the knowledge of Syntax and Construction.

OF SYNTAX.

SYNTAX is the regular joining of the parts of speech together, according to the genius of a language, and the laws of custom.

In the Syntax of the French tongue two things are to be considered, Concord or Agreement, *Regimen* or Government.

Concord teaches, 1^{mo}, That the article, the adjective, the pronoun, and sometimes the participle preterite, must be of the same gender and number as their substantive. 2^{do}, That the verb ought to take the number and person of its nominative.

Regimen or Government teaches that the word governed ought to be in the case and mood that the governing word requires.

As the words Concord and *Regimen* are not easily understood by learners unacquainted with the general principles of grammar, we shall attempt to explain them in as plain and clear a manner as we possibly can, by examples.

OF CONCORD.

First Example.

Le bon Roi et la bonne Reine ont vu ces hommes, et les ont récompensés, the good King and the good Queen have seen these men, and have rewarded them.

The first thing the learner considers is these two substantives, *Roi* and *Reine*; he knows that *Roi* is of the masculine gender, and *Reine* of the feminine; therefore *le* is used with *Roi*, and *la* is placed with *Reine*. Secondly, he knows that *bon* is an adjective of the masculine gender, and *bonne* of the feminine. *Bon* is placed with *Roi*, and *bonne* with *Reine*, to agree in gender with their respective substantive. Thirdly, he knows that *Roi* and *Reine* are in the singular number; therefore *le*, *la*, *bon*, and *bonne* are in the singular number; because according to the general rule in grammar, as we said before, the article, the adjective, &c. must be of the same gender and number with the substantive. The reason is obvious. The article, pronoun, and participle may be considered as adjectives. Now, as adjectives are the qualities added to nouns, they must agree with these nouns in gender and number.

Lastly, He considers *les* them. He knows *les* to be a pronoun, relating to *hommes* men, in the plural number, and masculine gender; therefore the participle preterite, *récompensés* is in the masculine gender, and plural number, to agree with *les*, the representative of *hommes* men.

Second Example.

Le maître enseigne, et les écoliers étudient, the master teaches, and the scholars study. This second example is to shew that the verb ought to take the number and person of its nominative or governing word.

In the above sentence, the learner observes these two verbs, *enseigne* teaches, and *étudient* study. He knows that *enseigne* is in the third person singular, and that *étudient* is in the third person plural; the former to agree with *maître*, and the latter with *écoliers*, their nominatives; for *maître* being in the singular number, and third person, requires *enseigne* to be of the same

fame number and person ; and the word *écoliers* being in the plural number, and third person, requires *étudient* to be in the fame number and person.

To know in what person a verb ought to be, the learner observes, that, in every tense of a verb, there are six persons, three for the singular number, and three for the plural. These persons of a verb have either before them a pronoun personal, or a noun substantive.

If it be a pronoun personal, there is no difficulty, as it bears along with it a distinctive mark of the person in which the verb should be, as *Je I*, is the first person singular, *tu thou*, is the second person, *il he, it*, is the third person masculine ; *elle she, it*, is the third person for the feminine gender ; *nous we*, is the first person plural ; *vous you, ye*, is the second person plural. But in French as in English, *vous you*, is applicable both to the singular and plural, with this difference in English, that, when we are speaking of one person, we say, *you was happy*, *vous étiez heureux*, and speaking in the plural, we say, *ye or you were happy*, *vous étiez heureux*. The second person plural is always used in French with *vous*. *Ils they*, is the third person plural for the masculine gender, *elles they*, is the third person of the feminine gender. If the verb has before it a noun substantive as its nominative, immediately after that noun, and before the verb, let the learner try, if, by putting any of the pronouns personal to the verb, the sentence makes sense ; if it bears sense, he can easily know in what person the verb should be ; as, for instance, *le Roi aime la Reine*, the King loves the Queen ; *les Rois doivent aimer leurs sujets*, Kings ought to love their subjects ; *les livres seront imprimés*, the books will be printed ; *l'affaire sera faite*, the business shall be done. In all these examples, I can say, *Le Roi (il) aime la Reine*, the King (*he*) loves the Queen ; *les Rois (ils) doivent aimer leurs sujets*, the Kings (*they*) ought to love their subjects ; *les livres (ils) seront imprimés*, the books (*they*) will be printed ; *l'affaire (elle) sera faite*, the business (*it*) shall be done.

Now, these pronouns point out the person in which the verb is ; but they are not expressed, though understood ; because it would be a redundancy in speech, as it is needless to mention pronouns or representatives of nouns when you have the objects themselves.

The same trial may be made with the pronouns, being nominatives to verbs, as for example, *eux et vous serez punis*, they and you

you will be punished ; supply *vous*, you will be punished ; *vous et moi écrirons* you and I shall write ; supply *we* shall write. *Vous et celui qui vous accompagne, perirez*, you and he who attends you ; supply *you* shall perish. These pronouns supplied denote the person of the verb.

Government.

GOVERNMENT, being the influence that one part of speech has upon another, supposes, 1^{mo}, A noun substantive governed by another noun substantive, as *l'amour de Dieu*, the love of God ; *la table de la cuisine*, the kitchen-table ; *la puissance du royaume*, the kingdom's power.

2^{do}, A noun adjective governing a noun in a certain case, or influencing the Infinitive mood, by the means of these two prepositions *de* and *à*, as *il est digne de la place*, he is worthy of the place ; *il est propre à l'emploi*, he is fit for the employment ; *il est digne d'être estimé*, he is worthy of being esteemed ; *il est propre à être employé*, he is fit to be employed.

3^{to}, It supposes a verb governing, 1^{mo}, A certain case either a genitive, dative, or accusative ; 2^{do}, Governing a certain mood preferable to another, as *il jouit d'un gros revenu*, he enjoys a great income ; *vous faites honneur à la patrie*, you do honour to the country ; *le vrai Chrétien a une bonne conscience*, the true Christian has a good conscience ; *je crois qu'il viendra*, I believe he will come ; *je m'étonne que vous soyez si indolent*, I wonder you are so indolent ; *je tacherai de vous plaire*, I shall endeavour to please you ; *il persifle à nier le fait*, he persists in denying the fact ; *j'ose vous dire que vous avez tort*, I dare tell you that you are in the wrong.

4^{to}, It supposes an adverb and preposition governing a certain case, and a conjunction governing a certain mood, as *il n'a jamais d'argent*, he never has any money ; *il a plus d'ennemis que d'amis*, he has more enemies than friends ; *près de vous*, near you ; *loin du mur*, far from the wall ; *jusqu'aux Indes*, as far as the Indies ; *quoique vous paroissiez riche*, you ne l'êtes pas, though you appear rich, you are not so ; *s'il vient*, if he comes ; *sans avoir*, without having.

RULE.

To know the Governing Word, or what is called by Grammarians the Nominative and the governed Word, or the Accusative.

THE governing word, or nominative, is known by putting to the verb this question *qui?* who? or *qui est-ce qui?* who is it who? as in this sentence, *Dieu a créé le monde*, God has created the world. I say, *qui*, or *qui est-ce qui a créé le monde?* who has, or who is it who has created the world? the answer is *Dieu*, God. God is then the nominative, or governing word.

Again, in this sentence, *l'homme doit aimer son prochain*, man ought to love his neighbour. I say, *qui*, or *qui est-ce qui doit aimer son prochain?* who, or who is it who ought to love? the answer is, *l'homme* man, is the governing word, or the nominative. The governed word, or accusative case, is easily found out in the above sentences, by putting the question *quoi* what? or *qu'est-ce que* what is it? or *qu'est-ce que c'est que* what is it that? as *quoi*, *Dieu a-t-il créé?* what has God created? *qu'est-ce que c'est que Dieu a créé?* what is it that God has created? the answer is, *le monde* the world. *Le monde* the world, is the governed word, or accusative.

Again, if you say in the second sentence, *quoi*, *qu'est-ce que*, *qu'est-ce que c'est que l'homme doit aimer?* what, or what is it that man ought to love? the answer is, *son prochain*, his neighbour. *Son prochain* is the governed word, or accusative case.

In short, when we are speaking of persons, the governed case, or accusative, is known in English by putting the question, *whom?* and speaking of things, *what?* and the nominative by putting the question, *who?* *which?*

The genitive, ablative, or second case, is known in French by *du*, *de la*, *de l'*, *des*, of, from, by, with the, or *de*, of; from, by, with.

The third case, or dative, is known by *au*, *à la*, *à l'*, *aux*, to; *à* the, or *à* to, at.

We shall now proceed to the practical rules of the French syntax, by giving a book of exercises. But previously we shall give, 1^{mo}, A variety of nouns to be declined with the articles. 2^{do}, A great number of verbs, to be placed in their proper tenses, and the way they are used, with a negation and interrogation; by this means, the learner will be acquainted with the various tenses of the verbs.

This knowledge will enable him to proceed to the writing of the French language. He will find rules at the head of each chapter and section; and, by translating the English into French, he will reduce to practice all the rules of construction. The genders of the nouns are marked with the figures 1 and 2 after them. The figure 1 shows that the noun is masculine; the figure 2 shows that it is feminine.

EXERCISES

Upon the Declension of French Nouns with the articles le, la, l', les, de, à, un, une, du, de la, de l', des, de.

| | Sing. Numb. | Plur. for all genders. |
|---------------|-------------|----------------------------|
| Maf. | Fem. | M. & F. |
| Nom. & Accus. | le | la |
| Gen. & Abl. | des | du de la |
| Dat. | au | à la |
| | | l' |
| | | de l' |
| | | à l' |
| | | les |
| | | des of, from, by, with the |
| | | aux |
| | | to, at the |

Le and its cases are put before a masculine noun beginning with a consonant, or *h* founded, as *le général*, the general; *le héros* the hero.

La and its cases are placed before a feminine noun beginning with a consonant, or *h* founded, as *la princesse*, the princess; *la harangue*, the speech.

L' and its cases are put before a noun masculine, or feminine beginning with a vowel or *h* not founded, as *l'esprit*, the mind; *l'habitude*, the habit; *l'âme*, the soul.

Les, des, aux, are used before nouns in the plural number, whether these nouns begin with a vowel, *h* mute or founded, or a consonant, and of whatever gender they be.

The

EXERCISES ON THE ARTICLE.

147

| | | | |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|----------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| The King. | Of the Queen. | To the book. | To the pound. |
| <i>Roi</i> 1 | <i>Reine</i> 2 | <i>livre</i> 1 | <i>livre</i> 2 |
| The Princes. | To the knife. | Of the street. | To the table-cloth. |
| <i>Prince</i> | <i>couteau</i> 1 | <i>rue</i> 2 | <i>nappe</i> 2 |
| The carpets. | By the Dukes. | Of the rule. | By the boat. |
| <i>tapis</i> | <i>Duc</i> | <i>regle</i> 2 | <i>batteau</i> 1 |
| The order. | To the spoon. | Of the fork. | From the chair. |
| <i>ordre</i> | <i>cuillier</i> 2 | <i>fourchette</i> 2 | <i>chaise</i> 2 |
| To the harbour. | To the honour. | Of the hatred. | To the tea. |
| <i>port</i> 1 | <i>honneur</i> | <i>haine</i> 2 | <i>thé</i> 1 |
| | <i>h</i> is mute | <i>h</i> is founded | |
| To the pillow. | | Of the pudding pan. | By the Bishop. |
| <i>oreiller</i> | | <i>tourtiere</i> 2 | <i>éveque</i> |
| To the margin. | | The quills. | The papers. |
| <i>marge</i> 2 | <i>tuyau</i> | <i>papier</i> | Of the rods. |
| From the street. | | To the wall. | To the ideas of |
| <i>rue</i> 2 | | <i>muraille</i> 2 | <i>idée</i> |
| the philosophers. | | The fashions of the Scots. | To the |
| <i>philosophe</i> | <i>mode</i> | <i>Ecoffais</i> | |
| custom of the English. | | The Italians. | To the Germans. |
| <i>coutume</i> 2 | <i>Anglois</i> | <i>Italien</i> | <i>Allemand</i> |
| The pride of the Poles. | | | Of the industry of the Dutch. |
| <i>orgueil</i> | <i>Polonois</i> | | <i>industrie</i> <i>Hollandois</i> |
| To the Swedes. | | | The haughtiness of the Spaniards. |
| <i>Suedois</i> | | <i>h</i> sounds <i>hauteur</i> 2 | <i>Espagnol</i> |
| To the eye of the master. | | | To the eyes of the philosopher. |
| <i>eil</i> | <i>maitre</i> | | |
| To the places around. | | Of the wave. | To the labours. |
| <i>lieu d'alentour</i> | | <i>, onde</i> | <i>travail</i> |
| By the generals. | | Of the evils. | To the walnuts. |
| <i>general</i> | | <i>mal</i> | <i>noix</i> |
| The Gods of the Poets. | | To the admirals. | The balls. |
| <i>Poetes</i> | | <i>amiral</i> | <i>bal</i> |
| Of the Dane. | To the Irishman. | | The Englishwoman. |
| <i>Danois</i> | | <i>Irlandois</i> | <i>Angloise</i> |
| To the Scotswoman. | | Of the year. | The details |
| <i>Ecoffaise</i> | | <i>an</i> | <i>detail</i> |
| of the battle. | To the victory of the fleets. | | To the days |
| <i>bataille</i> 2 | <i>victoire</i> 2 | <i>flotte</i> | <i>jour</i> |
| of the week and of the month. | The fires. | | To the ardour |
| <i>semaine</i> 2 | <i>mois</i> 1 | <i>feu</i> | <i>ardeur</i> |
| of the regiment. | To the nose. | The crosses. | The daughters. |
| <i>regiment</i> 1 | <i>nez</i> 1 | <i>croix</i> | <i>fille</i> |
| | | | The |

The preceding Articles represent the whole species of the thing signified by that word, and is not Englished by *the*. In the same way that Article is placed before arts, sciences, metals, virtues, vices, countries, &c. without being Englished.

| | | |
|--|--|------------------------------|
| Man is mortal. | Men are mortal. | To man. |
| <i>est mortel</i> | <i>sont mortels</i> | |
| To men. | Of women. | To children. |
| | | <i>enfant</i> |
| Parents ought to be beloved by children. | Good breeding. | |
| <i>père et mère doivent être aimés</i> | <i>enfants</i> | <i>savoir vivre</i> 1 |
| Music. | To dancing. | To natural philosophy. |
| <i>musique</i> 2 | <i>danſe</i> 2 | <i>physique</i> 2 |
| Of medicine. | Of philosophy. | To logic. |
| <i>médecine</i> 2 | <i>philosophie</i> 2 | <i>logique</i> 2 |
| Of steel. | Pewter. | Copper. |
| <i>acier</i> | <i>etain</i> | <i>cuivre</i> |
| iron. | Meekness. | To cruelty. |
| <i>fer</i> 1 | <i>douceur</i> 2 | <i>cruauté</i> |
| Envy. | Gluttony and drunkenness. | To Germany. |
| <i>envie</i> | <i>gourmandise</i> 2 <i>ivrognerie</i> | <i>Allemagne</i> |
| Scotland. | Italy. | To Brabant. |
| <i>Ecosse</i> | <i>Italie</i> | <i>Brabant</i> 1 |
| The God of mercies. | | Of France. |
| | <i>misericordes</i> | <i>France</i> 2 |
| Of America. | To Virginia. | The art of printing. |
| <i>Amerique</i> | <i>Virginie</i> 2 | <i>imprimerie</i> |
| Abyssinia and of Nubia. | | The history of |
| <i>Abyſſinie</i> | <i>Nubie</i> 2 | <i>hſtoire</i> |
| | | <i>h mute</i> |
| | | The fate of Spain. |
| | | <i>fort</i> 1 <i>Eſpagne</i> |

Proper names, and the names of countries and states, that take their names from their capitals, are declined with *de* and *a*, as *Naples*, *Maroc*, *Malthe*, *Genes*, &c. as also names of towns.

To James Bezencourt.
Jacques

The books of John Milton.
Jean

The

The manufactories of Paisley and Glasgow.

manufacture

At the paper manufactories of Balfour, Cadell, Hutton, and
papeterie

Strachan, you will see the best paper of Europe.

vous verrez meilleur papier

To the health of William Ramsay.

santé 2 Guillaume

Of the island of Corsica.

isle Corse

The States of Venice.

Etat Venise

Of the manufactory of Genoa.

manufacture 2 Gênes

The kingdoms of Naples and
royaume

Morocco.

Maroc.

The Individual Article.

Sing. Numb.

Plural Numb.

Masc. Gender.

| | | | |
|--------|-------------------|---------|-----------------------|
| Cases. | 1 & 4 un | a or an | des |
| 2 | d'un of, from, by | a or an | de of, from, by, with |
| 3 | à un to at | a or an | á des to, at |

Fem. Gender.

| | | | |
|--------|----------------------|---------|-----------------------|
| Cases. | 1 & 4 une | a or an | des |
| 2 | d'une of, from, by, | a or an | de of, from, by, with |
| 3 | à une to at, a or an | | á des to, at |

I sent a letter to a lady.

J'envoyai lettre 2 dame

The notions of a philosopher.

idée philosophe

An army.

To a city.

To objects in general.

objet en

view from a rising ground.

vue 2 hauteur 2 h founded

Fires from a mountain.

Of a

feu montagne 2

rule.

To a mill.

To a button maker.

Of a button hole.

regle 2 moulin 1 boutonnier

boutonnière 2

A council of Princes.

conseil 1

To councils of kings.

Curls of an

conseil

boucles

old

old wig. The airs of a cockney. He has the politeness
vieille perruque *Rodaut Il a politesse 2*
 of a courtier. To the dignity of a senator he joins the stateliness
courtisan dignité 2 senateur il joint grandeur 2
 of a king.

The Partitive Article restricts the extent of the signification of the noun to the *part of a whole*; and in English the word *some* is either expressed or understood.

Declension of the Partitive Article.

Sing. Numb.

Plur. for all Gend.

| Cafes, | Masc. | Fem. | M. & F. |
|--------|----------|---------|----------------------------------|
| | 1 & 4 du | de la | de l' des <i>some</i> |
| | 3 à du | à de la | à de l' à des <i>to, at some</i> |

De l' à de l', are placed before words in the singular number beginning with a vowel, and *h* mute.

If nouns in the partitive sense are preceded by an adjective, the declension for all genders and numbers is,

| | | | |
|--------|------------------|----------------|---------------------------------|
| Cafes, | 1 & 4 de | <i>some</i> | de bon vin <i>good wine</i> |
| | 3 à de <i>to</i> | <i>at some</i> | de bonne bière <i>good beer</i> |
| | | | de bon vins <i>good wines</i> |

Sugar, rum, and water, make punch. The stationer sells
sucré 1 taffia 1 eau font ponche 1 papetier vend
 paper, pens, ink, and penknives. I have spoken to weavers
papier 1 plume, encré, canifs J'ai parlé tisserands
 about shuttles and looms. Some professors have notions,
touchant novlettes métiers professeurs ont idées
 very ridiculous. Great men are mistaken often. Good rum,
tres ridicule grand se trompent souvent
 good sugar, and good water, make good punch. We have
eau 2 avons

sold to handsome women good watches. He sells pepper,
vendu belle montre 2 poivre 1
cinnamon,

cinnamon, barley and sugar plumbs. To good green tea add
 cannelle & orge mondé dragées thé verd ajoutez
 good refined sugar, you will have an exquisite beverage.
 sucre raffiné vous aurez exquis breuvage.

Possessive or Genitive Case.

This case originally in English, like the genitive of the nouns in the German language, ended in *is*, as, *the King's will*, *the Queen's will*. Now a-days, the *i* is retrenched, and an elision or apostrophe is put above the place where the *i* stood formerly, and next to the *s*, thus, '*'s*; and we say, *the King's*, *the Queen's* will. In French, such expressions are made by a genitive, as *la volonté du Roi, de la Reine*, the will of the King, of the Queen. Compound words in English are also made by a genitive in French; as, *the parlour-window*, *the dining-room table*; *la fenêtre de la salle à manger*.

The King's authority.

autorité

We shall speak of the state's welfare.

bien

General's orders.

ordre

The Republic's honour.

république & honneur

republic.

The state affairs.

affaire

The philosopher's dreams.

rêve

Women's fancies.

fantaisie

Of the Queen's interest.

crédit

You have the

A Printer's prefs.
imprimeur presse

Plato's

Virgil's Eneis.

Virgile Eneide

Platon

The officer's regimentals.

officier uniforme

The old man's notions.

vieillard idée

De is used to express the kind, matter, and quality of the preceding noun, as *silk stuffs*, *des étoffes de soie*.

The price of the silver buckles.

prix

argent boucle

They admire the marble statue.

marbre statue

The silver spoons.

cuiller

The country house

campagne maison

Wa

We have a gold ring and a silver snuff-box. The Spanish wine,
or anneau 1 tabatière 2 Espagne vin 1
Dutch cheese. The good Burgundy wine. The Florence oil.
Hollande fromage 1 Bourgogne huile
Woollen stuffs. A woman of taste. We shall have
laine gout
the ear-rings London fashions. The Irish beef. The
oreille pendants Londres mode Irlande boeuf 1
Orkney butter. The Shetland hose. The Newfoundland cod.
Orcades beurre 1 bas Terreneuve morue 2
The Virginia tar. The Manchester cottons. The Liverpool
Virginie goudron 1
salt. The seamen. The King of France. The Emperor
sel mer Empereur
of Germany.
Allemagne

Au, à la, à l', *aux* are employed to express the English word *at* coming before names of games that one plays at, as *jouer aux échecs*, to play at chess.

Let us play at cards.
carte.

You play at piquet 1.

'They played at tennis.
pau me I

They play at shuttlecock.
volant 1

Du, de la, de l', des, are used to express the English words *upon* before instruments that one plays upon, as *jouer du violon*, to play upon the fiddle.

We cannot play upon the harpsichord.

Nous ne pouvons pas jouer clavecin.

He plays vastly well on the flute.

divinement bien flute 2

We cannot play upon the guitar, but we can play upon the
guitare 2 mais

Flagellet.

flageolet

Au, à, la, à l', aux and *à*, are used to express many compound words in English, some of which may be expressed by the word *with*. Thus, *apple-woman* may be made, *woman with the apples*, femme

femme aux pommes. The same case of the articles denotes the use of some nouns in English, as, *a dining room* may be resolved, *a room used for dining*, une chambre à dîner.

Speak to us, oyster woman. Tell us, butter-man. Speak to
Parlez-nous huître femme. *Dites nous beurre 1* *Parlez-*
 me, milk-woman. A dancing school.
moi lait 1 *à danser salle 2*

Au, à la, à l', aux, à are used to denote the matter, instruments, and tools in working, as *travailler à des étoffes*.

You and she work in lace. They build with lime. You
à de la dentelle *bâtir* *chaux 2*
 paint in oil. She works at the needle. We went with sails and
peignez *à voile*
 oars.
rame.

Le, la, l', les, are placed before names of persons of dignity, as *King Charles*, *Le Roi Charles*.

Prince Augustus. General Monk. Count Saxe. Marshal
Auguste *Comte de* *Maréchal*
 Turenne.

On VERBS in *er*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

| | | |
|----------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| I flatter. | Thou lovest. | He proposes. |
| <i>flatter</i> | <i>aimer</i> | <i>proposer</i> |
| We devote. | You censure. | They repeat. |
| <i>dévouer</i> | <i>censurer</i> | <i>répéter</i> |
| I do blame. | Thou doest cry. | She cuts. |
| <i>blamer</i> | <i>crier</i> | <i>couper</i> |
| | U | We |

EXERCISES ON VERBS.

We do seem.

sembler

I am watering.

arroser

We are unrooting.

déraciner

You do dedicate.

dédier

Thou art breaking.

brisier

You are touching.

toucher

They do spin.

filer

She is proceeding.

procéder

They are looking.

regarder

Imperfect.

I did deceive.

tromper

We did undeceive.

détromper

Thou didst hope.

espérer

You did weep.

pleurer

He did play.

jouer

They did dream.

ranger

Preterite.

I desired.

désirer

We quibbled.

chicanner

Thou calledst.

appeller

You refined.

rafiner

He left.

quitter

They ornamented.

parer

Future.

I shall weigh.

peser

We shall be like.

ressembler

Thou wilt declare.

declarer

You will divide.

diviser

She will curl.

friser

They will give.

donner

Conditional.

I should draw.

tirer

We would desist.

desister

Thou wouldst seek.

chercher

You would empty.

vuider

He would shut.

fermer

They would arm.

armer

SUBJUNCTIVE

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

| | | |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| I may sup. <i>souper</i> | Thou mayest shine. <i>briller</i> | He may renounce. <i>renoncer</i> |
| We may name. <i>nommer</i> | You may conceal. <i>cacher</i> | They may notify. <i>notifier</i> |

Preterite.

| | | |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| I might pray. <i>prier</i> | Thou mightest dine. <i>diner</i> | She may rub. <i>frotter</i> |
| We might mount. <i>monter</i> | You might dance. <i>danſer</i> | They might leave. <i>laiffier</i> |

Imperative Mood.

| | | |
|-----------------------------------|---|---------------------------------------|
| Let me carry. <i>porter</i> | Speak thou. Let him fast. <i>jeuner</i> | Let her fast. <i>jeuner</i> |
| Let us struggle. <i>lutter</i> | Smite ye. <i>frapper</i> | Let them justify. <i>justifier</i> |

The compound tenses are formed by adding the participle preterite of the verb to the simple tenses of *avoir*.

Compound of the Present.

| | | |
|-----------------------------------|--|--|
| I have driven. <i>pouffer</i> | Thou hast lent. <i>préter</i> | He has sought. <i>chercher</i> |
| We have spent. <i>dépenser</i> | You have borrowed. <i>emprunter</i> | They have deplored. <i>déplorer</i> |

Compound of the Imperfect.

| | | |
|-----------------------------------|--|------------------------------------|
| I had sent. <i>envoyer</i> | Thou hadst shut up. <i>enfermer</i> | He had honoured. <i>honorer</i> |
| We had equalled. <i>égaler</i> | You had demanded. <i>demandeur</i> | They had fixed. <i>fixer</i> |

Compound

EXERCISES ON VERBS.

Compound of the Preterite.

| | | |
|-------------------|---------------------|-----------------------|
| I had wedded. | Thou hadst married. | She had required. |
| <i>épouser</i> | <i>marier</i> | <i>exiger</i> |
| We had laboured. | You had stained. | They had endeavoured. |
| <i>travailler</i> | <i>tacher</i> | <i>tâcher</i> |

Compound of the Future.

| | | |
|------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| I shall have sinned. | Thou shalt have fished. | She shall have weighed. |
| <i>pécher</i> | <i>pêcher</i> | <i>peser</i> |
| We shall have thought. | You shall have ceased. | They shall have washed. |
| <i>penser</i> | <i>cesser</i> | <i>laver</i> |

Compound of the Conditional.

| | | |
|-------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| I should have deprived. | Thou wouldst have guessed. | He would have despised. |
| <i>priver</i> | <i>déviner</i> | <i>mépriser</i> |
| We should have jumped. | You would have scolded. | They would have dethroned. |
| <i>sauter</i> | <i>gronder</i> | <i>d. trôner</i> |

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Compound of the Present.

| | | |
|---------------------|--------------------------|-----------------------|
| I may have scraped. | Thou mayest have shaved. | He may have mocked. |
| <i>grater</i> | <i>râser</i> | <i>moquer</i> |
| We may have walked. | You may have trembled. | They may have deemed. |
| <i>marcher</i> | <i>trembler</i> | <i>censer</i> |

Compound

Compound Preterite.

| | | |
|--|--|---|
| I might have educated. <i>éduquer</i> | Thou mightest have enlightened. <i>éclairer</i> | He might have deposed. <i>déposer</i> |
| We might have eluded. <i>éluder</i> | You might have announced. <i>annoncer</i> | They might have experienced. <i>éprouver</i> |

The compound tenses of an active verb are often made by adding *been* to the participle present, as *I have been speaking*, *I had been dancing*, *I would have been doing*. Such expressions are turned into French by the compound of the present, imperfect, &c. *j'ai parlé*, *j'avois dansé*, *j'aurois fait*, &c. And *will be*, *would*, *should be*, followed by the participle present, are translated into French by the future and conditional, as *he will be writing*, *il écrira*, *he would be speaking*, *il parleroit*. *Am*, *are*, *was*, *were*, before a participle present, are signs of the present and imperfect tenses; *I am speaking*, *we are speaking*, *I was speaking*, &c.; *je parle*, *nous parlons*, *je parlois*, &c.

THE PASSIVE VERB

Is formed by adding the participle of the preterite to the tenses of *être*; and the participle preterite must be of the same gender and number as the nominative of the verb.

The feminine gender of all participles preterite, except *été* been, which is indeclinable, is formed by adding *e* mute to the masculine, as *il est aimé*, he is loved; *elle est aimée*, she is loved. The plural of the participle preterite is formed by adding *s* to the singular, as *ils sont aimés*, they are loved; *elles sont aimées*, they are loved.

INDICATIVE.

Present.

| | | |
|--------------------------------------|------------------------------------|---|
| I am authorised. <i>autoriser</i> | Thou art marked. <i>marquer</i> | He is formed. <i>former</i> |
| We are watched. <i>veiller</i> | You are found. <i>trouver</i> | They are declared, <i>declarer</i> <i>Imperfect</i> |

Imperfect.

| | | |
|--------------------|---------------------|-------------------|
| I was advanced. | Thou wast rejected. | She was poisoned. |
| avancer | rejeter | empoisonner |
| We were announced. | You were delivered. | They were hissed, |

annoncer *delivrer* *siffler*

Preterite.

| | | |
|------------------|---------------------|---------------------|
| I was disgusted. | Thou wast arrested. | He was dishonoured. |
| dégouter | arréter | deshonorier |
| We were stript. | You were given. | They were devoured. |

depouiller *donner* *dévorier*

Future.

| | | |
|------------------------|-----------------------|----------------------|
| I shall be oppressed. | Thou wilt be drubbed. | He will be noted. |
| opprimer | roffer | noter |
| We shall be imprinted. | You will be doubted. | They will be pushed. |

imprimer *douter* *pousser*

Conditional.

| | | |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|---------------------------|
| I should be exempted. | Thou wouldst be deposed. | She would be declared. |
| exempter | deposer | déclarer |
| We should be astonished. | You would be dignified. | They would be rubbed. |

étonner *dignifier* *frotter*

Compound of the Present.

| | | |
|-------------------------|---------------------------|--------------------------|
| I have been hired. | Thou hast been bribed. | She has been turned. |
| gager | gagner | tourner |
| We have been loaded. | You have been praised. | They have been bound. |

combler *louer* *lier*

Compound

Compound of the Imperfect.

| | | |
|---|--|---|
| I had been chastised. <i>châtier</i> | Thou hadst been armed. <i>armer</i> | It had been decided. <i>il décider</i> |
| We had been tormented. <i>vexer</i> | You had been bathed. <i>baigner</i> | They had been hurt. <i>blesser</i> |

Compound of the Preterite.

| | | |
|---|--|---|
| I had been embarrassed. <i>embarrasser</i> | Thou hadst been raised. <i>élever</i> | She had been crowned. <i>couronner</i> |
| We had been proved. <i>éprouver</i> | We had been spoiled. <i>gâter</i> | They had been minced. <i>bacher</i> |

Compound of the Future.

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| I shall have been guided. <i>guider</i> | Thou shalt have been invited. <i>inviter</i> | He shall have been dressed. <i>habiller</i> |
| We shall have been thanked. <i>remercier</i> | You shall have been alleviated. <i>soulager</i> | They shall have been ruined. <i>ruiner</i> |

Compound of the Conditional.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| I should have been designed. <i>designer</i> | Thou wouldst have been supported. <i>supporter</i> | She would have been entreated. <i>supplier</i> |
| We should have been drawn. <i>trainer</i> | You would have been killed. <i>tuer</i> | They would have been robbed. <i>vôler</i> |

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

| | | |
|-------------------|------------------------|-----------------------|
| I may be treated. | Thou mayest be ranged. | He may be refused. |
| <i>traiter</i> | <i>ranger</i> | <i>refuser</i> |
| We may be bled. | You may be saved. | They may be purified. |
| <i>saigner</i> | <i>sauver</i> | <i>purifier</i> |

Preterite.

| | | |
|------------------------|--------------------------------|----------------------------|
| I might be e-ified. | Thou mightest be upbraided. | He might be eluded. |
| <i>e-fier</i> | <i>reprocher</i> | <i>éluder</i> |
| We might be forced. | You might be taught. | They might be deprived. |
| <i>forcer</i> | <i>enseigner</i> | <i>priver</i> |

Compound of the Present.

| | | |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| I may have been hired. | Thou mayest have been changed. | She may have been struck. |
| <i>louer</i> | <i>changer</i> | <i>frapper</i> |
| We may have been deemed. | You may have been prefed. | They may have been tricked. |
| <i>reputer</i> | <i>prefer</i> | <i>tricher</i> |

Compound of the Preterite.

| | | |
|--------------------------------|---|------------------------------------|
| I might have been whipt. | Thou mightest have been overpowered. | She might have been justified. |
| <i>fouetter</i> | <i>accabler</i> | <i>justifier</i> |
| We might have been admired. | You might have been carried off. | They might have been subjected. |
| <i>admirer</i> | <i>enlever</i> | <i>subjuguer</i> |

Imperative

Imperative Mood.

| | | |
|-----------------------|-----------------|---------------------|
| Let me be carried. | Be thou placed. | Let him be aided. |
| <i>mener</i> | <i>placer</i> | <i>aider</i> |
| Let us be criticised. | Be ye judged. | Let them be jeered. |
| <i>critiquer</i> | <i>juger</i> | <i>moquer</i> |

Let her be thanked.

remercier

Verbs in *ir*, *issant*, *i*, as *finir*, *finissant*, *fini*.

The present of the indicative is formed by changing the *r* of the infinitive into *s*, as *finir*, *je finis*.

To conjugate a verb with a negation, the French use these words, *ne*, *pas*, or *point*; the first of which is placed betwixt the nominative, or personal pronoun, and the verb, and the other after the verb, if the tense is single, and between the participle preterite and the verb *avoir* or *être* in the compound tenses. The *e* is cut off from *ne* before a verb beginning with a vowel, thus, *n'*.

Je ne finirai pas, *I shall not finish.*

Je n'ai pas or point fini, *I have not finished.*

I harden not. Thou doest not soften. He does not demolish.

durcir *mollir* *démolir*

We do not sweeten. You strengthen not. They are not blessing.

adoucir *affermir* *benir*

I did not lessen. Thou wast not obeying. He was not filling.

amoindrir *obéir* *remplir*

We did not dazzle. You did not smooth. They did not choose.

éblouir *applanir* *choisir*

I applauded not. Thou tarnishedst not. They suffered not.

applaudir *ternir* *pârir*

We united not. You languished not. We shall not enlarge.

unir *languir* *aggrandir*

You would not grow pale. They may not exasperate.

pâlir *aigrir*

| | | | |
|------------------------------|-----------------|--------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| That you might not demolish. | <i>démolir</i> | Let us not define. | <i>définir</i> |
| Let them not unite. | <i>réunir</i> | Thou wouldst not ennable. | <i>annoblir</i> |
| Let her not match. | <i>assortir</i> | He has not enjoyed. | We don't enjoy. |
| They have not filled. | <i>remplir</i> | <i>jouir</i> | He would not have whitened. |
| Thou hadst not straitened. | <i>étrécir</i> | You would not have emboldened. | <i>enhardir</i> |
| They might not have filled. | <i>remplir</i> | You have not diverted. | <i>divertir</i> |
| He may not have dazzled. | <i>éblouir</i> | You are not finishing. | <i>finir</i> |

Verbs conjugated as *recevoir, recevant, reçue, and vendre, vendant, vendu*, by way of question.

VERBS by way of question are used by putting the pronouns personal, *je, tu, il, elle, nous, vous, ils, elles*, after the verb, with a hyphen in the single tenses; and in the compound tenses, these personal pronouns are placed between the verbs *avoir* or *être* and the Participle Preterite, as,

Vendrai-je shall I sell?
véntras-tu wilt thou sell?
vendra-t-il will he sell?

ai-je vendu have I sold?
as-tu vendu hast thou sold?
a-t-il vendu has he sold?

Negatively.

Ne vendrai-je pas shall I not sell?
ne vendra-t-il pas will he not sell?

n'ai-je pas vendu have I not sold?
n'as-tu pas vendu hast thou not sold?
n'a-t-il pas vendu has he not sold?

When

When the third person singular of the verb ends with a vowel, *t* is added between two hyphens, for sounds sake, as *vendra-t-il*, will he sell? *a-t-il*, has he?

Verbs in *eoivir* change *eoivir* into *ois* for the Present Ind. as *devoir, je dois.*

| | | |
|---|-------------------------------|-------------------------|
| Do I owe ? | Owest thou ? | Conceyest thou ? |
| <i>devoir</i> | | <i>concevoir</i> |
| Do they perceive ? | Do you not owe ? | Was I not owing ? |
| <i>appercevoir</i> | | |
| Hast thou conceived ? | Would he not have perceived ? | |
| Have they not received ? | Shall we not conceive ? | |
| Am I expecting ? Art thou not extending ? Is he not answering ? | | |
| <i>attendre</i> | <i>étendre</i> | <i>répondre</i> |
| Do they not hear ? | Did he bite ? | Has he not complied ? |
| <i>entendre</i> | <i>mordre</i> | <i>condescendre</i> |
| Have we not spilt ? | Complied we not ? | Should I lose ? |
| <i>répandre</i> | | <i>perdre</i> |
| Have they not melted ? Has he not hanged ? Will he not bend ? | | |
| <i>fondre</i> | <i>pendre</i> | <i>tendre</i> |
| Would he not have split ? | | Has she not pretended ? |
| <i>fendre</i> | | <i>prétendre</i> |
| Have I new-moulded ? Have I not corresponded ? Shall we shear ? | | |
| <i>refondre</i> | <i>correspondre</i> | <i>tondre</i> |
| Let me lose ? | Let her not bite ? | Confound ye ? |
| <i>perdre</i> | <i>mordre</i> | <i>confondre</i> |
| Would not they have expected ? | | Stretched they not ? |
| | | <i>étendre</i> |
| Rendered we not ? Let them not spill ? Shall we understand ? | | |
| <i>rendre</i> | | <i>entendre</i> |
| Don't you come down ? Have I pulled down ? Fought they not ? | | |
| <i>descendre</i> | <i>abattre</i> | <i>combattre</i> |
| Do we abate ? | Twisted we ? | Did we pretend ? |
| <i>rabattre</i> | <i>tordre</i> | <i>prétendre</i> |
| Art thou not beating again ? Over-rated he not ? Forbade we ? | | |
| <i>rebattre</i> | <i>survendre</i> | <i>defendre</i> |
| Do you not recast ? Were we rushing on ? Do I not beat ? | | |
| <i>refondre</i> | <i>fondre</i> | <i>battre</i> |
| Have you not confounded ? Pretendest thou ? Was he fighting ? | | |
| <i>confondre</i> | <i>prétendre</i> | <i>combattre</i> |
| Were you not beating ? Has he not been guilty of repetitions ? | | |
| | | <i>rebattre</i> |
| Lost I ! | Lose. | Has she not laid eggs ? |
| <i>perdre</i> | | <i>pondre</i> |
| | | <i>On</i> |

ON *aller*, *acquerir*, *boire*, *bouillir*, *confire*, *conclure*, *coudre*, and *courir*, with derivatives; *couvrir*, with derivatives, and verbs conjugated like it.

Thou art going. Doest thou go? Are they going? Do not they go? I am going. They went. Let us go. We might go. They would not go. Will they not go? Would he not go? I may go. You went. Have I gone?

He would have gone. We have gone. I am acquiring. She would acquire. Shall I acquire? They drink. I was drinking. He may drink. Has he not drank? It boils. Does it boil? He did not confess. They confessed. Have I confessed? We concluded. Have they not concluded? They sewed. Had he not sewed? Thou runnest. We ran to. We incurred.

| | | |
|----------------------------------|---------------------|---------------------------|
| | <i>accourir</i> | <i>encourir</i> |
| You assisted. | We have discoursed. | Shall we concur? Have |
| <i>fecourir</i> | <i>discourir</i> | <i>concourir</i> |
| you not run over? | We covered. | Have we covered? He |
| <i>parcourir</i> | | |
| discovered. | Have I not offered? | Wouldst thou have opened? |
| <i>découvrir</i> | <i>offrir</i> | <i>ouvrir</i> |
| I should not have covered again. | | We have not offered. |
| <i>recouvrir</i> | | <i>affrir</i> |
| Have I suffered? | | Having discovered. |
| <i>souffrir</i> | | <i>découvrir</i> |

On verbs in *aindre*, *eindre*, *oindre*, as *craindre*, and verbs conjugated in the same way, also on *croire*, *cueillir*, and *dire*, with its derivatives.

| | | |
|--------------------|------------------|----------------------|
| I restrain. | Thou reachest. | He infringes. |
| <i>restreindre</i> | <i>atteindre</i> | <i>enfreindre</i> |
| We feign. | You pity. | They dye, or colour. |
| <i>feindre</i> | <i>plaindre</i> | <i>teindre</i> |
| We did extinguish. | I enjoined. | They painted, |
| <i>éteindre</i> | <i>enjoindre</i> | <i>peindre</i> |

| | | |
|------------------------------------|------------------------------------|---|
| I have anointed. <i>oindre</i> | He had girt. <i>ceindre</i> | They would have joined. <i>joindre</i> |
| He did believe. <i>croire</i> | Have I believed ? | He will gather. <i>cueillir</i> |
| I have gathered. <i>maudire</i> | You are saying. <i>dire</i> | They said. <i>dire</i> |
| You unsay. <i>dedire</i> | They foretel. <i>predire</i> | You say again. <i>redire</i> |
| You curse. <i>maudire</i> | You interdict. <i>interdire</i> | Are you flandering? <i>médire</i> |
| Hast thou said ? | | |

On *dormir* and *écrirre*, with their derivatives ; *frire*, *fuir*, *hair*, and *lire*, with their derivatives.

| | | |
|--|-------------------------------------|---|
| Thou sleepest. <i>dormir</i> | He lulls asleep. <i>endormir</i> | I have slept again. <i>redormir</i> |
| I wrote. <i>écrire</i> | We described. <i>décrire</i> | They have subscribed. <i>souscrire</i> |
| Have we inscribed ? <i>inscrire</i> | They outlawed. <i>proscire</i> | They fried. <i>faire frire</i> |
| He was shunning. <i>fuir</i> | I have shunned. <i>proscire</i> | Thou hatest. <i>hair</i> |
| He was reading. <i>lire</i> | We elected. <i>élire</i> | They have read again. <i>relire</i> |

On *Mentir*, and verbs conjugated like it ; *mettre*, and its derivatives ; *mouare*, *mourir*, and *paroître*, with derivatives and verbs conjugated in the same way ; on *plaire* and *pouvoir*.

| | | |
|------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| I tell a lie. <i>mentir</i> | He smells. <i>sentir</i> | He sets out. <i>partir</i> |
| They repented. <i>repentir</i> | We have served. <i>servir</i> | He foresees. <i>présentir</i> |
| I put. <i>mettre</i> | We admitted. <i>admettre</i> | They put again. <i>remettre</i> |
| Submitted we ? <i>saumettre</i> | Have I promised ? <i>promettre</i> | We omit. <i>omettre</i> |
| | | We |

| | | |
|--------------------|--------------------------|-------------------|
| We are grinding. | They whet. | He will die. |
| <i>moudre</i> | <i>emouître</i> | <i>mourir</i> |
| They died. | She dies. | She would die. |
| He may die. | They might die. | He grazes. |
| She fed. | Thou appearest. | She knows. |
| <i>répatrier</i> | <i>paroître</i> | <i>connoître</i> |
| We have forgotten. | Did she appear? | I did, grow. |
| <i>méconnoître</i> | <i>disparoître</i> | <i>croître</i> |
| It has decreased. | He acknowledges. | Have I appeared? |
| <i>décroître</i> | <i>reconnonître</i> | <i>paroître</i> |
| They please. | We displeased. | They are able. |
| <i>plaire</i> | <i>deplaire</i> | <i>pouvoir</i> |
| I may be able. | Thou wilt be able. | I have been able. |
| I should be able. | He would have been able. | |

On *prendre* and its derivatives, *produire*, and verbs in *uire*, *resoudre*, *rire*, *rompre*, *savoir*, *suivre*, *traire*, *tressaillir*, *vaincre*, *valoir*, and verbs in *enir*, as *venir*, *revêtir*, *vivre*, *voir*, with derivatives, *vouloir*.

| | | |
|----------------------|----------------------------|---------------------|
| They take. | She learned. | We understood. |
| <i>prendre</i> | <i>apprendre</i> | <i>comprendre</i> |
| He may surprise. | He was undertaking. | We have replied. |
| <i>surprendre</i> | <i>entreprendre</i> | <i>reprendre</i> |
| He produced. | She has hurt. | We translated. |
| <i>produire</i> | <i>nuire</i> | <i>traduire</i> |
| It has shined. | He resolves. | We have resolved. |
| <i>il reluire</i> | <i>resoudre</i> | |
| Art thou laughing? | She would have laughed. | We broke. |
| <i>rire</i> | <i>rire</i> | <i>rompre</i> |
| She has interrupted. | He will know. | They knew. |
| <i>interrompre</i> | <i>savoir</i> | |
| He has known. | I follow. | Thou persuadest. |
| | <i>suivre</i> | <i>pour suivre</i> |
| She milks. | He leaps for joy. | He vanquished. |
| | <i>tressaillir de joie</i> | <i>vaincre</i> |
| He has vanquished. | He is worth. | She would be worth. |
| | <i>valoir</i> | |
| He may prevail. | He might be worth. | She came. |
| <i>prevainoir</i> | | <i>venir</i> |
| | | We |

| | | |
|--|-------------------------------------|---|
| We abstained. <i>abstenir</i> | He will contain. <i>contenir</i> | They agreed. <i>convenir</i> |
| He may prevent. <i>prévenir</i> | You became. <i>devenir</i> | Have we not obtained. <i>obtenir</i> |
| I shall relieve. <i>subvenir</i> | He invested. <i>revêtir</i> | We have heard. <i>ouire dire</i> |
| She lives. <i>vivre</i> | He outlived. <i>survivre</i> | He will see. <i>voir</i> |
| He provided. <i>pourvoir</i> | We shall foresee. <i>prévoir</i> | He would provide. |
| I have not seen. He may be willing. | They are willing. <i>vouloir</i> | He has been willing. He will be willing. |

REFLECTED VERBS.

By putting these six conjunctive pronouns *me*, *te*, *se*, *nous*, *vous*, *se*, to an active verb in the same manner as they are placed with *se lever* in page 104, you have a reflected verb. When *me*, *te*, *se*, *nous*, *vous*, *se*, signify *myself*, *thyself*, *himself*, *herself*, *one's self*, *itself*, *ourselves*, *yourself*, *yourselves*, *themselves*, they are in the accusative case; if they are Englished by *to myself*, *to thyself*, *to himself*, *to herself*, *to one's self*, *to itself*, *to ourselves*, *to yourself*, *to yourselves*, *to themselves*, they are in the dative case.

Before a verb beginning with a vowel, the *e* is cut off from *me*, *te*, *se*, with an elision, thus, *m'*, *t'*, *s'*.

EXAMPLES.

Je me vois, I see myself. *Nous nous voyons*, We see ourselves, &c.

Je me ferai, I shall do to myself. *Nous nous ferons*, we shall do to ourselves, &c.

All

All the compound tenses of reflected verbs are conjugated with *être*, and never with *avoir*, though they are Englished by *have*, *had*, &c. The participle preterite, in this case, must be of the same gender and number as the pronoun conjunctive which precedes the compound tense, if that pronoun is in the accusative case; but if it is in the dative, the participle preterite is indeclinable. It is needless here to speak more of the Participle Preterite, as its construction will be thoroughly explained when we shall treat of the Participles.

Examples.

Elle s'est vue, she has seen herself. *Elle se seroit imaginé*, she would have fancied to herself.

Ils se sont vus, they have seen themselves. *Ils se sont imaginé*, they have fancied to themselves.

If the verb is attended with a negative, the *ne* is put immediately after the nominative. Thus, *Elle ne se fait pas*, *Elles ne se font pas*.

In questions affirmatively, you begin with these pronouns, *me, te, se, nous, vous, se*, as *se voit-elle*, does she see herself? *me vois-je*, do I see myself?

In questions negatively, you begin with *ne*, *ne se voit-elle pas*, does she not see herself? *Ne se font-ils pas*, do they not do to themselves?

| | | | |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------|-------------------------------------|----------------------|
| Thou wilt hurt thyself. | <i>se blesser</i> | She would conduct herself. | <i>se comporter</i> |
| We shall not divert ourselves. | <i>se divertir</i> | You will yield. | <i>se rendre</i> |
| He has not stript himself. | <i>se dépouiller</i> | They have not seen themselves. | <i>se éblouir</i> |
| Have we forgotten ourselves? | <i>s'oublier</i> | Would they not have dazzled | |
| themselves? | | | |
| Have I weakened myself? | <i>s'affoiblir</i> | Have they not chosen to themselves? | <i>se choisir</i> |
| Have you been well? | <i>se porter bien</i> | Have they been ill? | <i>se porter mal</i> |
| I have not been well. | | I am not well. | |

| | | | |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------|---------------------------------------|---|
| I shall see myself. | <i>je voir</i> | Shall I fancy to myself? | <i>s'imaginer</i> |
| I shall not enrich myself. | <i>enrichir</i> | Shall I not do to myself? | <i>faire</i> |
| Thou weakenedst thyself. | <i>s'affoiblir</i> | You did not warm yourself. | <i>se chauffer</i> |
| I have reduced myself. | <i>se reduire</i> | Have we cooled ourselves? | <i>se refraîchir</i> |
| She would have freed herself. | <i>s'affranchir</i> | Have they not tired themselves? | <i>se fatiguer</i> |
| Have we hurt ourselves? | <i>se blesser</i> | Let us lift ourselves? | <i>se haußer</i> |
| He has not appropriated. | <i>s'approprier</i> | She would not have done to herself. | <i>se faire</i> |
| We have diverted ourselves. | <i>se divertir</i> | He has not strengthened himself. | <i>s'affermir</i> |
| Rejoice ye. | We shall stop. | I had humbled myself. | <i>se baïsser</i> |
| <i>se réjouir</i> | <i>s'arrêter</i> | No, I have not hurt myself. | <i>non</i> |
| Have you hurt yourself? | <i>se blesser</i> | I would not have held my tongue. | <i>se taire</i> |
| We are discoursing. | <i>s'entretenir</i> | We have not retired. | <i>Do you go away?</i> I shall make use of. |
| <i>s'accrocher</i> | | <i>s'en aller</i> | <i>se servir</i> |
| They would not have armed themselves. | <i>s'armer</i> | He would have clung. | We held our tongues. |
| Let us divert ourselves. | <i>se divertir</i> | Have you exposed yourself? | <i>s'exposer</i> |
| Free thyself. | Free yourself. | They would not have armed themselves. | Have I contented myself? |
| <i>s'arroger</i> | | <i>s'armer</i> | <i>se contenter</i> |
| They have arrogated to themselves. | <i>s'arroger</i> | Let us divert ourselves. | Having freed myself. |
| ourselves. | | <i>s'en aller</i> | <i>s'affranchir</i> |
| She would not have hurt herself. | <i>se blesser</i> | Free thyself. | Let them go away. |
| themselves the honour. | <i>l'honneur</i> | <i>s'en aller</i> | We have taken to |
| | | | <i>prendre</i> |
| | | She has not done to herself. | <i>se faire</i> |
| | | The cities have done to | |
| | | <i>les villes</i> | <i>se faire</i> |
| | | Having done to myself. | <i>se faire</i> |
| | | We | |

EXERCISES ON VERBS.

We had not applied. You have abstained. They would not
s'appliquer *s'abstenir*
have applied to the King. You have not applied to the Queen.
s'adresser au Roi *à la Reine*
Having fancied to myself.
s'imaginer

There are some neuter verbs that are conjugated like a reflected verb, as *se repentir*, to repent; *se mourir*, to be dying; *s'en retourner*, to come back; *s'en aller*, to go away; *se plaindre*, to complain, &c.

Some verbs used in the reflected way denote the passive, as *se trouver*, *se répandre*, *se raconter*, &c. *Elle s'est trouvée innocente*, she has been found innocent; *le bruit se répand*, the report is spread; *cette histoire se raconte différemment*, the story is told differently.

The word *entre* joined to a reflected verb denotes a mutual relation that two or more objects have with one another, as, *s'entrelouer* to praise one another, *s'entr'aider* to assist one another. Mr Fontaine says,

Il faut *s'entr'aider*, c'est la loi de nature.

The following neuter verbs take *être* in the compound tenses.

Allez, *to go.*
arriver, *to arrive.*
décéder, *to die.*
entrer, *to enter.*
mourir, *to die.*
naître, *to be born.*
partir, *to depart.*
rester, *to remain.*

sortir, *to go out.*
tomber, *to fall.*
venir, *to come.*
devenir, *to become.*
intervenir, *to intervene.*
parvenir, *to attain to.*
revenir, *to return.*
survenir, *to befall.*

We have gone. He would have gone. They have arrived.
She would have arrived. He has fallen. She would have fallen.
We have entered. Have I entered? They would have died.
Would you have died? They have been born. She would have

have been born. He has not departed. I should not have departed. They had remained. She would not have remained. I have gone out. Have we not gone out? Thou wouldest have fallen. Has he not fallen? She has not come. We had not come. They have become. We have intervened. They would have attained to. Have I not attained? Have you returned? I should not have returned. There has fallen. There would not have fallen. *il* *il*

According to some grammarians, *sortir*, to go out, takes *avoir* and *être*. It takes *avoir* when one intimates that a person *went out* and *is now returned*, as *mon frère a sorti ce matin*, my brother went out this morning, but *is now returned*. On the contrary, with *être*, *mon frère est sorti ce matin*, means, *that he went out this morning, and is not yet returned*.

Wine coopers, in moving their wine from the cellar, say, *nous avons sorti le vin de la cave*, we have brought the wine from the cellar. Jockeys also say, *sordez le cheval*, carry out the horse.

Sortir is a law term, when speaking of a sentence that is to have its full effect. In Latin, *exitum habere, affectum obtinere*. *La sentence sortira son plein et entiere effet*, the sentence will have its full and entire effect.

Accoucher takes *avoir* when used actively, and then it signifies to assist a woman in labour, as *cette sage femme a accouché plusieurs Dames*, that midwife has delivered many Ladies.

Accoucher takes *être* when it means *to be delivered*, or to bring forth, as *elle est accouchée d'un garçon*, she is brought to bed of a boy.

Cesser, to cease, to give over, takes *avoir* when it is used actively, as *vous avez cessé votre ouvrage*, you have given over your work. *Cesser*, without a regimen, takes either *avoir* or *être* as *la fièvre a cessé*, or *est cessée*, the fever has ceased.

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

Upon *Il y a*.

| | | | | | | | |
|-----------------|------------|------------|-----------|------------------------|------------------|-----------------|----------------|
| 'There will be. | There are. | There was. | There is. | There would not be. | There have been. | There had been. | There would |
|-----------------|------------|------------|-----------|------------------------|------------------|-----------------|----------------|

would not have been. Is there? Is there not? Was there not? Will there be? Will there not be? Would there not be? Would there be? There being. There having been.

Upon *il faut*.

It must. Must it? It must not. It was necessary. It was not necessary. Was it necessary? Was it not necessary? It will be necessary. Will it be necessary? Will it not be necessary? It would be necessary. Would it not be necessary? It has been necessary. Has it been necessary? It would not have been necessary. Would it not have been necessary?

Upon *c'est* It is.

It is. It is not. Is it not? It was. Was it? It was not. Was it not? It will be. It will not be. Will it not be? It would be. Would it be? It would not be. Would it not be? It has been. It had been. It would have been. It would not have been.

Upon other *Impersonal Verbs*.

It does not rain. Does it rain? It was raining. Was it raining? Will it rain? Will it not rain? It has rained. Has it rained? Has it not rained? There will happen. There happened. It will drizzle. It lightened. It lightens. It will freeze. It would not freeze. Does it freeze? It has frozen. Has it not frozen? It snowed. It would snow. It was snowing. It has snowed. It will thunder. It has thundered. Will it thunder? It was thundering. It will be proper. It was proper. It will be of importance. It would seem. Does it seem? It did appear. It followed from thence. That was the case. Will that be the case? That was not the case. It will be better. It was better. Life is at stake. It pleased the lady. Your life was at stake. It will be sufficient. Will it not be sufficient?

C H A P. I.

SECT. I

RULE.

1^{mo}, THE Verb must be in the same person and number as its nominative; or agent, as,

L'homme pense *man thinks.* Le chien aboie *the dog barks*
 Les hommes pensent *men think.* Les chats miaulent *the cats mew.*

2^{do}, If a verb has many nominatives, it is put in the plural, as,

Le Roi et la cour portent le deuil,
The King and court are in mourning.

3^{ti}o, If the verb has many pronouns of different persons for nominatives, it must agree with the first person rather than the second, and the second rather than the third, and the person who speaks names himself the last.

Vous et moi serons récompensés,
You and I shall be rewarded.

The scholar reads. The girls dance. The women work.
écolier lire *fille danser* *femme travailler*
 The King and the Parliament will encourage the arts.
Parlement i encourager

You and I were deceived. He and I observe the laws.
et moi trompé *lui moi observer loix*
Thes

| | |
|--|-----------------------------------|
| These books will form the heart and enlarge the mind. | |
| <i>ces former cœur 1 étendre esprit</i> | |
| The mother, the daughter, and the niece, have written to the | |
| <i>mère fille nièce écrit</i> | |
| Queen. | |
| <i>Reine</i> | |
| The troops will attack the enemy. | The waters flow. |
| <i>troupe attaquer ennemi couler</i> | |
| The masters teach, and the scholars learn. | The rain ceases. |
| <i>maitre enseigner apprendre pluie 2 cesser</i> | |
| The generals and the admirals will reward the courage of the | |
| <i>amiral</i> | |
| soldiers and sailors. | The sailors will spend the money. |
| <i>soldat matelot dépenser l'argent</i> | |

4to, When *qui* or *lequel* is the nominative, it governs the same person of the verb as the pronoun personal or noun, as,

C'est lui qui chantoit,
It is he who was singing.

It was I who was doing the honours of the house.
c'étoit moi qui faire honneur maison 2
It is you who act sincerely, and who deserve the favour of the
c'est qui agir sincèrement meriter faveur 2
Prince.

SECT. II.

RULE I.

THE Article, the Adjective, and the Pronoun, must be of the same gender and number as the Substantive to which they are joined, as,

La belle situation de ma maison,
The fine situation of my house.

Les grands talents de vos ancêtres,
The great talents of your ancestors.

POSITION OF THE ADJECTIVE.

RULE II.

If the adjective is a monosyllable, it is placed generally before its substantive. If it be a word of more than one syllable, it is placed generally after its substantive, as,

Les grands hommes de l'antiquité;
The great men of antiquity.

Les hommes illustres de l'Europe,
The illustrious men of Europe.

RULE III.

The words, *petit* little, *vieux*, *vieille* old, *mauvais* bad, *méchant* wicked, *vilain* ugly, *chetif* sorry, *meilleur* better, *moindre* less, *le moins* the least, *divers* diverse, *different* different, *dernier* last, *vaiiant* valiant, *nouveau*, *nouvelle* new, are generally placed before their substantives, unless two or more of them are joined with the conjunction *et* and *ou* or ; as,

Un petit fripon,
A little rogue.

Un homme petit et méchant,
A little wicked man.

EXERCISES ON THE

RULE IV.

ADJECTIVES, *1^{mo}*, Of nations, as Anglois *English*, François *French*, Allemand *German*, Ecoissois *Scots*; *2^{do}*, Of colour; *3^{to}*, Figure; *4^{to}*, Of cold, heat, elementary qualities; *5^{to}*, All participles and adjectives of favour, as *aigre* sour, and those that end in *esque, f, ve, ue*, are placed after their substantives, except *le vif argent* quicksilver.

RULE V.

1^{mo}, PRONOMINAL adjectives and numbers cardinal, ordinal, and proportional, are placed *before* their substantives. *2^{do}*, If the number stands for a surname, or meets with a proper or Christian name, it comes *after* the noun, without the article. *3^{to}*, When we quote the part of a book, without the article *the*, the adjective of number goes *after* the substantive. *4^{to}*, If the article *the* be added, the adjective of number may be placed indifferently *before* or *after*; as,

Mes amis ont quelque crédit,
My friends have some interest. Louis Seize de France,
Lewis the 16th of France.

Quatorze soldats,
Fourteen soldiers. Section seconde du livre,
Second section of the book.

La seconde édition,
The second edition. Le quatrième livre,
The fourth book.

Livre quatrième,
Fourth book.

Observation 1st.

Adjectives denoting moral qualities may be placed either before or after their substantives. The ear, and frequent reading of good authors, are the great helps in this point, as,

Nous

Nous avons un fidèle ami,
We have a faithful friend.
 Nous avons un ami fidèle.

Observation 2d.

Many adjectives, according to their position, have different significations, as, *une action basse*, a low action, *il vend à bas prix*, he sells at a low price; *c'est une action juste*, it is a just action; *à juste prix*, at a reasonable rate; *du fruit mûr*, ripe fruit; *une mure consultation*, a mature consultation; *un homme grand*, a tall man; *un grand homme*, a man of merit; *l'air grand*, a grand physiognomy, appearance; *le grand air*, the appearance of a man of birth or station; *une sage femme*, a midwife; *une femme sage*, a woman of good behaviour; *un galant homme*, a clever man; *un homme galant*, a man of gallantry; *les honnêtes gens d'une ville*, the fashionable people of a town; *les gens honnêtes*, polite people, who receive well those who visit them; *une nouvelle certaine*, true or sure news; *une certaine nouvelle*, a certain piece of news; *un pauvre homme*, a man without genius or parts; *un homme pauvre*, a poor indigent man; *un plaisant homme*, a facetious man; *un homme plaiſant*, a ridiculous impertinent man; *une eau morte*, a dead water that does not run; *les mortes eaux*, neap tides; *le Saint Esprit*, the Holy Ghost; *l'Esprit Saint*, the Spirit of God.

We say, *un habit vieux*, an old coat; *du vin vieux*, old wine; *les Pays Bas*, the Low Countries, Flanders; *les bas pays*, the low lying grounds.

Nud, naked, bare, is placed after the substantive, as *la tête nue*, *les pieds nuds*, (with one's head or feet bare); but, in the compound way, we say, *nu-tête*, *nu-pieds*, *nu-jambes*. *Demi* half, before its substantive, is indeclinable, but declinable when placed after with *et* and, as *une demi heure*, half an hour; *une heure et demie*, an hour and a half. *Feu* late, before the article, and a pronominal adjective, is not declinable, as *feu la Duchesse*, the late Duchess; *feu votre tante*, your late aunt, but say, *la feu Imperatrice*, the late Empress; *leur feu mere*, their late mother.

The neighbouring mountains are covered with these green
voisin montagnez couvert de ces verd
 trees.
arbrez

EXERCISES ON THE

The gentle zephyrs preserved in these beautiful places a
doux zephir 1 conserver en ces beau lieu
 delightful coolness.

delicieux fraicheur 2

These old customs are still followed in the Italian republics.

ces vieux coutume 2 encore suivi dans Italien république 2

Our small armies defeated the numerous forces 2 of the allied
notre armée défaire nombreux allié
 powers, by our good discipline.

puissances 2 par bon discipline 2

Despise the tale-bearers, as they are a race low and
mépriser rapporteurs nation 2 bas
 malevolent, the innocent actions they poison, and they magnify
malin action 2 empoisonner exagérer
 the trifling things.

petit chose 2

In the present case, the influence of the belligerent powers
cas 1 puissance 2

would be of great weight.

poids 1

Every body ought to detest the cruel disposition 2 of the
tout le monde doit détester
 revengeful enemy.

vindicatif ennemi

A gross and brutish ignorance 2 prevailed then in all the
grossier brutal regner alors dans
 European nations 2.

Européen

We know that the court of Rome was cringing under Charles
savoir cour 2 rampant sous
 the 5th, terrible to Henry the 3d of France, enemy and friend
quint trois ennemi ami
 in turns to Henry the 4th, artful with Lewis the 13th,
tour à tour de quatre adroit Louis treize
 openly opposed to Lewis the 14th, and often a secret enemy to
ouvertement opposé Louis quatorze secret des
 the Emperors.

Empereur

What a figure ! She wears a yellow gown, a white hat, a
quelle figure porter jaune robe 2 blanc chapeau 1
 black petticoat, and a red cloak.
noir jupe 2 rouge mantelet 1

These

These singular notions divert the frantic rabble.

ces singulier idée 2 divertir forcené canaille 2

By the last letters we learn, that the new levies will observe
par dernier l'ettre 2 apprendre que nouveau levées 2

the antient discipline 2.

ancien

No good laws in the like occasions 2 can justify these false
nyl loix 2 pareille ne peuvent justifier faux
 interpretations 2.

She introduced Camillus to the bright angel of the grove.

presenter Camille bel ange 1 bosquet 1

The naked truth offends these jealous women.

nud vérité 2 offenser ces

I know that the foolish merriment of that actor is disagreeable
savoir que enjouement 1 cet acteur désagréable
 to the delicate sentiments of the company.

ble delicat sentiments 1 compagnie 2

She is a downright adventurer, yet she has a noble appearance.

c'est franc avauturière grand air 1

Her answers were candid, generous, and polite.

ses reponse 2 naïf généreux poli

Let us see the new gown of the beautiful princefs.

neuf robe 2 beau princesse

The public utility is preferable to the private interest.

utilité 2 particulier intérêt 1

The brother was eating the ripe fruit 1, and the uncle was
manger mur oncle

eating the raw and fat meat.

crud gras viande 2

In an hour and a half I shall send the will of my late aunt
dans heure 2 demi envoyer testament 1 ma feu tante
 to the attorney.

procureur

Let us have a glass of cool wine and cool water.

verre 1 frais vin 1 eau 2

The low actions of a great man are despicable.

bas méprisable

He is a handsome man, he shall be, if I can, my husband.

c'est beau si pouvoir mari

If you sell the goods at a low price, you will ruin our
vendre marchandises à bas prix 1 ruiner nos

partners.

associé

The

The lessons are long, perplexing, and tedious to an idle person.

leçon 2 *embarrassant* *ennuyeux* *paresseux*

The best troops are often discouraged and defeated.

meilleur troupe 2 *découragé* *defait*

We do not know the true cause *2* of the tertian ague that

vrai *tiers* *fièvre 2 qui*

carried off the old lady.

emporter *dame*

S E C T. III.

BEFORE we proceed to give rules on the articles, let us consider the proper use of them ; for in this consists the beauty, nay the elegance of the French language.

1mo, Let us observe the nature of substantives, which are words that represent our ideas in a *general*, *specific*, or *individual* sense.

By a *general* sense, we mean, when the substantive is not confined by an epithet or adjective, but stands simply by itself in its most extensive meaning, as *la charité* charity.

2do, The *specific* sense is, when an epithet restrains the *general* idea to any particular sort, as *la charité Chrétienne*, Christian charity ; *la fausse supposition*, the false supposition.

3to, The *individual* sense is, when the substantive is still more narrowly circumscribed, as *une valeur héroïque* an heroic valour, *vos table quarrée* your square table, *une fausse supposition qu'on a faite* a false supposition that has been made.

Now, if we observe that the article always precedes the substantive in French, though often not in English ; in all these instances a little attention to the following and only exceptions, will make the matter easy and intelligible.

When a preposition with a substantive, taken either in a *general* or *specific* sense, denotes, *1mo*, The means of an action ; *2do*, The object of a collective word ; *3to*, An adjective ; *4to*, An adverbial expression, the article is always omitted.

1mo, For instance, the means of an action, *puni de mort* punishable by death, *accablé de vieillesse* loaded with old age.

2do,

2d^o, The object of a collective word; *moins de richesses* less riches, *beaucoup d'amis* many friends, *plus de gloire* more glory.

3^{to}, An adjective expression, *table de bois* wooden-table, *moulin à vent* a wind mill.

4^{to}, An adverbial expression, *aller à pied* to go on foot, *vivre en paix* to live peaceably.

5^{to}, In a description, or a vocative case, the article is omitted likewise, as *bois*, *prés*, *champs*, *animaux*, *tout est pour votre usage*, woods, meadows, fields, animals, all is for your use.

6^{to}, When a substantive is used adjectively, as *de fille qu'elle étoit*, *elle est devenue femme*.

7^{mo}, After the verbs *avoir*, *faire*, *prendre*, and a few more, as *j'ai peur*, *faire rage*, *prendre garde*.

8^{vo}, After pronominal and numeral adjectives, the article is omitted, because they denote always an *individual epithet*; *mon livre* my book, *quelques sommes* some sums. However, when *tout* signifies *all*, the article must follow, as *tout le monde* every body, *tous les hommes* all men. We also say, *quinze mille francs 15000 livres*. But if, besides the neutral adjective, the individuality is denoted by a relative pronoun expressed or understood by the circumstances of the discourse, the article takes place, as *j'aurai les quinze mille francs que je demande*, I shall have the 15000 livres that I ask.

9^{no}, In the superscription of letters, *A Monsieur, Monsieur de Melfort*.

Except in these nine occasions, the article is always used. This being premised, let us begin with practical examples on the article.

The articles *le*, *la*, *P*, *les*, and their cases, are used before a variety of words in French that have no article in English, viz.
 1^{mo}, Names of nations, countries, virtues, vices, metals, sciences, arts.
 2d^o, Before names that point out the *whole species* of the objects.

Peter the Great and Catherine Alexiewna have made Muscovy or Russia a warlike and powerful nation 2, formidable to Turkey, Germany, and Poland.
Pierre *Moscou*
Russie 2 *belliqueux puissant*
Turquie 2 *Allemagne* *Pologne* 2

Holland, Muscovy, Sweden, and Portugal 1 have made an alliance
Hollande 2 *Moscovie* 2 *Suede* 2

EXERCISES ON

alliance 2 for the protection of their trade.

pour protection leur commerce

Spain possesses the mines of Peru and Mexico, without which
Espagne posséder Perou 1 Mexique 1 sans quoi
 the trade of the maritime states would suffer.

commerce 1 état souffrir

Modesty is the ornament of the fair sex.

Modestie 2 ornement beau sexe 1

Let justice 2 and moderation 2 be the motive of our actions.

que soyent motif nos

True humility was a virtue unknown before the existence of
vrai humilité 2 vertu 2 inconnue avant
 the Christian religion 2.

Chretien

Hypocrisy is a tacit homage, that vice pays to virtue, in
hypocrisie tacite hommage 1 que vice 1 rendre vertu 2 en
 acknowledging that it is the most precious ornament 1 of human
reconnoître qu'elle le plus précieux humain
 nature.

Architecture, sculpture, and music are much studied by the
Architecture 2, sculpture 2, musique beaucoup étudié par
 Italians.

Italien

The Germans were famous for the arts of printing and
Allemand fameux pour imprimerie
 chemistry.

chimie 2

Gratitude will induce your brother to endure the affront.

reconnaissance 2 porter frere à souffrir affront 1

Gold and silver shine in the royal palace.

or argent briller dans palais 1

Poetry delights the ear and heart.

poesie 2 charmer oreille coeur 1

Nature 2 demands the necessary, reason will have the useful,
demande nécessaire 1 raison 2 veut utile
 self-love seeks the agreeable, passion 2 requires superfluity.
l'amour propre rechercher agréable exiger superflu

Faith and revelation 2 direct man in the fair path of truth.

foi 2 diriger sur voie 2 vérité 2

Man and woman are subject to the weaknesses that attend hu-
sujet foiblesse qui accompagner hu-
 man nature 2.

main

SECT. IV.

WHEN the name of an empire, nation, country, or province in Europe is preceded by these words *the Emperor of, the King of, the Prince of, the Governor of, the Government of, the Nature or Quality of, &c.* the word *of* is made by *de*, as *Le Roi de Suede*.

But we say, *Le Roi de la Grande Bretagne*, *Le Roi des Deux Siciles*; and the article is used before most of the countries not in Europe, as *L'Empereur de la Chine*.

The late King of Prussia was a warlike prince, and an excellent politician.
feu *Prusse* *guerrier*
politique

He defeated the united forces *2* of the Emperor of Germany
combiné *Empereur* *Allemagne*
and of the Elector of Saxony.

Electeur *Saxe*
The King of Great Britain's fleet dispersed the combined
flotte *2* *dispenser*
fleets of the Kings of France and Spain.

Espagne
The Princes of Asia will one day join their forces to drive the
Asie *leur* *pour chasser*
Europeans from India.
Européens *Indes*

The government of Ireland will be given to the Duke of D.,
gouvernement *1* *Irlande* *donner* *Duc*
the King's favourite.
favori

SECT. V.

RULE L.

mo, WHEN the names of countries *in Europe*, a few provinces in France excepted, are attended with a verb
of

EXERCISES ON

of motion, as *going to them*, *sending any thing to them*, or *living in them*, the preposition *en* is used immediately before them, *without* the article, as,

Nous irons en France, puis en Italie,
We shall go to France, then to Italy.

J'envérrai ces dentelles en Angleterre,
I shall send these laces to England.

2do, When we come from countries in *Europe*, or *send* any thing from them, the preposition *de* is used, as,

Je reviens d'Italie et d'Allemagne,
I return from Italy and Germany.

Il a envoyé ces marchandises de Pologne,
He has sent these goods from Poland.

RULE II.

1mo, *Going to countries not in Europe, sending any thing to them, or living in them*, the third case, or dative of the article, is used, *au*, *à la*, *à l'*, *aux*, as,

Nous irons au Canada, ensuite à la Virginie,
We shall go to Canada, afterwards to Virginia.

Nous envoyames ces marchandises à la Jamaïque,
We sent these goods to Jamaica.

2do, *Coming from countries not in Europe, or sending things from them*, the second case, or genitive of the article, is used, *du*, *de la*, *de l'*, *des*, as,

Nous venons du Bresil et du Mexique,
We come from Brazil and Mexico.

Nous envoyames ces sucre de la Martinique,
We sent these sugars from Martinico.

The

'The goods that the merchants sent from Italy last year were
que negociant passé année 2

of a bad quality.

mauvais qualité 2
 These laces that you bought in Flanders, and that you sent
ces dentelles acheter Flandre que
 to England, were afterwards sent to New York.

Angleterre ensuite envoyé Nouvelle York 2
 The Emperor will send these troops to Bohemia, Hungary,
faire passer ces troupe Boheme Hongrie
 and Transilvania.

Transsilvanie

When we lived in Normandy, we observed all the manu-
demeurer Normandie manu-
 factories.

factures 2

I shall go from Ireland to France, from France to Spain,
Irlande

from Spain to Italy, from Italy to Germany, and from Germa-
 ny to Holland.

From Bengal and China these ships will return to England,
Bengal 1 Chine 2 ces vaisseau revenir
 Sweden, and Holland.

Suede 2

We who live in North Carolina do not know these customs.
qui Septentrional Caroline 2 coutume

The United States in North America have sent these ambaf-
Uni Etat Amerique ces ambaf-
 fadors to the different Courts of Europe.

sadeur Cour 2

The bills that you sent from South Carolina came too late,
lettre 2 de change Meridional Caroline trop tard
 and your last bills, for want of acceptance, were protested.
faute d'acceptation protester

RULE III.

WITH verbs that denote *motion to* or *rest in towns*, or sending
 any thing to them, the French use *à* before them; and, with
 verbs denoting *coming from them*, *sending things from them*, *de* is
 used, as,

A a

Nous

Nous irons à Paris *we shall go to Paris.*

Il demeure à Londres *he lives in London.*

J'ai envoyé de Rome *I have sent from Rome.*

A few towns, such as *la Rochelle, la Havanne, &c.* always take the article with verbs of motion, &c.

Our letters will be sent to Amsterdam, and from Amsterdam
nos lettre 2

to Brussels, Antwerp, and Mechlin.

Bruxelles Anvers Malines

Your brother and I lived three years in Rome, two in Naples,
votre frere et moi demeurer
four in Venice, one at Vienna, and two months at Prague.

Venise Vienne

If you go to Rouen in Normandy, you will see the famous
Normandie *fameux*
bridge on the Seine 2, that rises and falls according to the tide.

pont 1 sur qui se hausse se baisse selon marée 2

We shall stop at St Lucar; thence we shall send our trunks
s'arrêter St Lucar d'où nos malle
to Seville, the capital of Andalusia in Spain.

capitale 2 Andalousie Espagne

When I was at Rochelle, I was told that the siege 1 of that
on m'a dit cette
town cost the King of France forty millions of livres; and it is
ville couter au Roi l'on
said the siege of Gibraltar in the last war cost Spain a million 1
dit guerre 2 à l'Espagne
of pounds Sterling.
livre

SECT. VI.

ON THE PARTITIVE ARTICLE.

See p. 33, 34.

THAT Article for the nominative and accusative, is
du used before a masculine noun.
de la used before a feminine noun.
de l' used in the singular number before a noun of any
 gender beginning with a vowel or *h* mute.
des used for the plural of nouns.

If a substantive, in the partitive sense, be preceded by an adjective, *de* is used for all genders and numbers, and never *du*, *de la*, *de l'*, *des*.

The dative of the partitive article is made by placing *à* before them, as,

à du
à de la
à de l'
à des

And *à de* when the adjective is placed before the noun.

By this article, we restrict or limit the extent of the signification of nouns from a *whole* to a *part*. In English, the word *some* is either expressed or understood. Thus, when I say, *du pain* bread, I mean, *some bread*; *de la viande* meat, or *some meat*; *de l'or* gold, or *some gold*; *des hommes* men, or *some men*; *de belles femmes* handsome women, or *some handsome women*. In French, the word *une partie* a part, may be understood, as *une partie du pain*, *une partie de la viande*, *une partie de l'or*, &c. as one might say in Latin, *aliquid auri, aliquid ex auro*.

In that shop you will find lawn, cambric, silks, and fine
Dans cette boutique 2 linon 1 batiste 2 soye beau
 laces.
dentelles 2

The

That country produces good wheat, delicious fruits 1, wine
ce pays 1 produire froment 1 delicioux vin 1
of an exquisite flavour, and olives.

exquis save 2.

They fought bloody battles, and obtained complete victories.
donner sanglant bataille 2 gagner complet victoire 2

All ages have produced great warriors, and all people have
tous les tems produire capitaine peuples
experienced revolutions.

éprouvé

If you export money to purchase foreign commodities, you
exporter argent pour acheter étranger denrées 2
will gain for the value of that money great profits 1, which will
gagner pour valeur 2 cet argent qui
return the money with interest.
ramener intérêt

I know men and women who would despise vain fineries,
connoître mépriser vain parure 2

which suit only coxcombs, and persons of a shallow
qui convenir seulement à fâts à personnes de peu de
brain.

cervelle

Immense buildings employed thousands of men, and gave to
édifice employer milliers

France pleasures and taste whereof the preceding ages had not
plaisir gout 1 dont précédent

even the idea.

même idée

Holland gets from France wines, brandies, vinegar, salt,
Holland tirer eaux de vie, vinaigre 1 sel 1
oil, and rich tapestries.

huile riche tapissie

The Prussians, with experience, steadiness, money, and good
Prussiens avec fermeté 2 richesses

engineers, could enslave Germany.

ingenieur pourroient asservir Allemagne

The senate 1 of Venice was not able, with mercenary soldiers,
senat Venise pouvoir mercenaire soldat

to defend Candia against the Turks, who had excellent gene-
defendre Candie contre Turc

rals, and formidable troops.

troupe

Hindostan has rich mines of gold and diamonds. It produces
Indostan diamant II
 corns, silk, and cotton 1. We see there also elephants, camels,
grains soyé 2 *on y voit* chameau
 dromedaries, elks, and buffaloes.
dromedaire élan buffle

SECT. VII.

1^{me}, **T**HE preposition *de* is used after these words of quantity, before any noun, of whatever gender or number it be, as *plus* more; *peu* little; *assez* enough; *tant* so much, so many; *trop* too much, too many; *moins* less; *point* no; *jamais* ever; *que* what? *rien* nothing; *quelque chose* something; *forte, espèce* kind; *genre* kind; *disette* scarcity; *guères* very little; *combien* how many, how much; *autant* as many, as much.

The same preposition *de* is placed after all words denoting cause, matter, quality, character, &c. If after any word of quantity the article *of the* is specified, you must then use *du, de la,* *de l'*, *des*, and not *de*.

EXAMPLES.

Vous avez plus d'esprit,
You have more wit.

Il a assez de provisions,
He has provisions enough.

Vous n'avez point d'argent,
You have no money.

2^{do}, *Bien* much, many; *la plupart* the most part; *la moitié* the half; *le tiers* the third; *le quart* the fourth, &c. are followed by *du, de la, de l'*, *des*; and if an adjective precedes the substantive, you use *de* only.

Vous

Vous avez perdu bien du tems,
You have lost much time.

Il a bien de mauvaises habitudes,
He has many bad habits.

gto. *De* is used after nouns of number, followed by a participle preterite, as,

Il y eut cent hommes de tués,
There were an hundred men killed.

410, *De* is used after these pronouns, *personne*, *quelqu'un*, *qui*, *tout ce qui*, *je ne sais quoi*, and the impersonal *il y a*.

Come, come, let us have more deeds and less chat.

He has not conduct enough for that dangerous expedition 2.
conduite *cette dangereux*

You give too much trouble to the merchants, as they have
trop peine marchand
no time to read the petition,
point tems de requête 2

If I see any thing remarkable in the Gazette 2 I shall write
quelque chose remarquable
to your father.

You have lost a deal of money and trouble in that undertaking.

Your friend has many amiable qualities.

bien aimable qualité

We drank a little of the wine that was in the bottle.

peu *vin* 1 *bouteille* 2
They have still a great deal of the money that they brought
encore beaucoup *aporter*
from America.

Was any of them killed when the house fell ?

y en eut-il quelqu'un tué quand maison 2 s'écroula

'There is in this discourse something, I do not know what,
il y a dans ce discours 1 je ne fais que

dur et disgréable.

dur et disgréable

How many ships shall we send to Barbadoes ?

vaisseau envoyer Barbade 2

As many men as women go to these meetings.

autant que ces assemblée

The Baltic Sea and the Mediterranean have no tides.

Mer 2 Baltique Méditerranée 2 point marée

What care and trouble 1 take in this occasion ?

que soin peine cette

Proper names and names of months, as *Janvier* January,
Fevrier February, *Mars* March, *Avril* April, *Mai* May, *Juin*
June, *Juillet* July, *Aout* August, *Septembre* September, *Octobre*
Octobre, *Novembre* November, *Decembre* December, are declined
with *de*, *à*.

Castor and Pollux are the Gods of the sailors, and Juno is
marin Junon

sister and wife of Jupiter.

sœur femme

Mercury is the messenger of Jupiter and the God of thieves.

Mercure messager

voleur

Francis the First of France was rival of Charles the Fifth

François Premier

Quint

King of Spain.

Espagne

The first of August the sale will be, or it will be the second
vente 2 se fera

of July next year.

l'année qui vient

In the month of April or June we shall go to Franckfort on
au mois

the Maine ; and in the month of January or February we shall

Mein 1

return to Antwerp.

venir Avers

CHAP. II.

SECT. I.

PRONOUNS PERSONAL.

RULE I.

1mo, *JE, tu, il, elle, nous, vous, ils, elles*, are the nominatives of verbs.

2do, Moi, I, me, toi thou, thee, lui he, him, elle she, her, nous we, us, vous you, eux (masc.) they, them, elles (fem.) they, them, are used, 1mo, With prepositions, 2do, Before qui, 3rdo, After c'est, 4tho, In answer to a question, as,

Pour moi, contre toi, par eux, avec lui.
For me, against thee, by them, with them.

Lui qui est si bon. Moi qui parle.
He who is so good. I who speak.

C'est lui, c'est elle, c'est moi.
It is he. It is she. It is I.

Soi is used for persons, things, and for the outward appearance of a person.

L'aimant attire le fer à soi,
The loadstone attracts iron to itself.

Cette femme est propre sur soi,
That woman is very neat in her dress.

3^eto, The said pronouns *moi, toi, lui, &c.* are also used, *1^{mo}*, When, to give more energy or perspicuity to the sentence, we add them to the nouns expressed. *2^{do}*, When we want to shew the part that different persons have taken in an action. *3^{tiis}*, After *que* used for *seulement* only ; as,

Les frères et le cousin ont secouru l'homme, eux l'ont relevé,
• et lui l'a pansé.

The brothers and the cousin have assisted the man, they raised him up, and he dressed him.

Je n'aime que lui, qu'elle, qu'eux,
I only love him, her, them.

Comment pourroit-il aimer ? lui qui est si insensible,
How could he be in love ? be who is so insensible.

We have written against him satires in the style 1 of Juvenal.
contre satyre

For them, they assert that all men have one, or many talents
assurer que tous les hommes plusieurs
useful to society.

utile société 2

He will do every thing for her and for me.
tout

It will be he who will relieve the poor sailors, and soldiers.
soulager soldat

Who brought the good news of the victory ? it was he, no,
nouvelle 2 victoire 2 c'étoit non
it was I.

How can I be your friend, I who have received so many af-
puis-je ami moi
fronts from you ?

The fathers and the servants committed the murder, they
domestique commettre meurtre 1
tied the man, and he knocked him on the head.
lier lui l'a assommé

At that meeting the King and the subjects were in such a
à cette assemblée 2 sujet dans une telle
situation 2 that they forgot one another, he that he was King,
s'oublièrent que
and they that they were his subjects.
ses

EXERCISES ON

RULE II.

THE following pronouns conjunctive, twelve in number, are governed by verbs, and are placed immediately before them:

Datives.

*Me to me, to myself
te to thee, to thyself
se to himself, to herself, to itself, to one's self, to themselves,
nous to us, to ourselves
vous to you, to yourself, to yourselves*

Accusatives.

*Me me myself
te thee, thyself
se himself, herself, itself, one's self, themselves
nous us, ourselves
vous, you, yourself, yourselves*

Datives.

| | |
|--|---------------------|
| <i>lui to him, to her</i> | <i>Accusatives.</i> |
| <i>leur, to them</i> | <i>le him, it</i> |
| <i>y, there, to it</i> | <i>la her, it</i> |
| <i>en of him, of her, of it, of them, any, some, &c.</i> | <i>les, them</i> |

Accusatives.

When *me, te, se, le, la*, precede a verb beginning with a vowel, the *e* is cut off from *me, te, se, le*, and the *a* from *la*, thus, *m^r, t^r, s^r, l^r.*

RULE III.

The above pronouns are placed after the verb when it is in the second person singular; first and second persons plural of the imperative mood without a negation; and, in this case, *moi* and *toi* are used, and not *me, te*.

Le Roi lui donnera un regiment,
The King will give him a regiment.

Tu la verras,
Thou shalt see her.

Ils me feront cet honneur,
They will do me that honour.

Tu l'as vu,
Thou hast seen him.

Le prince m'a avancé,
The prince has promoted me.

Ils lui écriront,
They will write to him.

Ils ne les flatteront pas,
They will not flatter them.

Ils lui ont écrit,
They have written to him or to her.

Je le vois à présent,
I see him at present.

Je leur vendrai,
I shall sell to them.

Il t'a écrit aujourdui,
He has written to thee to-day.

Je leur ai vendu,
I have sold to them.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Affirmatively.

Negatively.

Donnez-lui ce livre,
Give him this book.

Ne lui donnez pas ce livre,
Do not give to him this book.

Faites-moi ce plaisir,
Do me that kindness.

Ne me faites pas ce plaisir,
Don't do me that kindness.

Lève-toi plus matin,
Rise earlier.

Ne te lève pas si matin,
Do not rise so early.

Parlons leur,
Let us speak to them.

Ne leur parlons pas,
Let us not speak to them.

If the learner pays attention to the following rules, he can never be difficulted with regard to the position of the twelve conjunctive pronouns.

imo, If an affirmative proposition, the nominative is placed first, then the conjunctive pronoun, and, lastly, the verb, as,

Je

EXERCISES ON

1 2 3
Je leur ai donné ma bourse,
I have given to them my purse.

1 2 3
Le Colonel nous estimera,
The Colonel will esteem us.

2do, In a negative proposition, the nominative comes first, the *ne* the second, the conjunctive pronoun the third, the verb the fourth, the *pas* or *peint*, the fifth, as,

1 2 3 4 5
Le Colonel ne lui donnera pas les ordres,
The Colonel will not give him the orders.

1 2 3 4 5
Je ne vous ai point livré l'argent,
I have not delivered to you the money.

3rd, In questions affirmatively, the conjunctive pronoun is placed first, then the verb, and lastly the pronoun personal ; and, if the nominative of the question is a noun or a pronoun indeterminate, and in the third person, the sentence begins with that noun or pronoun, using besides these personal pronouns, *il*, *elle*, *ils*, *elles*.

1 2 3
Vous donnera-t-il la plume ?
Will he give you the pen ?

1 2 3
Lui a-t-il écrit ?
Has he written to him or her ?

1 2 3
L'univerſité m'honorera-t-elle ?
Will the university honour me ?

1 2 3
Lui fait-on ce que vous faites ?
Does any body do to him what you do ?

Quelqu'un

1 2 3
Quelqu'un m'estimera-t-il?
Will any body esteem me?

4^{to}, In questions negatively, the sentence proceeds in this order: 1^{mo}, *Ne*; 2^{dō}, The conjunctive pronouns; 3^{tio}, The verb; 4^{to}, The pronoun personal; 5^{to}, The *pas* or *point*: As,

1 2 3 4 5
Ne lui écrirez vous pas?
Will you not write to him?

Ne m'avez-vous pas parlé?
Have you not spoken to me?

If the verb has a noun or pronoun indeterminate, as is said in No. 3^{tio}, the sentence begins with that noun or pronoun; as,

Le cavalier ne vous a-t-il pas désarmé?
Did not the trooper disarm you?

We shall set down a few more examples on the foregoing rules, that the learner may have them all in one view.

Affirmatively.

1 2 3
Je lui parlerai,
I shall speak to her.

1 2 3 4
Je lui ai parlé,
I have spoken to him or to her.

Negatively.

1 2 3 4
Je ne lui parlerai pas or point,
I shall not speak to him.

1 2 3 4 5
Je ne lui ai pas parlé,
I have not spoken to him or to her.

Questions Affirmatively.

1 2 3
Lui parlerai-je?
Shall I speak to him?

Questions Negatively.

1 2 3 4 5
Ne lui parlerai-je pas?
Shall I not speak to him?

Questions

EXERCISES ON

Questions Affirmatively.

1 2 3

Leur avez-vous parlé?
Have you spoken to them?*Questions Negatively.*

2 2 3 4 5

Ne leur avez-vous pas parlé?
Have you not spoken to them?

1 2 3 4

L'homme vous donnera-t-il?
Will the man give to you?

1 2 3 4 5

L'homme ne vous donnera-t-il pas?
Will not the man give to you?

1 2 3 4

Quelqu'un me donnera-t-il?
Will any one give me?

1 2 3 4 5

Quelqu'un ne me donnera-t-il pas?
Will not some one give me?

1 2 3 4

Le Roi vous a-t-il donné?
Has the King given to you?

1 2 3 4 5

Le Roi ne vous a-t-il pas donné?
Has not the King given to you?

He speaks to me. They spoke to thee. We receive thee. He instructs me. I love myself. I shall take to myself. Thou seest thyself. They took to themselves. She saw herself. She wrote to us. They instructed us. We hold ourselves. You held to us. We took to ourselves. We have fold to you. They will send you. You will love yourself. You were diverting yourselves. You fold him, or it. They have known him. You believed her. I shall put her. He will not sell them. Shall I put them? Shall I not put them? He has written to him. He has not written to her. Has he not written to them? Has the general spoken to them? Has not the general spoken to them? I shall have some. Shall I have some? We were speaking of it? Were we speaking of it? We sent there. We shall not send there. Have we sent there? Have we not sent there? Speak to us. Speak to them. Love me. Do not speak to us. Speak to her. Do not speak to her.

You do me a great deal of honour, and I think that I am
faire *bien* *honneur* *penser que*
 very much indebted to you.
très *redevable*

The Queen has done me the honour to write to me, and to
Réine *de*
 acquaint me that she will interest herself for me.
informer *que* *s'intéresser* *pour moi*

I tell thee again that thou displeaseſt me exceedingly; there-
 dire encore deplaire fort c'eſt
 fore thou mayeſt expect that I will not ſee thee. I have given
 pourquoи pouvoir
 thee many tokens of my politeness, but thou haſt forgotten thy-
 plusieurs témoignages ma politesse 2 s'oublier
 ſelf.

The bookseller ſent these books to us yesterdaу, but we ſhall
 libraire ces livre hier
 not buy them. No, no, we ſhall ſend them back.
 acheter non, non renvoyer

Shall I have the pleasure to ſee you to-day at my house?
 plaisir 1 de aujourd'hui chez moi

We ſhould have done ourelfes that honour, if the Duke had
 cet Duc

not written a card to us, beggiпg us to dine with him.
 billet 1 prier de dîner avec lui

Allow me to have the honour of drinking to you, and of
 permettre de de ſaluer de
 congratulating you. (Turn as if the English was to ſalute you,
 feliciter
 and to congratulate you)

The bills of exchange that we gave to him were drawn by
 lettre de change que tiré par
 the first bankers of Paris on Mefſieurs Drummond, &c.

premier banquier ſur

The manufacturer has ſent to them cottons of the best quality,
 fabricant remettre qualité 2
 but they would not keep them, as they could not ſell them.
 vouloir garder pouvoir debiter

We are ſpeaking of them, and you have been ſpeaking of
 them this morning also.

ce matin aussi

Have you told her that the milliners have ſent to her by the
 dire lui fesueſes de mode
 carrier the ruffles, the laces, and the aprons.

meſſager engageantes dentelles tablier

They would have conveyed there the letters, and they would
 faire tenir lettre

have brought back the anſwer of them, if you had ſaid bring
 reporter reponſe 2 apporter
 us an anſwer, do it.

reponſe 2 faites

EXERCISES ON

Play to us the queen of diamonds, and then the knave of
jouer dame carreau puis valet

spades, or else the ace of hearts, or king of clubs.

pique ou bien as coeur treffle

Do not write to them concerning these goods.

touchant ces marchandises

Let us send word to them that you will be soon with them,
mander que eux

Shall we not help you in that case?

aider ce cas

Believe me, you shall find me your friend.
trouver

RULE IV.

When two Imperatives are joined with *et* and, *ou* or, the last Imperative takes the conjunctive pronouns before it; as *aimez le et le corrigez*, love him and correct him; *obéissez moi ou me désobéissez*, obey me or disobey me. Before the Imperative of the last example, *me* is used, and not *moi*, because it is placed before the verb.

Let us undress them, and let us put them to bed.

déshabiller mettre au lit

Punish him, or don't punish him, I care not.

punir se soucier

Lend them the money, and send them (away) content.

prêter leur argent renvoyer contents

Speak to her, and represent the case to her.

These expressions are made by *voici* and *voilà* preceded by
me, te, le, la, les, nous, vous.

Here I am, *me voici*

Ne me voici pas?

Here thou art, *te voici*

Am I not here?

Here he is, *le voici*

Ne te voici pas?

Here she is, *la voici*

Art thou not here?

Here it is, *le or la voici*

Ne le voici pas?

Here we are, *nous voici*

Is he not here?

Here you are, *vous voici*

Ne la voici pas?

Here they are, *les voici*

Is she not here?

There

There I am; *me voilà*
 There thou art, *te voilà*
 There he is, *le voilà*
 There she is, *la voilà*
 There it is, *le or la voilà*
 There we are, *nous voilà*
 There you are, *vous voilà*
 There they are, *les voilà*

Negatively *Ne me voilà pas?* Am I not there?
Ne te voilà pas? Art thou not there?
Ne le voilà-t-il pas?
 Is not that he or it?
Ne la voilà-t-elle pas?
 Is not that she or it?
 Quest. *Ne les voilà t-ils pas?*
 Is not that they?

Here I am ready to obey you, command me.

pret à

Here she is, she will tell them the truth,

vérité

There they are, who are coming. What! shall I scold them?

venir quoi gronder

You have lost the needle. Here it is; no, there it is. Is
aiguille à

not that it?

Here we are, always at your service.

toujours à

There you are, sirrah! What can you say to excuse him!

maraud que pouvoir pour

RULE. V.

These pronouns, *à moi* to me, *à toi* to thee, *à soi* to one's self, *à nous* to us, *à vous* to you, *à lui* to him, *à elle* to her, *à eux* to them, *masc.* *à elles* to them, *fec.* are used with *être* in the sense of belonging; and with *aller*, *boire*, *courir*, *accourir*, *venir*, *penser*, *songer*, *vifer*, to aim, relating to a person, and all reflected verbs; and they are placed after the verb; as,

- *Ce cheval est à lui*, this horse is his
Nous pensons à vous, we think on you
Ils viennent à nous, they come to us
Nous nous addresserons à eux, we shall apply to them.

These horses belonged to you formerly, now they belong to
ces cheval être autrefois à présent
 him, and they will soon belong to us.

bientôt

C c

We

We shall go to them at ten o'clock, and they will come to
à dix heures
 us to-morrow.

demain

Are you thinking on me, on her, on him, on them ?
à moi à

These preachers are much esteemed ; every body flocks to
ces prédicateur beaucoup estimé tout le monde accourir
 them.

We shall trust you, because you served us well when we
se fier

trusted you the last time.

dernier fois 2

He is drinking to him, to her, to you, and to us.

He aims at him, at her, at you, and at them.

viser

RULE VI.

If *que* whom, that, which, answering to the relatives of the Latin, *quem, quam, quod, quos, quas, quae, quel, quelle, quels, quelles*, what, *le* him, it, *la* her, it, *l'* him, her, it, *les* them, *me* me, *te* thee, *se* himself, herself, &c. *nous* us, *vous* you, in the fourth case, or accusative—precede the compound tenses, the participle preterite must be of the same gender and number as these pronouns ; as,

La plume *que* j'ai taillée, *the pen that I have made.*

Quels livres avez-vous achetés, *what books have you bought ?*

Il *les* a aimés

He has loved them. Masc.

Il *les* a aimées

He has loved them. Fem.

If *vous*, you, means only one person, the participle preterite is put in the singular number ; but, if *vous* relates to many, it is put in the plural.

The fables 2 that we have learned were very long and
appris
 tedious.
ennuyeux

What

What books have you read since you have been at the French
quel livre 1 lu depuis que François
 school.

école 2

They have not found her in the situation 2 the most desirable.
trouvé dans le plus souhaitable

They have praised her, they have rewarded her, besides they
loué récompensé de plus
 have enriched her.
enrichi

The King has honoured us with his presence 2, and has
honoré de sa
 given to us the commission 2.
donné

Have you seen them to-day? Have you told them that you
aujourd'hui dit leur que
 are going to send the bills of loading to the broker?
connoissement courtier

S E C T. II.

AS the verb is attended often with two or more of the conjunctive pronouns, we shall give rules as to their position or arrangement; it always being understood that they are placed with the verb, as in Rules II. III. of the foregoing Section.

RULE I.

Le him, it, la her, it, les them, are placed after these datives; me to me, te to thee, se to himself, to herself, to itself, to one's self, to themselves, nous to us, vous to you, and before lui to him, to her, leur to them.

Position.

Position.

me le, him, it to me.
me la, her, it to me.
me les, them to me.
te le, him, it to thee.
te la, her, it to thee.
te les, them to thee.

nous le, him, it to us.
nous la, her, it to us.
nous les, them to us.
vous le, him, it to you.
vous la, her, it to you.
vous les, them to you.

se le, him, or it to himself, to herself, to itself, &c.
se la, her, or it to himself, &c.
se les, them to himself, &c.

le lui, him, it to him, to her.
la lui, her, it to him, to her.
les lui, them to him, to her.

le leur, him, it to them.
la leur, her, it to them.
les leur, them to them.

Examples.

Il me le donne,
He gives him to me.
Elle se le prend,
She takes him to herself.
Je la lui ai donnée,
I have given her to him, to her.

Ils me les donneront,
They will give them to me.
Ils te l'écriront,
They will write it to thee.
Il vous les auroit donné,
He would have given them to you.

When the verb is in the second person of the imperative mood, without *pas* or *point*, you place *le*, *la*, *les*, before *moi* and *nous*, and after the verb ; as, *donnez-le moi*, give him, or it to me ; *donnez-la moi*, give her, or it to me ; *donnez les moi*, give them to me ; *faites-le nous*, do it to us ; *envoyez-la nous*, send thou her, it to us ; *envoyez-les nous*, send them to us.

But, if the second persons and first persons plural of the imperative mood be attended with the negatives *ne pas*, or *point*, the conjunctive pronouns are placed before the verb ; as,

Ne me le donnez pas,
Do not give him to me.

Ne nous les donnez pas,
Do not give them to us.

RULE

RULE II.

As *en* and *y* have something intricate and perplexing in their various significations, a few observations on them will be very proper.

En denotes the origin from which some person, some thing, or some action, takes its rise; and may have for its antecedent a nominative, an accusative, a genitive, or ablative, an infinitive mood with the preposition *de*, or a whole sentence.

Examples.—*1mo*, With the nominative; then it is Englished by *one*, as, *L'humilité est-elle une vertu?* *Oui c'en est une grande.* Is humility a great virtue? Yes, it is a great one.—*2do*, With an accusative; then it is translated by *some*, in an affirmation, and *any* in an interrogation, and *none* in a negation; as, *Quand j'ai du vin, j'en bois,* When I have wine, I drink some. *En avez-vous?* Have you any? *Pour des amis, je n'en ai point,* For friends, I have none.—*3to*, With numerical adjectives, *en* is expressed in French, but not in English; as, *Vous avez quatre frères, et moi je n'en ai point,* You have four brothers, and I have none.

When *en* relates to a genitive or ablative case, it is translated by the preposition *of*, *from*, *with*, *for*, and a pronoun; *Parlez-vous du Roi?* *Oui, j'en parle.* Are you speaking of the King? Yes, I am speaking of him. *Venez-vous de l'opéra?* *Oui, j'en viens.* Do you come from the opera? Yes, I come from it. *Vous avez acheté cela.* *Qu'en ferez-vous?* You have bought that. What will you do with it? *Combien en avez vous?* How many have you?

En relates to an infinitive mood with the preposition *de*; as, *Il craint de se tromper, il en a peur.* He dreads being deceived, he fears it.—It relates to a whole sentence; as, *Le succès de cette affaire est douteux ; j'en suis sûr.* The success of that affair is dubious; I am sure it is.—Finally, *en* is used with neuter verbs, though frequently not translated into English; as, *Allons nous en,* Let us go. *Je m'en vais partir,* I am going to set out.

Y denotes the end to which something tends. It is always governed by a verb and never by a preposition. It relates to persons, things, places, and sometimes to a whole sentence, as, *Je connais cet homme.* *Je ne m'y fie pas.* I know that man. I put no trust in him. *Vous pensez à vos affaires.* *Oui, j'y pense.* You

EXERCISES ON

You are thinking on your affairs. Yes, I am thinking on them. *Je vais à Paris. J'y vais aussi.* I am going to Paris. I am going thither also. *Quoique j'aie pris une peine extrême, Je n'y ai cependant pas réussi.* Though I have been at very great pains, I have not however succeeded.

Position of en and y.

y and *en* are placed after all the conjunctive pronouns; and, when *y* and *en* meet together, *y* is placed before *en*, as,

Je ne vous y en ferai pas tenir,
I shall not convey any to you thither.

In the second persons of the imperative mood, without *pas* or *point*, you place *y* and *en* before *moi* and *toi*, and *y* after *nous*, as,

Menez y moi,
Carry me there.

Envoyez nous y,
Send us there.

We say, *Donnez m'en*, Give me some.
Donné-t-en, Give to thyself some.

In the like cases, as is said before, the conjunctive pronouns are placed before the verb, when the verb is attended with the negatives *ne*, *pas*, or *point*; as,

Ne m'y menez pas,
Do not take me there.
Ne m'en donnez pas,
Do not give me any.

Ne nous y envoyez pas,
Do not send us there.
Ne nous y donnez pas,
Do not give us there.

You sold him to me. He will sell her to me. I have sold him to thee. Thou soldest them to me. I shall give him to hem. I have not sold her to thee. Shall we sell them to thee? He will not take him to himself. He sent him to us. Will he ive her to us? I have not sent him to you. Will you send im to us? He would not have sent him to you. I shall give im to her. He will not give her to him. You had procured

it to them. I gave them to him. I shall give it to them. We gave them to them. Shall we write it to him? Write it to me. Do not write it to us.

We pray you to write the invoices, and to send them to us
prier de facture de
as we are to send them to him without delay.
comme à vous sans délai

If the general sends us good news, we shall tell them to you
nouvelle 2 dire

Examine the goods, and if they are of a good quality, you
examiner marchandises 2 qualité 2
may send them to me.

pouvoir
Shew it to me, if you give it to me, I shall return it to you
montrer rendre
very soon.

bientôt
As he did not choose to give them to us, he took them to
comme vouloir
himself.

I designed her for you; but since you will not marry her, I
destiner vous vouloir épouser
tell it you again, you shall repent it.
dire encore se repenir en

Can we refuse it to him? No, we cannot refuse it to him.
pouvoir refuser

If you have no strawberries at your village, write me, and I
fraise à votre
shall send you some there.

The soldiers were oppressed by the tyranny of the officers.
soldat opprimé tirannie 2
they asked our protection 2, we granted it to them, and the
demandeur accorder
General thanked us for it.

remercier en
For your punishment prepare yourself for it.
punition y

I could not have carried any to them there.
je ne pouvois pas porter

We shall promise it to her, if she tells you, that she will shew
promettre montrer
it to them.

Would

Would you oblige me to sell them to you there at prime
voudriez *à prix*
cost ?

Pachat

If you go to the playhouse, carry us there. No, do not car-
comédie 2 *mener*
y us there.

Give thyself the trouble of it, since thou art in the corner of
peine 2 *en* *puisque* *coin* 1
he room.

Here are delicious fruits, give us some, as a favour, give
voici *delicat fruit* 2 *de grace*
hem some too.

aussi

Will you have any? No, I thank you. I do not choose any.
voulez-vous *vouloir*

Thou hast come from the savage nations of North America,
ès *sauvage contrée Septentrional Amérique*
transport thyself there, and do not torment me.

transporter *tortmenter*

Have you been in the garden? I am come from it, and I
jardin 1 *je viens en*
hall return to it.

y

I am speaking of it, and you do not hear me.
en *écouter*

We had four men who deserted, and you had only two. We
ne que
should have had a great many more, if the grenadiers had not
been posted there.

Is courage 1, without conduct, a virtue? No, it is no real one.
le courage *sans conduite, est-il vertu* 2 *réel*

She imagines that the men will deceive her; at least she
s'imaginer *tromper* *avoir*
fears it.

peur en

Are you thinking on death? Yes I am always thinking on it.
pensez à mort 2 *y*

As for relations, I have many, but as for friends, I have none.
pour parents

RULE III.

mo, Le, in the sense of *so*, is declinable when it relates to a noun substantive, and indeclinable when it relates to an adjective or participle preterite; as,

Etes-vous la fille de ce monsieur ? Oui, je la suis.
Are you that gentleman's daughter ? Yes, I am.

Vous êtes fier, et moi je ne le suis pas.
You are proud, and I am not so.

Elle est indisposée, et nous ne le sommes pas.
She is indisposed, and we are not so.

2do, All the conjunctive pronouns are repeated before their verbs, except when the second verb is of the same meaning and compounded of the first, or denotes only the repetition of the action, as,

Je vous prie et vous conjure.
I desire and intreat you.

Vous ne faites que nous dire et redire la même chose.
You do nothing but tell us the same thing over again.

3io, The personal pronouns *je, tu, il, elle, nous, vous, ils, elles*, are repeated before each verb in the sentence. *1mo*, When the verbs are in different tenses, *2do*, When we pass from the affirmative to the negative, and from the negative to the affirmative.

She is displeased with her situation, and I am so too.
mécontent de sa aussi
 Why are you so? You ought not to be so. It is I who ought
pourquoi devoir c'est moi
 to be so, for I am ruined. Are you so? If you are so, you
car ruiné
 will be on foot again very soon, for you have rich friends.
Si remettre sur pied bientôt car amis
Are

EXERCISES ON

Are you the Duke of Praßlin's sister? Yes I am, and I glory
Duc *sœur* *faire*
 to be so.
gloire de

Was that the opinion of the Doctors? No, it was not, and it
Etoit-ce *Medecin* *ce* *ce*
 will not be so.

The general says and declares that he will not surrender the
rendre
 town without the honours of war.

place 2 *guerre*
 I tell you, and have told you, that I was determined to de-
déterminé de de-
 fend the citadel after the reduction of the town.

fendre *citadelle* 2 *réddition* 2 *ville* 2
 You say that you believe it, and dare not confess it. Confess
que *fer* *avouer*
 it, and give evidence to the truth.
rendre témoignage.

SECT. I.

ON QUESTIONS.

QUESTIONS are formed by placing the pronouns personal *je*, *tu*, *il*, *elle*, *on*, *nous*, *vous*, *ils*, *elles*, after the verb in the simple tenses, and between the auxiliary verbs *avoir* or *être* and the participle preterite in the compound tenses, with an hyphen (-) as, *vendrai je?* shall I sell? *vendras-tu?* wilt thou sell? *vendra-t-il?* will he sell? *ai-je vendu?* have I sold? *a-t-il vendu?* has he sold? When the third person ends with a vowel, you put the letter *t* for found's sake between two hyphens, thus, *a-t-elle?* has she? *parle-t-il?* does he speak?

If the nominative of an interrogative sentence be a noun substantive of the third person, the sentence begins with that noun, using besides *il*, *elle*, *ils*, *elles*; as, *Les hommes viendront-ils?* Will the

the men come? *La Reine est-elle belle?* Is the Queen pretty? *Le Roi se souviendra-t-il de vos folies?* Will the King remember your follies? *Les malades se sent-ils mieux portés aujourd'hui?* Have the patients been in better health to-day? *Madame s'est-elle mal-portée ce matin?* Has my lady been ill this morning?

There is another way of asking a question, used much in French, viz. *Est-ce que?* Is it that? *N'est-ce pas que?* Is it not that; which precedes the verb in this manner, *Est-ce que je parle?* *Est-ce que tu parles?* *Est-ce qu'il parle,* &c. *N'est-ce pas que je parle?* *N'est-ce pas que je parle,* &c. But the learner should not use this last manner of interrogating till he is pretty well acquainted with the French authors, as it may lead him into mistakes; for it is used often to denote *fear* or *surprise* that such a thing should happen, and it is employed likewise to induce the person to whom we speak, not to believe what is said. For instance, when I say, *Me punira-t-il?* Will he punish me? I want to know whether he will punish me or not. But, if I say, *Est-ce qu'il me punira?* I express my *surprise* and *fear* that he will punish me. *Est-ce que je bois,* Do I drink? meaning, I don't drink; or English it thus, Who drinks? Not I. Again, in this way, *Est-ce qu'il a de l'esprit?* Has he wit? meaning, he has no wit.

Est-ce without *que* denotes a real question concerning a thing of which one is ignorant and that he wants to know; as *Est-ce aujourd'hui le dix du mois?* Is this the 10th of the month? But *Est-ce que c'est le dix du mois?* One expresses wonder that this is the 10th of the month.

N'est-ce pas may be at the beginning of a sentence with *que*, or at the end without *que*, as, *N'est-ce pas qu'il tonne?* It thunders, *n'est-ce pas?* It thunders, does it not? *N'est-ce pas qu'il a écrit?* He has written, *n'est-ce pas?* He has written, has he not.

In short, real questions to be informed of matters we do not know, must be made by putting the *je*, *tu*, *il*, *elle*, &c. after the persons of the tenses of the verb; as, *Ne tonne-t-il pas?* Does it not thunder? *N'a-t-il pas trouvé des trésors?* Has he not found treasures?

Have the admirals and sailors enriched themselves by the
matebt s'enrichir *par*
 different captures in the West Indies?
prise 2 aux Occidental Indes 2 Does

Does not the moderation τ of happy persons proceed com-
monly from the calmness that good fortune τ gives to their
naturement *calme* τ *que* *leur*
temper ? *humeur*

Has not Jesus Christ proved that he is the Messiah, in veri-
fying rather his doctrine and his mission τ by his miracles, than
fier *plutôt sa* *par ses* *que*
by the Scripture and by the prophecies?

Ecriture *prophétie*

In the sea fights have we not behaved as people of courage
naval bataille τ *se comporter en gens de*
and conduct ? *conduite*

Have you been in good health to-day? No, I have not been
se porter bien

well; I ate too much fruit last night.

trop *hier au soir*

Are not the poor obliged to counterfeit the blind and the
pauvres *à contrefaire* *aveugles*
lame, to the end that these apparent evils may touch us, and
estropiés *afin que ces* *apparent mal* *toucher*
soften our hardness?

amollir notre dureté

Would they not have found themselves in danger of yielding
se trouver en de succomber
to the temptation?

tentation τ .

Has she any judgment? Would you take her?
est ce que *jugement* τ

Have not I been ill since my return from the Continent?
se porter mal depuis retour τ

Do I game? No, I do not game.
est-ce que jouer non

Do you want to learn to dance at your age?
est-ce que vouloir apprendre à danser à

Will these united powers dispute the honour of the flag with
ces uni puissance τ *pavillon* τ
Great Britain?
Brétagne τ

Has

Has the French frigate retaken the privateer the Duke of
François frégate 2 repris armateur Duc de
 Chartres, and has she carried her to Brest?

In all governments should not all the subjects have the same
devoir tous sujets
 rights and privileges?
droit

Has not the National Assembly of France given a noble
Assemblée
 example of generous sentiments, in enacting that Christians of
exemple 1 décréter Chrétien
 all denominations 2 in France are admissible to civil and mili-
mili-
 tary employments?
taire emploi

Why do not the potentates of Europe hold forth that glo-
potentat tendre cette
 rious palm of freedom to all their subjects without distinction?
palme 2 liberté leurs sans

These expressions, by way of question, and their answers, are
 made in French in this way:

- | | |
|--|--|
| Q. Is this or that? <i>Est-ce là?</i> | Is not this or that? <i>N'est-ce pas là?</i> |
| R. It is. <i>Ce l'est.</i> | It is not. <i>Ce ne l'est pas.</i> |
| Q. Are these? <i>Sont-ce là?</i> | Are not these? <i>Ne sont-ce pas là?</i> |
| R. They are. <i>Ce les sont.</i> | They are not. <i>Ce ne les sont pas.</i> |
| Q. Was it? <i>Etoit-ce là?</i> | Was it not? <i>N'étoit-ce pas là?</i> |
| R. It was not. <i>Ce ne l'étoit pas.</i> | It was not. <i>Ce ne l'étoit pas.</i> |

But, when we speak of persons, the answer is made by *c'est lui*, it is he; *c'est elle*, it is she; *ce sont eux*, it is they (masc.); *ce sont elles* (fem.); *ce n'est pas lui*, it is not he; *ce n'est pas elle*, it is not she; *ce ne sont pas eux*, *elles*, it is not they. If the word *it*, in the answer, relates to a substantive of the feminine gender, it must be made by *la*; and consequently is declinable, as is said before, when speaking of *le* in the sense of *so*.

Is that your house? Yes, it is,
maison Oui

EXERCISES ON

Is not that your ring ? Yes, It is.
bague

Is not that your pen ? No, it is not. Was that your opinion ²?
No it was not, and it shall not be so. Are these your bibles ?
No they are not. Is that your aunt ? No, it is not she. Are

tante
not these your sisters ? Yes, it is they. No, it is not they, I am
mistaken. Is not that your sister ? No, it is not she. Were not
se tromper *sœur*
these your brothers ? No, Sir.

Are these your thoughts ? No, they are not, and they shall
pensée
never be so. Is not that your snuff-box ? No, it is not.
tabatière ²

C H A P. III.

PRONOUNS POSSESSIVE.

| | Sing. Num. | | Plur. Num. |
|-------|------------|--|--------------------------|
| Masc. | Fem. | | for all genders. |
| mon | ma | | <i>mes my</i> |
| ton | ta | | <i>tes thy</i> |
| son | sa | | <i>ses his, her, its</i> |

| M. & Fem. | M. & Fem. |
|-----------|--------------------|
| notre | nos <i>our</i> |
| votre | vos <i>your</i> |
| leur | leurs <i>their</i> |

RULE I.

THESE pronouns are adjectives, and agree with the substantive, with which they are placed, in gender and number. They are declined with *de* and *à* in both numbers and genders.

Before a word beginning with a vowel of the feminine gender, the French use *mon*, *ton*, *son*, for sound's sake, and the same pronouns are repeated before each substantive in the sentence, as,

Mon père et ma mère,
My father and mother.

Son livre est perdu,
His or her book is lost.

Son Altesse Royale est estimée,
His or her Royal Highness is esteemed.

Nous envions sa haute élévation,
We envy his high preferment.

In some cases, *son*, *sa*, *ses*, *leur*, and *leurs*, cannot be employed, especially before inanimate things, instead of which *en* is used. It would be a fault to say, *J'ai bien examiné cette maladie, je connois parfaitement son origine et ses effets*, I have examined thoroughly that disease, I know perfectly its origin and effects; you must say, *J'en connois l'origine et les effets.*

Not only his father and mother, but all his friends forsook
Non seulement *ami abandonner*
him.

Her uncle, aunt, and family blamed her for her impertinent
oncle, tante, famille à de
affection 2.

His Majesty will reward his officers according to their good
Majesté à officiers selon
conduct. *
conduite à Your

Your elegant discourses and your judicious reflections are
discours 1 judicieux reflexion 2
 worthy of an orator and a philosopher.

digne orateur philosophe

My unworthy action 2 will make me be despised by all my
indigne me fera mépriser de
 family.

famille 2

The senators, always firm in their principles, were deaf to
senateur ferme principes sourd
 our complaint.

plainte

We always admired his eloquence 2, candour, and probity.
admirer candeur 2 probité 2

My enemies at last are undeceived by our relations.

ennemi à la fin détrompé parents

Here is the end of my labours and of her industry.

voici fin 2 travail industrie 2

We shall send to your father, brothers, and sisters, these
ces

pamphlets,

brochure

You may drink, without danger, that water, I know its
pouvoir cette eau 2 en
 qualities.

qualités

Look at that tree, its fruit 1 is not good.

regarder cet arbre 1

There is excellent wine; if you knew its qualities, you would
voilà vin 1

drink more of it.

Have you seen our country house? Its situation 2 is agreeable,
maison de campagne

and its rooms are spacious.

chambre 2 spacieux

RULE II.

Le mien, la mienne, les miens, les miennes, mine; le tien, la tienne, les tiens, les tiennes, thine; le sien, la sienne, les siens, les siennes,

siennes, his, her, its; le nôtre, la nôtre, les nôtres, ours; le vôtre, la vôtre, les vôtres, yours; le leur, la leur, les leurs, theirs; are declined with the masculine and feminine articles.

They are never placed with the substantive, but agree in gender and number with the nouns to which they have a reference; as,

Votre vertu est grande, et la leur aussi,
Your virtue is great, and theirs also.

You have lost your grammar, and I have lost mine.

perdre grammaire 2

The verses that thou rehearrest are mine; but, in rehearsing
vers répéter en

them, they become thine.

Their window is opposite to ours, yours, and hers.

fenêtre 2 vis à vis de

In quitting your bad habits, have you adopted theirs which
quitter habitude 2 adopté qui sont
are good?

His Excellency has given to the King our petition and theirs.

Excellence 2 requête 2

The essential point of her petition, mine, his, and yours, was
essentiel point 1

to recover the losses,

de récupérer perte

To form a perfect society, one ought to take away thine, his,
pour former parfait société 2 il faudroit ôter
your, their, and mine, and all private interest.

particulier intérêt 1

Le mien, le tien, le sien, le vôtre, le notre, le leur, cannot relate
to substantives of things, as *âme, bel esprit, plume, épée, &c.*
when these substantives are placed for the person. Speaking of
a good author, the French say, *Il n'y a point de meilleure plume*
que lui, there is no better author than he. In the same way,
speaking of one who fences well, *Il n'y a pas de meilleure épée que*
lui, no person fences better than he.

RULE III.

1^{mo}, These English pronouns, *my, thy, his, her, our, your, their*, going before a member of the body, and governed by a verb, are rendered by the articles *le, la, l', les*, as *le soldat a perdu le bras droit*, the soldier has lost his right arm; *je me suis lavé les pieds*, I have washed my feet; instead of saying, *son bras* and *mes pieds*.

2^{do}, *To have a sore*, is made by *avoir mal*; *to be wounded or hurt*, is *être blessé*, and the part of the body so affected is preceded by *au, à la, à l', aux*; as, *j'ai mal au doigt*, I have a sore finger; *il est blessé au pied*, his foot is wounded or hurt.

3^{to}, The English expressions, *to be cold*, *to be hot*, *warm*, are turned into French by *avoir froid* to have cold, *avoir chaud* to have heat, and the part of the body affected with heat or cold, is preceded by *au, à la, à l', aux*; as *il a froid aux pieds*, his feet are cold; *j'ai chaud aux pieds*, my feet are hot.

4^{to}, *Mine, thine, his, hers, ours, yours, theirs*, preceded by *of*, are made by *un de mes, tes, ses, nos, vos, leurs*; as, a friend of mine, *un de mes amis*, &c.

5^{to}, When the verb *to be* is attended with *mine, thine, his, hers, ours, yours, theirs*, you make use of *à moi, à toi, à lui, à elle, à eux, à elles*; as *ce livre est à moi, à toi, à lui, &c.* this book is mine, thine, &c.

In the bloody attack our general lost his arm.

Dans sanglant attaque 2 bras 1

When he rises he will wash his hands and face.

se lever se laver main visage 1

The porter has had his back broken by the fall.

crocheteur dos 1 cassé chute 2

In their indignation they gnashed their teeth.

grincer dent

You have a sore leg, do you say? No, but I have a sore foot.

jambe 2 non pied 1

Are you not glad to hear that his aunt has got a sore tongue?

bien aise de que tante langue 2

Your hands are always cold in summer and winter.

main 2 en hiver

Our

Our fingers were so cold to-day that we could not write the
aujourd'hui pouvoir
 letters.

lettre

My hands are hot, feel them.
tâter

The man put a bridle in the mouth of the horse, mounted
bride 2 à bouche 2
 on his back, and pursued the robber.

sur dos 1 voleur

I cannot wear these worsted stockings, for my legs are too
je ne saurois porter bas de laine car jambe trop
 warm already.

chaud déjà

If he be guilty of treason, they will cut off his head. (Turn
coupable leze majesté couper tête 2
 this sentence as if the English was, they to him will cut off the
 head.)

You have cut my finger with your pen-knife.
couper doigt 1 avec canif 1

He swears that if he catches him, he will twist his neck.
jurer attraper tordre cou 1

We had the honour of being presented to his Majesty, and
d'être présenté Majesté 2

we kissed his hand.

baiser

A friend of yours has told me lately that you was going to
tantôt que
 Italy. A friend of mine do you say! well! he is mistaken.
Italie eh bien!

The library you say is the Duke's. Is it the Duke's? I
bibliothèque 2 Duc
 thought it was the King's, it is so fine.
croire si beau

CHAP. IV.

PRONOUNS RELATIVE.

RULE I.

Qui,

WHOMO, that, which, is the nominative of a verb, and is employed for all kinds of objects; as,

L'homme qui pense, *The man who thinks.*

La bête qui mange, *The beast that eats.*

Les pierres qui tombent, *The stones that fall.*

2do, De qui,

Of whom, from whom, or whose, is used for persons only; as,

La Reine de qui je parle, *The Queen of whom I speak.*

Le Roi de qui je reçus l'ordre, *The King from whom I received the order.*

If an inanimate object be personified, *de qui* may be used; as,

Le Ciel de qui j'implore le secours, *Heaven, whose assistance I implore.*

La fortune de qui j'attends cela, *Fortune from which I expect that.*

3rdo,

3^{to}, *Dont*,

Of, from, by, whom, which, or whose, is used for all objects, and must have its substantive immediately before it, and the nominative of the verb after it; as,

L'homme dont je parle, The man of whom I speak.

La règle dont je parlois, The rule of which I was speaking.

In questions *dont* is never used, instead of which *de qui* of whom, or *de quoi* of what is employed.

4^{to}, *Duquel, de laquelle, desquels, desquelles, dont*,

Are used when speaking of irrational and inanimate beings; as,

Le bidet duquel, or dont je me sers, The pony that I use.

5^{to}, *A qui*,

To whom is always used when we are speaking of persons; as,

La dame à qui vous parlez, The Lady to whom you speak.

6^{to}, *Auquel, à laquelle, auxquels, auxquelles, or à quoi*,

To which, to what, are used with irrational or inanimate beings; as,

Le livre auquel, or à quoi je répondis, The book that I answered.

EXERCISES ON

7me, Que,

Whom, that, which, is the fourth or accusative case of *qui*, and is employed for all objects, *rational*, *irrational*, or *inanimate* beings; and *qui* or *que* are repeated before every verb of which they are the nominatives and accusatives; as,

La femme que je vois, The woman whom I see.

La lettre que j'écris, The letter that I write.

La Dame qui danse, qui chante si bien, et qui est si aimable, la connoissez-vous?

RULE II.

When qui and que are used.

If no word in English comes between *who*, *that*, *which*, and the verb *qui* being the nominative, is used; as,

The man who speaks, L'homme qui parle.

If a word in English come between *whom*, *that*, *which*, and the verb, *que*, being the accusative, is used; as,

*The men whom we see, Les hommes que nous voyons,
The things that we saw, Les choses que nous vîmes.*

RULE III.

Que is sometimes employed, though not Englished, in a sentence beginning with the impersonal verb *c'est*, *c'étoit*, &c. as,

C'est de vous que je parle, It is of you I speak.

C'étoit à vous que je parlois, It was to you I was speaking.

Instead of saying *de qui* and *à qui je parle, je parlois.*

The word *that* coming after a verb, and connected with a second verb coming after it, is a conjunction, and is made by *que*; as, *je crois que la pomme est bonne*, I believe that the apple is good.

It is to be observed, that *que*, either as a conjunction or pronoun relative, is always expressed in French, though the English of it is often omitted; as,

Je crois que vous viendrez, *I believe you will come.*

Les choses que vous dites, *The things you say.*

RULE IV.

Whom, with a preposition, such as *for*, *by*, *against*, &c. *pour*, *par*, *contre*, &c. is made by *qui*; and *which*, with prepositions, is made by *lequel*, *laquelle*, *lesquels*, *lesquelles*; as, *l'homme contre qui vous parlez*, the man against whom you speak; *la terre pour laquelle vous plaidiez*, the estate for which you are at law.

RULE V.

In questions, *qui* whom, in the accusative, is used for persons only; as, *qui demandez-vous?* whom, what person, are you seeking; *Qui* is also employed to express *any body*; as, *amenez avec vous qui vous voudrez*, bring with you any body you please.

RULE VI.

Which, in questions, is made by *lequel*, *laquelle*, *lesquels*, *lesquelles*, followed by a genitive case; as, *laquelle de ces deux Dames est la plus belle?* which of these two ladies is the prettiest?

Lequel is used also to avoid an amphibology; as, *le frere de la Reine, lequel a beaucoup d'esprit*, *lequel* shows that it is the brother who has wit; whereas, if *qui* was used, it would not be known whether it was the Queen or her brother who was witty.

EXERCISES ON

Où, where, is often used instead of *auquel*, &c. *dans lequel*; as, *L'état où je suis*, the situation wherein I am.

RULE VII.

What, joined to a substantive, is made by *quel*, *quelle*, *quels*, *quelles*, which must be of the same gender and number as its substantive; as, *quels hommes*, what men? *quelle femme*, what woman? Yet *quel* is used without a substantive before a verb, the substantive being understood; as, *il court des bruits désavantageux de vous*, unfavourable reports are spread of you; the answer might be, *quels sont-ils?* what are they?

What, without a substantive, and before a verb, is made by *que*, as, *que, demandez-vous?* what are you seeking.

RULE VIII.

Quoi *what, which,*

Is of both genders and numbers, and is employed when speaking of *things*, but never of *persons*. It is used, 1^{mo}, With a preposition, as *sur quoi le croyez-vous?* on what do you believe it? 2^{do}, In answer to a question, as *l'avez-vous dit?* R. *Quoi?* Have you told it? R. What? 3^{to}, in the genitive and dative, viz. *de quoi*, *à quoi*, as *de quoi parlez-vous?* of what were you speaking? 4^{to}, *ce sont des affaires dont je ne me mêle point*, these are things with which I do not interfere. 4^{to}, To express a sudden emotion of the mind, as *quoi! vous ôsez le dire*, what! dare you say it. 5^{to}, *De quoi* expresses these English words, *wherewith*, *wherewithal*, in the following sense, as *il n'a pas de quoi vivre*, he has nothing to live upon, or wherewith to live upon.

Que is used with the impersonal verb *c'est* in an emphatical manner before a noun that terminates a sentence, and is not Englished; as, *c'est un vice odieux que l'avarice*, avarice is an odious vice.

RULE

RULE IX.

Who, in questions, according to the idiomatical turn of the language, is often made by *qui est-ce qui*; and *what* by *qu'est-ce que*, and *qu'est-ce que c'est que*; as *qui est-ce qui vous a dit cela?* who told you that? *qu'est-ce que*, or *qu'est-ce que c'est que vous avez dit?* What have you said?

God, who is infinitely good, and from whom we have received our existence, will not allow that we be tempted above our strength.
permettre que soyons tenté au dessus forces

I see a number of truths of faith and morality which seem repugnant and contrary, and yet they are not so.
nombre 1 de vérité 2 de foi morale sembler contraire pourtant le

The Kings of whom you speak, and whose abilities you commend, will not sign these dishonourable treaties.
louer signer ces traité

The things of which you were speaking are too abstract and chose
chose trop abstrait

too difficult for my poor brain.
difficile pauvre cerveau 1

These horses which you make use of are too skittish for me.
cheval se servir ombrageux

I am informed that the Ladies to whom you sent the pamphlets, will not read them.
On m'a appris que brochures

Have you seen our benefactors to whom we are so much indebted?
bienfaiteur tant en dette

Of all the studies to which the learned apply, the most necessary would be, a well directed philosophy, in order to make men useful to society.
tout étude 2 savant s'appliquer ne cessaire dirigé philosophie 2 pour rendre

société 2

The letters which the generals wrote and directed to the mi-
lettre 2 *adressee* *mi-*

nistry, were intercepted by the enemy.
mairie 1 *intercepté par ennemi*

A scholar who studies well, performs all his tasks, and is
étudier faire ses devoir
 tractable, will be the master's favourite.
docile favori

The men whom you have punished, and the horses that you
punir
 had bought, are pretty near on the same footing with respect to
acheter à peu près même pied 1 par rapport
 reason 2

It is of you the Colonel was complaining this morning to the
se plaindre ce matin

Major and Captains.
Capitaine

It was to you, my friend, we wrote, but you did not think
avez juger
 proper to send us an answer, you have forgotten yourself.
à propos réponse se méconnoître

The things they say, and letters they write, shew sufficiently
montrer suffisamment
 they have no taste, judgement, or politeness.
point gout jugement politesse

For whom are you asking the employment, and against whom
solliciter emploi
 have you so much aversion?
tant

There is a ship for which I offered three thousand pounds
Voilà vaisseau 1 mille livre
 Sterling at the sale.
vente 2

We have had your letter with all the satisfaction 2 with which
lettre 2
 we ought to receive that honour.
devoir cet honneur

Whom are you seeking, sirrah? I am seeking the persons who
chercher maraud personne
 were with my master yesterday.
maitre hier

Get

Get you gone. If you don't find them, bring along with you
se retirer *amener*
any body you find in the street to sign the deed.

Which of these ladies is your favourite? Is it Miss Brown
pour signer *acte*
or Miss Black?

To which of these aprons shall I give the preference 2?
le noir
tablier 1

There is the sad situation 2 wherein you and I are reduced
voilà *triste* *moi*
by these bankrupts.

What dismal adventures will happen to a young man who
fatal *aventures* 2 *arriver*
deviates from the path of virtue?

When the post will come, I know that we shall have great
s'ecarter *route* 2
news. What are they?

Tell them to me since you know them.

What shall I do? What do you advise me to do?

What method shall I follow to find out the truth?

The servant has stolen your money, do you say? On what do
mode 2 *trouver* *vérité* 2
you believe it? On what! On what do I believe it? Because I
croire *parceque*
believe it.

Pray, Ladies, of what were you conversing when I came
Je vous prie Mesdames *s'entretenir*
into the room.

We have not wherewith to buy shoes and stockings; as a
foulier *bas* *de*
favour lend us money. What! dare you ask money of me af-
grace, *préter* *oser* *me*
ter your bad behaviour towards me,

deportement 1 *envers*

Drunkenness

Drunkenness is a horrible vice, yet it is the passion of many
Tvrognerie

good people. (Turn the beginning of this sentence as if the
bonnête gens

English was, *It is an horrible, &c.*)

Who would do the bad offices to her? Who would dare do it?

What have you written to the minister? What have you said
of me?

CHAP. V.

PRONOUNS DEMONSTRATIVE.

RULE I.

THE English pronouns demonstrative *this*, *that*, placed with a noun, are rendered into French by *ce* or *cet*, for the masculine, and *cette* for the feminine. *Ce* is used before a noun masculine, beginning with a consonant or *h* sounded, as *ce livre* this or that book; *ce héros* this or that hero. *Cet* is used before a masculine noun that begins with a vowel, or *h* not sounded, as *cet animal* this or that animal; *cet homme* this or that man.

These and *those*, with a noun, are rendered by *ces*, used before all nouns in the plural number, and for all genders, as *ces hommes* these or those men; *ces femmes* these or those women; *ces héros* these or those heroes.

By the above rule, the learner may observe, that *ce*, *cet*, *cette*, and *ces*, are adjectives. They are declined with the prepositions *de*, *à*, for all genders and numbers.

Sometimes these adverbs, *ci* here, and *là* there, are placed after a noun substantive preceded by *ce*, *cet*, *cette*, *ces*, in order to point out the object in a stronger manner, as, *je connais cet homme-ci*, I know this man; *j'ai vu cette femme-là*, I have seen that woman.

RULE

RULE II.

1^{mo}, These expressions, *he who*, *he that*, are made by *celui qui*; *she who*, *she that*, by *celle qui*; *they who*, *they that*, by *ceux qui*, for the masculine, and *celles qui* for the feminine. *Qui* is never separated from *celui*, *celle*, *ceux*, *celles*, unless the adverb *là* there, be joined to them, as, *celui-là est heureux qui dompte ses passions*, he is happy who conquers his passions. This sentence could be turned this way, *Celui qui dompte ses passions est heureux*.

Of whom, or whom, coming after *he*, *she*, *they*, are expressed by *de qui*, and to whom, by *à qui*.

2^{do}, *This of*, *that of*, relating to a foregoing noun, are made, by *celui de*, for the masculine, *celle de*, for the feminine; and *these of*, *those of*, by *ceux de*, or *celles de*; remembering always to make *celui*, *celle*, *ceux*, *celles*, to agree with the noun to which they refer. If *of the* comes after *this*, *that*, *these*, *those*, the second case of the article is used, viz. *du*, *de la*, *de l'*, *des*.

RULE III.

This or that is made by *celui-ci ou celui-là*, for the masculine, and *celle-ci ou celle-là*, for the feminine; *these or those*, by *ceux-ci ou ceux-là*, for the masculine, and *celles-ci ou celles-là*, for the feminine, agreeing with the foregoing noun, to which they relate.

These two words, *the former*, *the latter*, relating to nouns mentioned in the part of a foregoing sentence, are made by *celui-ci*, and *celui-là*, *celle-ci*, *celle-là*, *ceux-ci*, *ceux-là*, *celles-ci*, *celles-là*. *Celui-ci*, &c. relates to the last noun, and *celui-là*, &c. to the first. *L'un*, *l'autre* is used in the same way.

RULE IV.

1^{mo}, *That, which, and what*, in the sense of *that which*, is made by *ce qui*, for the nominative, and *ce que* for the accusative.

2^{do}, If *ce qui*, or *ce que*, begins a sentence of two parts, and if, in the second, you have any of the third persons of the verb
être,

EXERCISES ON

être, ce must be repeated before it, unless it be followed by an adjective; and if it be followed by a verb in the infinitive mood, you use *de* before it, as,

Ce qui me tourmente, c'est qu'elle est indolente,
What vexes me, is that she is indolent.

Ce que vous disiez, est très certain,
What you were saying, is very certain.

Ce que je crains, c'est d'être ruiné,
What I dread, is to be ruined.

Ceci this and *cela* that, are substantives, and may be either nominatives to a verb, or governed by them; but they are never placed with a substantive. All the demonstrative pronouns are declined with *de* and *à*.

This paper is very bad, and these pens are ill made.

papier 1 *très mauvais* *plume* 2 *mal taillé*

That town is very well situated on the bank of that river.

ville 2 *bien* *situé* *bord* 1 *rivière* 2

This engineer gave that order to these gunners.

ingénieur *ordre* 1 *canonier*

By the date 2 of these commissions, you will find that it be-

Par *trouver que c'est*

longs to us to give these orders.

à nous à

We give no credit to that popular opinion 2.

ajouter *foi* *populaire*

We know by heart the beautiful parts of that discourse.

savoir par cœur *endroit* *harangue* 2

It is this man who robbed me, and it was that woman who

c'est *voler* *c'étoit*

was with him.

He who is easily offended discovers his weakness, and gives

facilement s'offenser *découvrir* *foible* 1 *fournir*

to his enemies the occasion of taking the advantage of it.

de *profiter* *en*

You and I know little the immense resources of Spain, and

moi connoître peu *ressource* 2 *Espagne*

we do not know at all those of England.

ignorer tout à fait *Angleterre*

Bless

Bless those who curse you, do good to those who persecute
 benir maudire faire du bien persécuter
 you, pray for those who calumniate you.
 calomnier

Will you buy my estate, or that of my brother ?
 vouloir acheter terre 2 frere

He is really valuable who can and is willing to serve his
 vraiment estimable peut veut servir
 friends.

I leave you to choose, take this or that, or else these or those.
 laisser à choisir bien

Mildness is equally useful to those who command, and to
 douceur 2 également utile
 those who ought to obey.
 devoir obéir

Give to him what you promised to him.
 promettre

Virtue and vice 1 are two opposite things, the former by the
 vertu 2 opposé chose 2 avec la
 grace of God I shall practise, the latter I shall shun.
 pratiquer fuir

The body perishes, the soul is immortal, yet all our cares are
 corps 1 périr âme 2 cependant soin 1
 for the former, whilst we neglect the latter.
 tandis que négliger

What I represent to you is the naked truth.
 nud verité 2

What tires me is to live in the country without books and
 ennuyer à campagne 2
 society.

What that author seeks is a pension.
 auteur

What the general dreaded was to be attacked in his march,
 de marche 2
 and what he now fears is to be disgraced by the King.
 être disgracié par

This will dishonour you ; For God's sake do it not. No, I
 amour de Dieu
 beg your pardon, that will not dishonour me.
 demander

C H A P. VI.

S E C T. I.

Upon *on*, *Pon*.

On, *Pon*, one, they, we, people, some, is the masculine nominative of a verb, governing it always in the third person singular, and never the third person plural, as, *On n'est pas toujours maître de ses passions*, *One is not always master of one's passions*.

When *on* relates to a female, the noun coming after the verb must be in the feminine gender.

On is used only for persons, and never for God. Therefore instead of saying, *au jour du jugement on nous demandera compte de nos actions*, say, *Dieu nous demandera compte de nos actions*.

To put into French the English word *it* before a passive verb, begin your sentence with *On*, converting that passive verb into the active in French; as, *It is believed*, *On croit*; *It is reported*, *on rapporte*. If the English verb has a noun for its nominative, after converting the passive state into the active in French, you make *On* the nominative, and the English nominative becomes the case governed by the verb, as, *A Court martial was held*, *On tint un Conseil de Guerre*; *Troops shall be sent*, *On enverra des troupes*. Often, for sound's sake, *I'* with an elision is used after *que*, *et*, *si*, *ou* or, *où* where, *que l'on*, *si l'on*, *et l'on*, *ou l'on*, *où l'on*.

It is reported that the French fleet had not failed last *reporter* *flotte 2* *mettre à la voile*

Wednesday, but people think that it will fail next week.

Mercredi

sémaine 2

It is given out that a council was held at Madrid, where it *débiter* *conseil 1*

was proposed to bombard Algiers.

proposer de bombarder Alger

We

We take the liberty to censure in others the same faults
On se donner liberté à de censurer dans les autres même
 wherein we fall ourselves.

où on tombe soi-même
 It may be said of the great Pitt, as it has been said of the eloquent Pericles, that he thundered, that he carried a thunderbolt, on his tongue.

langue à
 We learn much more easily geography and navigation 2
On apprendre beaucoup facilement géographie à
 than logic and metaphysics.
que logique à metaphysique à

The sentiments are divided. It is not known yet what is to be done.
partagé savoir
doit faire

That is what is believed, and what is told in all the coffee-houses in London.

Couriers will be sent to the plenipotentiaries of the belligerent powers, to ratify the peace.

puissance à pour ratifier paix à

SECT. II.

On Quelque.

1^{mo}, *Some*, with a substantive, in English, is rendered by *quelque* in French; and it must agree with the noun in number, as *quelque soldats*, some soldiers.

2^{do}, *Whatever, whatsoever, however, though, although,* (answering to the Latin expression, *quantumvis, quantusunque,*) are made in French by *quelque*. In which case, *quelque* is followed, 1^{mo}, By *que*, which governs the verb in the subjunctive mood. 2^{do}, The nominative of that verb is placed after it, unless the nominative be *je, tu, il, elle, on, nous, vous, ils, elles,*

EXERCISES ON

3^{to}, If the nominative has an adjective, that adjective is placed immediately after *quelque*, and *quelque* before that adjective is indeclinable, but before a substantive it is declinable; as,

Quelque folles que soyent ses actions,
However foolish his or her actions are.

Quelques mesures que prenne le cabinet,
Whatever measures the cabinet takes.

Quelques medicines que vous preniez, &c.,
Whatever drugs you take, &c.

3^{to}, *Quelque* is divided into two words, *quel* and *que*; *1^{mo}*, Before the pronouns personal, *je, tu, il, elle, nous, vous, ils, elles*, *2^{do}*, With a substantive to which it relates, as *quels que nous soyons*, whatever we be; *quels qu'ils soient*; *quelles que soient vos idées*, whatever your notions are. In this case *quel* is declinable.

4^{to}, *Whatever, whatsoever*, in the sense of *any thing*, is *qui que ce soit*, or *tout ce qui*, or *tout ce que*.

5^{to}, *Any body, whoever, whosoever*, is *qui que ce soit*, or *quiconque*.

Quelque, divided as above, at No. *3^{to}*, answers to the Latin *qualisunque*.

6^{to}, *Some*, repeated in a sentence, is made by *les uns*, in the first part of it, and by *les autres* in the second, as *les uns aiment la chasse, les autres la pêche*, some are fond of hunting, some of fishing.

These travellers have made some curious observations 2 in
voyageur curieux
Switzerland.

Suisse
You and I know some women who are excellent housewives.
connoître ménagère

Whatever designs our enemies have, we ought to be on our
deffein devoir

guard.
garde

However

However glorious the victories are, the country suffers by
Quelque glorieux victoire 2 patrie 2 souffrir
them.

en
Whatever your character is, do not pretend to avail yourself
caractère 1 prévaloir
of it.

en
Whatever services you have done me, I have been grateful
rendre reconnoissant
for them.

en
Whatever our labour was, you seem to despise it.
peine 2

Whatever we are, good or bad, that is of little importance
to you.

Whatever signal victories that you have obtained over the ene-
signalé victoire 2 remporter sur
mies, they will not grant to you whatever you ask.
accorder

Whoever writes such letters to me is not my friend.
tel

I shall not be angry, whatever it be that you tell me.
être en colère

Whatever we are, be modest, do not chide us.
gronder

Whatever pleases is always agreeable.
Whosoever tells you that, speaks rashly, and does not think
dire à la volée

on what we were saying.
à ce que dire

Some go to the army, some become merchants.
guerre 2 se faire

Quelque puissant qu'on soit en richesse, en crédit,
Quelque mauvais succès qu'ait tout ce qu'on écrit,
On n'est jamais content de sa fortune,
Ni mécontent de son esprit.

SECT. III.

On *Tout*.

m. f. m. f.

1^{mo}, **TOUT**, *toute, tous, toutes, all, every*, is an adjective, as
tous les hommes, de tous les hommes, à tous les hommes,
all men, of all men, to all men; toutes les femmes, all women;
toutes les semaines, every week; tous les ans, every year.

Tout, before the name of a town of the feminine gender, is indeclinable; and if an adjective attends the name of the town, the adjective is masculine, as, *tout Venise le voit*, all Venice sees it; *tout la Haye en fut alarmé*, all the Hague was alarmed at it.

2^{do}, *Tout*, by itself, may be used for the words, *all, or every thing.*

3^{te}, The words *as, though, although*, before an adjective, are made by *tout*, followed by *que*, as *tout savant qu'il est*, as learned as he is; *toutes devotes qu'elles sont*, as religious as they are.

Tout in the above mentioned sense of *though, as, quite*, is indeclinable, 1^{mo}, When it is followed by an adjective masculine or an adverb, as, *Les plus grand généraux tout éclairés qu'ils sont*, *font souvent des fautes capitales*, as knowing as the greatest generals are, they commit often capital faults; *La rivière coule tout doucement*, the river runs quite gently.

2^{do}, It is indeclinable when it is followed by an adjective feminine that begins with a vowel or an *h* mute, as *Elles sont tout étonnées*, they are quite astonished; but before an adjective feminine beginning with a consonant *tout* is declinable, as, *ma bourse est toute vide*, my purse is quite empty.

Tout all, an adjective, is repeated before each noun in the sentence, more especially when they are of different genders. *Tout* *quite*, before *aussi, autre, and autrement*, is indeclinable.

In all our undertakings, and in all our designs, we ought to
entreprise 2 *dessein* 1 *devoir*
have in view the glory of the Creator, and the good of our
en vue *loire* 2 *Créateur* *bien* 1
fellow creatures.

semblable
We shall be glad to see you every day, or at least every
ravi de voir
week, as we intend to do every thing for you.

avoir dessein de
All London was alarmed during the late riots, and the
Londres *pendant* *dernier émeute* 2
military did all to pacify the mob.
troupes *pour appaiser canaille* 2.

As learned as our Professor is, he commits blunders.
savant *Professeur* *faire bêvue*
As ugly as these girls are, they are vain and proud.
laid *fille* *orgueilleux*
Virtue, as rigid as you think it, will make you relish true
vertu *austere* *gouter véritable*
pleasure.
plaisir 1

She is quite uneasy since she has left the town.
inquiète *quitter*

These apples are quite as good now as when we received
pomme *aussi* *que*
them.

Though your troops are disciplined and experienced, we
Tout *troupes* 2 *discipliné* *expérimenté*
shall offer you battle.

présenter bataille
The last strawberries that you bought are not so good as the
fraise 2 *si* *que*
first, they are quite another thing.

mûre
These ladies at the ball will be quite covered with jewels.
bal 1 *couvert de pierreries*

SECT. IV.

On le même the same, la même, les mêmes, chacun, chacune, chaque, aucun, aucune, nul, nulle, nuls, nulles, pas un, pas une, &c. &c.

LE même is an adjective, même even is an adverb; même is used after *moi, toi, soi, nous, vous, elle, eux, elles*, to express self and selves, as *moi même* myself, *nous mêmes* ourselves; and sometimes même is used after a substantive, as *la vertu même* virtue itself, *l'homme même* man himself.

Chacun, or *chacune*, each, every body, every one, is always used in the singular, and takes after it *son, sa, ses, or leur, leurs*. *Chaque* each, every, is an indeclinable adjective used in the singular number.

Quelqu'un, quelqu'une, some body, some one, &c. is a substantive.

2do, Nul, aucun, pas un, none, not one, *ni l'un, ni l'autre* neither, *personne* no body, *rien* nothing, and these words *jamais* never, *plus* more, *moi* word, attending *dire* to say, and *goute* with *voir* to see, take *ne* before the verb without *pas*, or *point*; as,

Je n'ai nul embarras, I have no difficulty. *Pas un ne l'aime*, no body loves him or her. *Ni l'un ni l'autre ne viendra*, neither will come. *Personne ne me verrá*, no body will see me. *Je ne verrai personne*, I shall see no body. *Rien ne le contentera*, nothing will please him. *Je ne ferai rien*, I shall do nothing. *Vous ne dites mot*, you do not say a word. *Elle ne voit goute*, she does not see at all.

In sentences of interrogation, wonder, or doubt, *personne* any body, *aucun* any, *jamais* ever, *rien* any thing, are not attended with *ne*, and *personne*, *rien*, as nominatives, begin the sentence, using besides the pronoun personal *il*, as, *Rien paroît-il?*

il? Personne viendra-t-il? Does any thing appear? will any body come?

Personne, in some cases, may be used without *ne*, as *fait-il-tort à personne?* does he wrong any body? And, in answer to a question, *personne est-il venu?* has any body come? personne, no body.

Personne, signifying a person, is feminine, as *la personne que vous voyez*; signifying no body, or any body, it is masculine, as *je ne connois personne plus médisant que votre sœur*, I know no body more flandering than your sister; any body is made by *tout le monde*, any thing by *toute chose* or *tout*, and never by *aucune personne*, or *aucune chose*.

If personne be applied to women, it makes the adjective relating to it, to be of the feminine gender; as *Mesdames, il n'y a personne de vous assez offrontée pour nier le fait*, Ladies, there is none of you so brazen faced as to deny the fact.

310, Ni-l'un, ni l'autre, require the verb in the singular, if it comes after it, and the plural if it comes before, as *ni l'un ni l'autre n'est arrivé*. *Ils ne sont arrivés ni l'un ni l'autre.*

You and I have the same right, the same privileges, and the
 droit 1 privilege
 same authority.

autorité 2

We English glory in doing justice even to our enemies.

Nous autres Anglois faire gloire de rendre ennemi

Man himself does not know his own dignity.

connoître propre dignité 2

I myself have been caught in it.

attrapé y

Each of the southern provinces 2 will submit to the victorious
 meridional se soumettre

army.

I shall put back each of these books in its place 2 in the library.
 remettre bibliothèque 2

When Marshal Turenne died, all the towns of France ex-
 le Maréchal de ville 2 to-

pressed their grief each in its own way.

moigner façon

Every

Every hour, every day increased my happiness, of which I
augmenter honheur 1
had no idea.

nul idée 2

My grief made no impression 2 on his mind; none of the
douleur 2 aucun esprit pas un
officers believed that he was so barbarous; no body spoke to
officiers si personne
him during the interview? the company resolved not to say a
entrevue compagnie 2
word to him.

mot

No body sees the things as you see them; you never think.

Has any body sent word to you that we shall not go away
mander que partir
to-morrow?

Has any body ever seen these canals that cross the
traverser
country?

pays 1

It is so dark that we fee nothing.

Il fait si obscur voir goutte
If you come to my house, I will shew you the person who
chez moi montrer
affisted me; you never knew any body so generous.

Who is there? No body, Sir.

là

Does any thing divert you so much as to see the representa-
divertir tant que de
tion of a good play?

comédie 2

When you are at the corner of St James's Street, any body
coin 2 Saint Jacques rue 2
will tell you where your friend lives.

demeurer

You are expecting to-day these two ladies; I can assure you
attendre dames
that neither will come.

CHAP. VII.

ON NUMBER.

Cardinal Number.

UN or Une
deux

| | | | |
|--------------|-----|-------------------------|-----|
| trois | 3 | vingt-huit | 28 |
| quatre | 4 | vingt-neuf | 29 |
| cinq | 5 | trente | 30 |
| fix | 6 | trente et un | 31 |
| sept | 7 | trente-deux | 32 |
| huit | 8 | trente-trois, &c. | 33 |
| neuf | 9 | quarante | 40 |
| dix | 10 | quarante et un | 41 |
| onze | 11 | quarante-deux, &c. | 42 |
| douze | 12 | cinquante | 50 |
| treize | 13 | cinquante et un | 51 |
| quatorze | 14 | cinquante deux &c. | 52 |
| quinze | 15 | soixante | 60 |
| seize | 16 | soixante et un | 61 |
| dix-sept | 17 | soixante et deux &c. | 62 |
| dix-huit | 18 | soixante et dix | 70 |
| dix-neuf | 19 | soixante et onze | 71 |
| vingt | 20 | soixante et douze, &c. | 72 |
| vingt et un | 21 | quatre vingt | 80 |
| vingt-deux | 22 | quatre vingt un | 81 |
| vingt-trois | 23 | quatre vingt deux, &c. | 82 |
| vingt-quatre | 24 | quatre-vingt-dix | 90 |
| vingt-cinq | 25 | quatre-vingt-onze | 91 |
| vingt-six | 26 | quatre-vingt-douze, &c. | 92 |
| vingt-sept | 27 | cent | 100 |
| | H h | cent un | 101 |
| | | cent deux, &c. | 102 |
| | | cent- | |

EXERCISES ON NUMBER.

| | | | |
|-------------------------|------|----------------|-----------|
| cent-vingt ou six vingt | 120 | quatre-mille | 4000 |
| cent-vingt et un, &c. | 121 | vingt-mille | 20,000 |
| cent-trente, &c. | 130 | cent mille | 100,000 |
| deux cent | 200 | un million | 1,000,000 |
| trois cent, &c. | 300 | deux millions | 2,000,000 |
| mille | 1000 | trois millions | 3,000,000 |
| trois-mille | 3000 | &c. &c. | |

Ordinal Numbers.

| | | | |
|-----------------------|---------------------|----------------------------|--------|
| Le premier | the 1 st | quarante deuxième, &c. | 42d |
| le second or deuxième | 2d | le cinquantième | 50th |
| troisième | 3d | cinquante et unième | 51st |
| quatrième | 4th | cinquante deuxième, &c. | 52d |
| cinquième | 5th | soixantième | 60th |
| sixième | 6th | soixante et unième | 61st |
| septième | 7th | soixante et deuxième | 62d |
| huitième | 8th | soixante et troisième | 63d |
| neuvième | 9th | soixante et quatrième, | |
| dixième | 10th | &c. | 64th |
| le onzième | 11th | soixante et dixième | 70th |
| douzième | 12th | soixante et onzième | 71st |
| treizième | 13th | soixante et douzième | 72d |
| quatorzième | 14th | soixante et treizième, &c. | 73d |
| quinzième | 15th | quatre vingtième | 80th |
| seizième | 16th | quatre vingt unième | 81st |
| dix-septième | 17th | quatre vingt deuxième, | |
| dix-huitième | 18th | &c. | 82d |
| dix-neuvième | 19th | quatre vingt dixième | 90th |
| le vingtième | the 20th | quatre vingt onzième, | |
| vingt et unième | 21st | &c. | 91st |
| vingt deuxième, &c. | 22d | centième | 100th |
| le trentième | 30th | cent unième | 101st |
| trente et unième | 31st | cent deuxième | 102d |
| trente deuxième, &c. | 32d | le deux centième | 200th |
| quarantième | 40th | le millième | 1000th |
| quarante et unième | 41st | | |

The

The distributive numbers are made by placing *à* between each number, as *un à un* one by one *deux à deux* two by two, *trois à trois* three by three, &c. Adverbial numbers are, *une fois* once, *deux fois* twice, *trois fois*, thrice, &c.

There are besides some collective numbers, such as *une tierce* a tierce, *une huitaine* eight days, *une neuvaine* nine days devotion, *un dixième* a tenth part, *une douzaine* a dozen, *une demi-douzaine* $\frac{1}{2}$ dozen, *une quinzaine* fifteen things, *une vingtaine* a score, *une trentaine* thirty, *une quarantaine* forty, a quarantine, *une cinquantaine* fifty, *une soixantaine* sixty, *une centaine* a hundred. To which you may add these numbers, *la moitié* the half, *le tiers* the third, *le quart* $\frac{1}{4}$, &c. *le double* the double, *le triple* the treble, *le centuple* hundred fold.

The cardinal numbers are indeclinable, except *million*; *cent* and *vingt* in *quatre vingt 80*, *six-vingt 120*, take *s* when followed by a substantive, in the plural, as *deux cents pommes*, *six vingts animaux*. *Quatre vingt* and *cent* are indeclinable when they are followed by a word of number, as, *quatre vingt deux*, *quatre cent trente*.

The cardinal numbers is used instead of the ordinal without the articles, when speaking of Sovereigns, and is placed after the name of the Sovereign, as, *Charles trois*, Charles the third, *Louis treize* Lewis the 13th. But the *first* or *second* after the names of a Sovereign is made by *prémier* and *second*, without the article.

The cardinal number is used when speaking of the days of the month, as *le deux*, *le trois*, *le vingt et un de Juillet*, the 2d, 3d, 21st of July. But for the first day of the month we say, *le prémier*.

When we speak of the Christian aera, *mil* is used, and never *mille*, as *l'an mil sept cent quatre-vingt-onze*, the year one thousand seven hundred and ninety-one. The words *one*, and before such numbers, are not translated into French. Therefore don't say, *l'an un mil sept cent et quatre-vingt-onze*, but as above, *l'un mil*, &c.

When in English two ordinal numbers meet together, the first in French must be a cardinal one, and the second an ordinal, as, the 10 or 11th, *le dix ou le onzième*.

Septante 70, *huitante 80*, *ninante 90*, are only used in arithmetical calculations. *Le Septuaginta*, the Septuagint, is the Greek version of the Old Testament, and *les septantes* means the translators of it.

Le quantième is used for asking the days of the month, as *quel quantième du mois avons-nous?* what day of the month is it?

England and the principality of Wales contain fifty-two
principauté 2 *Galles* *contenir*
 counties, forty in the former, and twelve in the latter. There
comtés 1 *prémiere* 2 *second* *on en*
 are six towards the north, ten at the south, and eighteen in the
trouve *au nord* 1 *sud* 1
 middle, six at the east, and twelve at the west.
milieu 1 *orient* *occident*

Lewis the 14th bombarded Genoa in 1684. The Austrians
Louis *faire bombarder Genes* *Autrichiens*
 took possession of it in 1746.

s'emparer *en*
 Three and two make five, five and seven make twelve, and
 one makes thirteen? thirteen and fourteen make twenty-seven.
 Three times fifteen make forty-five, and thirty-four make
fois
 seventy-nine.

He has one and twenty horses in his stables, you have thirty-one, and I have sixty-three.

Many children are born before the two hundredth and sixtieth day.
Beaucoup *il naît* *deux cent*

I have had the honour of your letter of the 3d July 1790; deign, if you please, to acknowledge the reception of mine of
daigner s'il *accuser* *reception* 2
 the 17th of last June with a draft for L.97: 18: 11 $\frac{1}{4}$.
traite 2

Queen Anne died the first of August 1714, in the fiftieth
La Reine *Août*
 year of her age, and the thirteenth of her reign. With her
regne 1
 ended the line of the Stuarts, who, from James the first, who
Jacques
 succeeded to the crown of England in 1603, had swayed the
sceptre of England an hundred and eleven years, and that of
 Scotland three hundred and forty-three, from Robert the second
 in 1371.

Gibraltar

EXERCISES ON NUMBER.

245

Gibraltar was taken in 1704 by Admiral Rooke. The Spaniards have often made useless attempts to retake it.

Espagnols souvent inutile tentative pour

What day of the month have we to-day? Is it the tenth or
Quantième

eleventh? Is it the eleventh? It is neither, it is the fourteenth.

Ce

We received yesterday that bill of exchange drawn by
hier lettre change tiré par
Sir William Forbes and Company, bankers in Edinburgh,
Le Chevalier Guillaume Forbes et Société banquier à Edimbourg
on Mr Pérégaux in Paris, and payable to Henry Drummond,
Henri

Esq; in London, &c. for L. 2994: 13: 10*½*.

Ecuyer Londres.

The Croisades began about the year 1060. William the
Croisades

Conqueror lived in that time.

Conquérant temps-là

The enemies say that they will have in the channel 86 ships
Manche 2

of war, 2 of the first rate, 24 of the second, 17 of the third,
de guerre rang 1

16 of the fourth, with 20 frigates, and 7 bomb vessels.

frégates galiote à bombe

Step into the room, quite gently one by one, make no noise,
Entrer chambre 2 tout doucement bruit 2

or else you may go in two by two.

ou bien pouvez

CHAP.

CHAP. VIII.

ADJECTIVES.

1mo, THE English words *of, from, with and of the, with the,* coming after adjectives in the sense of *plenty, want, fulness, emptiness,* are rendered into French, the former by *de*, and the two last by *du, de la, de l', des.* The same rule is observed with *of, with, &c.* coming after the following adjectives, *digne, indigne, capable, incapable, content, mécontent, privé, taxé, ravi, joyeux, accusé, las, fatigué, chargé, aise, charmé, ami, ennemi, esclave, exempt, avide, comblé, &c.*

2do, And if, after these adjectives *of, or with* precedes the participle present, *of, with,* are rendered by *de* before the infinitive, and *to* before the infinitives is made also by *de;* as *la bouteille est pleine d'eau,* the bottle is full of water; *il est digne de blâme,* he is worthy of blame? *elle est digne de la pension,* she is worthy of the pension; *elle est digne d'être aimée,* she is worthy of being loved.

3to, The English words *to, for, to the,* coming after adjectives of *fitness unfitness, profit, disprofit, aptness, unaptness, due, submission, resistance,* and these adjectives *pret, semblable, adroit, sujet, lent, occupé, ardent, enclin, laid, &c.* are rendered into French by *à,* and *to the,* by *au, à la, à l', aux.*

4to, If after adjectives in this sense *to* precedes an infinitive, it is made by *à.* The word *of* coming after *sensible, insensible,* is rendered by *à, au, à la, à l', aux.*

That woman is, as many women, full of vanity, self-love,
bien *vanité, amour propre*
and affectation; she is not worthy of the court that you pay to
cour *faire*
her, and most unworthy of being your wife.
très

The King is a person of honour, he is incapable of doing
bonneur

you

you wrong ; he is infinitely pleased with the services you did
faire tort *infiniment content* *rendre*
 to him, he will be glad to promote you.
aise *avancer*

Because I favoured the Prince your son, your Majesty says,
favoriser *Majesté*
 that I am unworthy of your esteem, that I shall be deprived of
que *indigne* *estime* *privé*
 all my employments, that I shall be rendered incapable of every
emploi *rendre* *tout*
 office civil and military. Is this acting like a good father, and
militaire *Est-ce agir en*
 a clement Sovereign ? This is the language of your favourite
Souverain *C'est langage à*
 Minister who is displeased with my friends and me.
Ministre *mécontent*

The mountaineers, after having plundered and laid waste the
montagnard *pillier* *dévaster*
 low countries, returned to their woods loaded with a rich
bas pays *retourner dans* *bois comblé*
 booty.
butin 1

Are you not glad of the peace ? You certainly are so. For I
aise *paix* 2 *le*
 have always heard you say that you was a friend to peace, and
entendre *que*
 an enemy to war.

guerre 3
 Your friend is not fit for the place 2 that his Majesty has
propre *Majesté* 2
 given to him.

She is ready to marry you, when you are sensible of the love
epouser
 that she bears to you.

porter
 A discourse like that of the general is apt to deceive us.
discours 1 *semblable* *sujet tromper*
 That ugly woman cannot be sensible of love. No, she is
laid *Non*
 not capable of captivating us. Take care, I know no woman so
captiver *Prendre garde connoître* *si*
 artful in captivating as she.

adroit à *que*

C H A P. IX.

OF THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

THE comparative degree of adjectives is formed by adding *plus* more, moins *less* to them. The irregular adjectives of comparison are *meilleur* better, *pire* worse, *moindre* less. We never say *plus bon* better.

The word *than* coming after the comparison, is made by *que*, unless *than* be followed by a word of number, for then you use *de* and not *que*. If *than* be followed by the personal pronouns, *I, me, thou, thee, he, him, she, her, they, them*, these pronouns are rendered by *moi, toi, lui, elle, eux, elles*, as, *elle est plus grande que moi*, she is taller than I ; *elle est moins méchante que lui*, she is less wicked than he ; *il a plus de dix écus*, he has more than ten crowns.

Other comparatives are made by adding these adverbs to the adjectives, *si* so, *aussi* as, *autant* as much, as many, *tant* so much, so many; and the word *as* coming after *si*, *aussi*, &c. is made by *que*.

If the verb that follows *plus*, *mieux*, *moins*, is not attended with a preposition, nor in the infinitive mood, it is preceded by *ne*; but, if it is in the infinitive, and preceded by a preposition or conjunction, *ne* is not used, as, *il est plus généreux que je ne croyois*, he is more generous than I believed ; *il est moins brave que je ne pensois*, he is less brave than I thought ; *il est plus sage que de répondre*, he is more prudent than to answser ; *il est moins savant que quand il commença*, he is less a scholar than when he began.

The superlative of adjectives is formed by adding to them *le* or *la plus* the most, *le* or *la moins* the least. The three irregular superlatives or adjectives are *le meilleur*, *la meilleure* the best ; (*le plus bon* is never used), *le pire* the worst, *le moindre* the least. You form also superlatives by adding these adverbs to

to the adjectives, *très* very, *most*, *fort* very, *bien* very, as *le plus brave du régiment*, the bravest of the regiment; *le moins riche de la ville*, the least rich of the town; *cela est bien bon*, that is very good.

Qui or *que* coming after the superlative requires the following verb to be in the subjunctive mood, as *il est le plus formidable ennemi que nous ayons*, he is the most formidable enemy we have.

Mieux better, *le mieux* the best, *moins* less, *le moins* the least, *pis* worse, *le pis* the worst, are adverbs.

The preposition *by* after a comparative is made by *de*, as *plus grand de toute la tête*, taller by the whole head.

If *beaucoup* and *peu* denote comparison, they take *de* before them, as *il est de beaucoup plus grand*, he is taller by much.

The more, *more*, *the less*, *less*, repeated in a sentence, are rendered by *plus*, *moins*, and never by *le plus*, *le moins*.

So much the more, *so much the less*, are made by *d'autant plus*, *d'autant moins*.

That young man is more polite than the person you saw
poli
 yesterday.

hier

Africa, greater than Europe, is less peopled than Europe.

Afrique

peuplé

Pascal's thoughts on religion 2 are infinitely better than those
pensée 2
 of all the modern philosophers.

moderne philosophe

I shall not receive, for the fruit of all my labour, more than
travail
 twenty or thirty guineas.

guinée

If you confine my wages to less than fifteen guineas, I shall
borner *gage*
 not be able to buy shoes and stockings.

acheter soulier *bas*

She is prouder than he, more affable than they, and richer
fier *riche*
 than I.

These effects are in better case than when I saw them.

effets mieux conditionés

Yo are not so proud as your brother ; you have not so much
orgueilleux

wit as he ; but you have as much liveliness, and you are as
vivacité

amiable as your late mother.

aimable feu

The Seine ² is not so broad as the Thames ; but the Seine
large Tamise 2

has a longer course than the Thames.

cours 1

These rules are harder than I thought ; but they begin to be
regle 2 difficile

easier than when I saw you at our school.

facile

Read history, I say, it is as useful as it is agreeable, it will
histoire 2 dis je utile agréable

open your mind, and form your heart.

esprit coeur

He is less learned than you thought, he is as engaging as he
savant séduisant

was, yet he is not now so esteemed as he was.

estimé

He is one of the greatest politicians in Europe, he executes
C'est politique exécuter

as easily as he plans.

facilement projetter

The greatest talent that Marshal Turenne had, was to repair
Marechal de reparer

soon his losses.

partie

Borneo, in the East Indies, is one of the largest islands that
grand île 2

we know.

l'on connoître

When you came in, I was speaking to the most learned and
entrant

most modest man you have ever seen.

These wines are very nice, and of an agreeable flavour.

vin 1 delicat save 2

She is by much more versed in these things than you.

versé

My

My sister is taller than you and me by an inch.

pouce 1

The more our birth raises us above other men, the more we
naissance *au dessus des autres*
 ought to humble ourselves, and the more we ought to be grate-
humilier
 ful towards God.

envers

*I shall sing so much the more willingly, as my voice can be
volontiers *voix 2*
 heard.

entendre

We are so much the less answerable for it, as we have not
responsable *en*
 received your orders.

C H A P. X.

NOUNS OF DIMENSION.

THESE Nouns of Dimension, *haut* high, *hauteur* height, *long* long, *longueur* length, *profond* deep, *profondeur* depth, *large* broad, *largeur* breadth, *rond* round, *rondeur* roundness, *gros* big, *grosseur* bigness, *épais* thick, *épaisseur* thickness, are followed by the second case, and when you use the substantives of dimension, it is better to employ the verb *avoir* than *être*, as, *le puits est profond de 16 piés*, the well is 16 feet deep; or, *le puits est de 16 piés de profondeur*, or, *le puits a 16 piés de profondeur*. In the examples, the learner may make them both with the substantive and adjective.

The ship is an hundred feet long, and 17 feet broad.

vaisseau *pié*

These walls are 35 feet high, 3 feet broad, and 300 feet long.

That

That quarry is 5 fathoms deep, and 20 feet round.

carrière 2 braies

Do you see these planks, they are 4 inches thick, 5 yards long, and 13 inches broad.

That house is 200 feet long, 80 feet broad, and 99 feet high.

C H A P. XI.

ON COLLECTIVE NOUNS.

A SUBSTANTIVE Collective Noun, although in the singular, represents to the mind many persons, or many things, either as a whole, or a part of a whole. The first may be called a general collective noun, as, *le peuple* the people, *le parlement* the parliament, *l'armée* the army.

The second may be called a partitive collective noun, as, *une partie* a part, *une troupe* a troop, or great number.

R U L E.

THE general collective Nouns, as, *peuple* people, *parlement* parliament, *armée* army, *moitié* half, *tiers* third, &c. govern the verb in the third person singular, though followed by a word in the plural number, as, *L'armée des alliés étoit défaite* the army of the allies was defeated. In this case the adjective or participle preterite must agree with these collective nouns. But when partitive collective nouns, as, *amas* heap, *faule* crowd, *nombre* number, *troupe* a great number, *partie* a part, *la plupart* the greatest part, *sorte* kind, *infinité* an infinity, *un nombre infini* an infinite number, &c. are followed by a substantive attended with an adjective or participle preterite, they require that adjective

or participle preterite to agree in gender and number with the substantive, and not with the collective noun, as, *une partie du palais fut brûlé* a part of the palace was burnt, *une troupe de gens étourdis s'y rendirent* a great number of giddy persons went thither. In short, if the noun coming after these collective nouns is in the plural, the verb must be in the plural; if in the singular, the verb must be in the singular; as, *une foule de soldats y furent tués* a vast number of soldiers were killed there. *Une infinité de monde accourut à lui*, an infinity of people ran up to him.

When the adjective, the pronoun, and verb, relate to two or more substantives of different genders, they are put in the plural and masculine. *Les boeufs mugissants et les brebis bêlantes venaient en foule*, ils ne pouvoient trouver assez d'étables pour être mis à couvert. *Le vent et la pluye étoient violents* the wind and rain were violent.

But when the adjective and pronoun come immediately after two substantives expressing things, they may agree with the last; as, *on ne trouve dans la plupart des courtisun qu'une politesse et une cordialité affectée*. *Cet acteur joue avec un goût et une noblesse charmante*, that actor plays with a charming taste and dignity.

Il y a dans la véritable vertu une candeur et une ingénuité à laquelle on ne se comprend point. *Il a les pieds et la tête nus*, his feet and head are bare.

The husband and wife ought to love one another reciprocally.

mari femme s'aimer mutuellement

You are always speaking of merit and fortune, they are very
merite & fortune

seldom united in the same person.

uni personne 2

We see merit and virtue oppressed, and we see, at the same
virtu & opprimé en même time, piety, devotion &c, and even religion &c, despised by the
tems pieté &c même méprisé par freethinkers.

esprits fort

EXERCISES ON THE

It was so cold, that all the ponds and rivers were frozen,
Il fit si froid étang 1 rivière 2 glacé

He has the half of his arm benumbed, for the most part
bras 1 engourdi la plus grande partie 2
 of the stones that fell on him were very big and heavy.
pierre 2 gros pesant

That kind of wood is strong, hard, and pithy.
espece 2 bois 1 fort dur moelleux

A great number of our wounded soldiers were destroyed by
soldat tuer
 the rapacity of the conquerors.
rapacité conquérants

We lost in that action 2 a third of our grenadiers, who would
perdre tiers 1
 not ask quarter.
quartier

When he saw a part of his house demolished, he called the
partie 2 maison 2 démolie
 troops to his help.
sécurité

The army of the allies is marching, drawn up in four co-
armée 2 rangé co.
 lumns.
lomme

A group of titles may well feed your vanity, but they will
amas 1 titre pouvoir paître vanité
 not make you better.
rendre

A great number of foot soldiers deserted in that long and
fantassins déserter dans
 painful march.
marche 2

Most people imagine that we shall succeed in the present
La plupart monde s'imaginer réussir
 undertaking.

Many people think that the French ships of war are better
Bien gens
 sailors than ours.
voilier

Before the end of the campaign, the half of the soldiers of
Avant fin 2 campagne 2 soldat
 our regiments deserted.

CHAP. XII.

SECT. I.

USE OF THE TENSES.

THE imperfect denotes, that the thing of which we speak was present in the time that another action was done. It expresses also habitual actions, or actions done in a time past, not specified; as, *elle chantoit quand il entroit*, she was singing when he was coming in; *quand j'étois à Londres j'allais tous les jours à la maison des Communes*, when I was at London I used to go every day to the House of Commons; *Henri IV. étoit un très grand prince, il aimoit son peuple*, Henry IV. was a very great prince, he loved his people.

To express the continuance of an action in English, the verb is varied in all its tenses by the participle present with the verb *to be*; as,

Pref. I am speaking.

I speak.

Imp. Pret. I was speaking,

{ I did speak.

Comp. { I have been speaking,

I spoke.

{ I had been speaking,

I have spoken,

Fut. I shall be speaking,

I had spoken.

I shall speak.

There are French grammarians who say, that the continuance of the action may be expressed sometimes by the tenses of *être*, followed by an infinitive mood preceded by the preposition *à*; but such expressions ought not to be imitated.

I am speaking, *Je suis à parler.*

I was speaking, *J'étois à parler.*

What was you doing? *Qu'est-ce que vous étiez à faire?*

I shall be doing, *Je serai à faire.*

Those

Those ways of speaking are often expressed by *on*. The college is building, *on est à bâti le collège*, for *on bâtit le collège*. *Pendant qu'on bâtissait le collège*, or, *pendant qu'on étoit à bâti le collège*, when they were building the college, or, when the college was building.

The preterite tense, as, *je fis*, *il attaqua*, *nous vendîmes*, &c. is used to denote an action entirely past, in a specified elapsed time; as, *je fis cela hier*, *il y a deux ans*, *une semaine*, *un mois*, *un an*, *deux ans*, &c. I did that yesterday, two years ago, &c.

The compound of the present, as *j'ai fait*, *il a attaqué* *nous avons vendu*, &c. is used to denote that the thing of which we have spoken was done in a period of time of which there remains some of it to run on; as, *this morning*, *this day*, *this week*, *this month*, *this year*, *this century*; as, *j'ai fait cela aujourd'hui*, *ce matin*, *cette semaine*, *ce mois*, *cette année*, &c.

It would be a fault to say, *Je reçus ce matin la visite de Monsieur votre père*, because *this morning* makes a part of a day not yet elapsed; therefore say, *J'ai reçu ce matin*, &c.

When we are speaking of any thing transacted, or of a person who lived in a time, the particular period of which is not specified, it is indifferent whether you make use of the imperfect, preterite, or compound of the present; as, *Rome étoit bâtie*, *fut bâtie*, or *a été bâtie*.

Did, with a verb, is commonly made by the compound of the present tense; as, *Pavez-vous vu*? did you see her?

Si if, is seldom used with the conditional; instead of which use the imperfect tenses. Therefore don't say, *Si je parlerois*, if I should speak; but, *Si je parlais*.

In the same way *si* seldom precedes the future tense; instead of which use the present of the indicative, except with *savoir* and *dire*; as *J'ne fais s'il viendra*. *Dites lui si vous viendrez ou non*.

The woman was sleeping when we came in; however, she
entrer *cependant*
 awoke very soon, and, knowing our intention, she dressed herself abruptly, and in her anger she broke open the door of our
s'éveiller bientôt *savoir* *s'habiller*
brusquement *colere* *2* *enfoncer* *porte*
 room, and recanted all that she said yesterday.
chambre *revoquer tout ce*

Last week I sent your answer to the King; his prime minister
Semaine *2* *envoyer* *reponse* *premier ministre*
acquainted

acquainted me this morning that the King will not receive your
mander
demission.

When he was at Paris, he went every day to the Chamber
Chambre
of accounts, and examined the charters and other papers con-
Comptes *chartres* *papier touch-*
cerning the history of France.
ant histoire

We should spare ourselves a deal of trouble if we could
s'épargner bien peine 2 pouvoir
moderate our passions.
modérer

You would have seen the King if you had come with me.
I was at the palace to-day, I was introduced to his Majesty,
palais 1 introduire Majesté 2
who received me graciously.
gracieusement

The besieged agreed to surrender, if their allies should not
assiégés convenir de se rendre alliés
appear in fifteen days, to raise the siege.
paroître en pour faire lever

Did they write these letters? Did they send them to the
minister?—No, they did not write them.
ministre

Why did not you tell me that you could not breakfast with
us?
pouvoir déjeuner

She did not sing when you was at the opera. Did not I tell
you she would not sing?
dire

Did not he say his lessons well to-day? Yes, he said them
leçons 2 Oui
very well.
très

If they will do their duty, they will be esteemed, honoured,
devoir
and respected.

Philip the Fair of France was a very amiable prince. The
Phillippe Bel aimable
misfortunes of the state tarnished the last years of his reign;
état ternir année 2 règne 1
K k H

He would have been a greater man if he had not had, for an
en
antagonist, an enemy such as Edward.

tête *tel que Edouard*
When my brother was working, one of his school fellows
travailler *camarade d'école*
came in and interrupted him.

entrer What was you doing when the scholars made all that uproar?
L'avois *tapage* 1

Now that the College is building, come, Gentlemen, shew
à présent que *allons, Messieurs, montrer*
yourselves generous. Contribute your mite to finish a building
généreux *pour* *édifice* 1
of such an utility.

d'une telle utilité 2 Whilst I shall be writing the letters to Rome, step into the
entrer dans
dining-room, and pack up these linens, these clothes, and these
salle à manger *empaquetter* *linge* *hardes*
books in the trunk.
malle 2

S E C T. II.

ON THE USE OF MOODS.

1^{mo}, **W**HEN *que*, that, comes after a verb of *affirming, declar-*
ing, saying, believing, hearing, knowing, hoping,
reckoning, swearing, maintaining, or any verb that denotes any
thing certain or positive, the following verb must be in the indica-
tive mood; as, *Je sais qu'il viendra*, I know that he will come.
Je dis qu'il a parlé, I say that he has spoken. *Vous croyez que*
nous serons renvoyés, You believe that we shall be dismissed.

2^{do}, The above verbs, or those conveying the same meaning,
used in questions, or attended with the negative, govern the
subjunctive

subjunctive mood; as, *Croyez-vous que nous ayons la paix?* Do you believe that we shall have peace? *Je ne dis pas qu'il ait parlé,* I do not say that he has spoken. *Je n'espère pas qu'il vienne,* I do not hope that he will come.

3to, *Dire, prétendre,* in the sense of *advising, commanding, govern* the subjunctive mood; as, *Je prétends que vous y alliez,* My intention is that you shall go thither. *Dites qu'on m'attende,* Bid them wait for me.

4to, The verb is put in the subjunctive mood after these conjunctions, in pages 128 and 129, *afin que, pour que, avant que, sans que, quoique, bien que, supposez que, au cas que, en cas que, pourvu que, &c. à moins que* unless, *de crainte que, de peur que,* for fear, lest. These three last take the negative *ne* with *que,* as also all verbs of fear, and *douter* to doubt, with a negative, and they govern the subjunctive mood; but the *ne* does not convey a negative sense; as, *afin que nous soyons heureux,* That or to the end that we may be happy. *Quoique nous fussions absents,* Though we were absent. *A moins que vous ne soyez débarqué,* Unless you be landed. *De peur que vous ne fassiez cela.* Lest you should do that. *Je crains qu'il ne vienne,* I am afraid that he will come. *Je ne doute pas que vous ne soyez récompensé,* I do not doubt but you will be rewarded.

If the verb that comes after a verb of fear be attended with a negative in English, both *ne* and *pas* are used in French; as *I am afraid that my wife will not die,* *je crains que ma femme ne meure pas.* Verbs of fear attended with *ne, pas* or *point,* govern the following verb in the subjunctive mood without *ne*, as, *je ne crains pas que je sois blâmé,* I am not afraid that I shall be blamed.

5to, Verbs of *admiring, asking, beseeching, being glad, sorry, commanding, doubting, fearing, denying, grudging, hindering, permitting, prohibiting, rejoicing, surprise, willing, wishing, wondering,* and all verbs denoting *ignorance, intention, affection, desire, passion, and sentiment,* govern the verb in the subjunctive mood with *que,* as, *Je suis surpris qu'on le fasse,* I am surprised that one does it, or, that it is done. *Est-il sûr qu'il soit vendu?* Is it certain that he is come? *Je doute que vous le fassiez,* I doubt whether you will do it. *Je souhaite que vous réussissiez,* I wish that you may succeed. *Je veux que vous écriviez,* I will have you write. *Mon intention est, qu'il le fasse,* My intention, or my desire is that he shall do it.

6to, *Que* governs the subjunctive mood when it stands for *si,* *à moins que, sans que, fait que;* but in the sense of *à moins que* and *sans*

sans que, the que is attended with *ne*, as, *Si vous êtes sage et que vous vous comportiez bien*, if you are good and behave properly. *Il ne fauroit parler qu'il ne dise quelque sottise*, He cannot open his mouth without saying some impudent thing. *Qu'il dorme, qu'il veille, il roule toujours les yeux*, Whether he sleeps, whether he wakes, he rolls always his eyes.

7mo, The relatives *qui*, *que*, *dont*, *lequel*, govern the subjunctive mood; 1mo, When they are preceded by a superlative, relative, or an interrogation. 2d, When, by the verb after the relative, we want to express a *wish*, a *condition*, or any thing *dubious*, or that may happen; as, *Le plus brave soldat que je connoisse*; The bravest soldier I know. *Vous ne trouvez personne sur qui vous puissiez compter*, You find nobody on whom you can rely. *Quel est le philosophe qui soit sûr de ses principes?* Who is the philosopher who is sure of his principles?

8vo, If verbs of *commanding*, *ordering*, have a noun or pronoun in the third case, they should govern the verb in the infinitive mood; as, *J'ai ordonné au sergent d'y aller*, and not *qu'il y aille*, I have ordered the serjeant to go thither.

9no, In sentences of *wishing*, the present of the subjunctive may be used without *que?* as, *puissiez-vous regner long tems*, may you reign a long time; *fasse le ciel que vous soyez heureux*, may heaven grant you be happy; *Dieu m'en garde*, God preserve me from it! We say too, *pas que je sache*, *non pas que je sache*, not that I know; putting *savoir* in the subjunctive mood, without being governed by any verb.

10mo, Though in number 7mo, it is said, that *qui* governs the subjunctive mood, yet, if it denotes no *wish* or *desire*, the verb coming after it is in the indicative; as, *je plains une femme qui a un mauvais mari*, I pity a woman who has a bad husband.

In case the first verb of a period is preceded by *si* if, and the second by *que*, the second verb is put in the subjunctive mood; as, *s'il rapporte que nous ayons tort*, if he should report that we are in the wrong.

In short, the verb is put in the subjunctive mood in French, when the leading verb in the sentence denotes a *doubt* or *wish*, without mentioning or hinting absolutely that the matter of which we are speaking, *is*, *was*, *has been*, *will be*, *would be*, or *would have been*.

The subjunctive mood is used in certain elliptical sentences; as, *Ecrive qui voudra*, Write who will.

Ecrive

Ecrive qui voudra ; chacun à ce métier,
Peut perdre impunément de l'encre et du papier.

Rule to know which of the Tenses of the Subjunctive to use.

When the first verb is in the present or future, the one that comes after *que* is put in the present of the subjunctive mood, if you want to express a present or future; and in the preterite if you want to express a time past.

The spy affirmed that he had been in the enemy's camp, that
espion
he had seen every thing in confusion; therefore we hoped that
en c'est pourquoi
we should have attacked the enemy.

The judges maintain that they have acted according to the
letter of the law; and they are certain that no body can blame
them.

These women swore that they had been robbed and ill-used
by that man on the high way; he pretends that he was in his
own house the whole day, and that he could not commit the
action.

Do you pretend to say that I have robbed you? Do you
think that the judges will believe you in court?
en justice

'Do you assure me that he will come to-day ?
Do you believe that we shall have war in the heart of our
au cœur
country ? No, I don't believe the enemies will land or fight.

patrie *debarquer* *se battre*
Do you know whether she is recovered of her ailment?
savoir que *indisposition*
The king's intention is, that you shall go there to-morrow.
préten dre *demain* *Before*

EXERCISES ON THE

Before we undertake any thing, let us begin by supplicating
entreprendre quelque chose *par prier*
 God that he may bleſs our work.

" *pour qu'il ouvrage*
 Unless you help me I am ruined; but, lest you think that I
 am deceiving you, speak to your brother.

I am afraid she will die before I can see her; but you are
craindre mourir
 afraid that ſhe will not die.

I will have you write these letters to the Ambassador; tell him
vouloir que ambassadeur lui
 that I am ſurprized that he did not give an anſwer to my letter.
faire réponse à

I wish he would come and allow me to go to England.
souhaiter permettre

They doubt not but we ſhall gain the victory.
victoire à

I rejoice that ſhe has heard the good news of her brother's
Se rejouir apprendre
 recovery.

établissement à

Whether he writes, or whether he does not write, I care
Que se
 not.

soucier

If the news be true, and if we ſucceed in the expedition, the
que réussir
 war will be ſoon finished.

If you read history, and look for a prince equally favoured
chercher favorisé
 and persecuted by fortune, you will find him in the person of
de la

the Emperor Henry IV.

He is ſuch a great booby that he cannot open his mouth,
C'est un si grand bénit la
 but he betrays himſelf.
que ne trahir

Do you know no body who can and is willing to lend you
 the money.

She was ſo unfortunate that ſhe could find no body on whom
malheureux

she

she could depend, and from whom she had any room to expect
compter *lieu de attendre*
assistance.

May she be happy, may she soon find a husband worthy of
her.

You wonder, you say, that we have not written to you yet ;
s'étonner
but I was wondering that you did not write to me.

She denied that she had been in town.
nier

I know she was here ; but she was afraid lest we should have
discovered her.

I know that he is the most revengeful and most barbarous
savoir *vindicatif*
mortal that Sicily has ever produced.

mortel *Sicile* 2 *jamais produire*

There is no man, whatever merit he has, but who would be
Il n'est point d' *quelque* *qui ne*
greatly mortified, if he knew all that people think of him.
très mortifié *on* *de lui*

There is nothing but death, that can separate us.

Il n'y a rien *que mort* 2 *pouvoir séparer*

SECT. III.

1mo, **T**HE following impersonal verbs, and *il est* attended with adjectives of *certainty*, govern the verb that follows in the indicative mood ; but if they denote any *uncertainty* or *doubt*, which is the case if they were used in questions, they govern the subjunctive mood ; as, *Il est vrai qu'il est mort.* *Est-il vrai qu'il soit mort?*

Il semble it seems, *il y a lieu* there is room, *il paroit* it appears, *il est constant* it is constant, *il est clair* it is clear, *il est visible* it is visible, *il est sur* it is sure, *il est averé* it is averred, &c.

Il semble que, not attended with a pronoun or noun, seems to imply a kind of *doubt*, and has the subjunctive after it ; as, *il semble qu'on vous ait trompé*, it seems you have been deceived.

2do, These impersonal verbs, and *il est* attended by these adjectives, govern the subjunctive mood.

EXERCISES ON THE

| | |
|--|---|
| <i>Il convient, it is meet.</i> | <i>Il est beau, it is fine.</i> |
| <i>Il importe, it is of importance.</i> | <i>Il est triste, it is sad.</i> |
| <i>Il n'y a pas moyen, there is no possibility.</i> | <i>Il est impossible, it is impossible.</i> |
| <i>Il y a de l'honneur, there is honour, credit.</i> | <i>Il est chagrinant, it is vexatious.</i> |
| <i>Il y a du deshonneur, there is a discredit.</i> | <i>Il est juste, it is just.</i> |
| <i>Il est à propos, it is fit.</i> | <i>Il est honteux, it is shameful.</i> |
| <i>Il est nécessaire, it is necessary.</i> | <i>Il est important, it is of importance.</i> |
| <i>Il est surprenant, it is surprising.</i> | <i>Il est dur, it is hard.</i> |
| <i>Il est bienfaisant, it is fitting.</i> | <i>Il est douloureux, it is grievous.</i> |
| | <i>Il est étonnant, it is astonishing,</i> |
| | <i>&c.</i> |

Il est, with any of these adjectives followed by an infinitive, requires *de* before the infinitive; as, *il est triste d'être sans pain.* *It is*, followed by any of these adjectives, may be made by *c'est une chose*; but, if followed by an infinitive, *que de* precede it; as, *c'est une chose triste que d'être sans pain.*

It is very certain that we have had a long and severe winter;
rude hiver 1
it seems to me that you do not think so, you who are accustomed to colder climates.

climat 1

It appears now that we shall lose our law suit; all the judges
procès
are against us.

It is sure that parentheses in verses ought to be very short;
parenthèses 2 en vers devoir court
nay, they have not a good effect in prose.

même effet 1

It would seem to the Asiatics, that in Britain there is a
Asiatique Grande Bretagne il regne,
perpetual winter.

Does it seem to you that we have had an intention to blacken
avoir envie de noircir
your character.

caractère

It is surprising that you have not read the Roman History;
Romain Histoire 2
If you had read it, you would have known that Rome 2 was
savoir governed

governed first by Kings, then by consuls, and at last by Emperors.
d'abord par puis enfin

It is most important that an historian should tell the truth :
historien dire vérité

It is a shameful thing to sacrifice it, to please the prince who
honteux sacrifier contenter
 reigns.

It is hard that an author should be starving whilst the book-sellers are enriching themselves with his labours.
dur auteur mourir de faim tandis que libraire s'enrichir de travail

It is proper, or fit, that you should take your measures well,
à propos mesure
 for it would be cruel to be ill used a second time.

mal traité fois 2
 It is impossible that a person can teach well the French language,
Il est impossible enseigner langue
 without having been many years in France. Will a
gue 2 sans

tour to the continent i for a few months make him master of
tour 1 rendre

the harmonious sounds, the idioms, and the niceties of a language
harmonieux son idiomes delicate
 which is now-a-days spoken so universally?
aujourd'hui se parle universellement

It is astonishing that fathers and mothers should allow themselves to be imposed upon by people who recommend teachers
Il est étonnant se laisser imposer gens recommander maître
 who have but a very slight smattering of French.
ne que léger tenue 2

It would be of the utmost importance for the good of Society, that the magistrates of every town would not allow persons
Il ferait très important bien Société 2 magistrats
 to teach sciences and arts in their communities, unless they
communauté
 be previously examined by judges the most disinterested, and
auparavant examiner juges désintéressé
 the most competent that can be found.
qu'on puisse

C H A P. XIII.

GOVERNMENT OF VERBS.

S E C T. I.

THE following verbs require the nouns that come after them to be in the genitive or second case, though perhaps many of them have not the sign of the English genitive, *of, from, by, with*.

The signs of the genitive in French are *du, de la, de l', des, de*; *as, abuser de la fortune* to abuse fortune, *medire de moi* to slander me, *jouir d'un bien* to enjoy an estate, *les honneurs dont ils jouissent* the honours that they enjoy, &c.

Abuser to deceive, governs the accusative or fourth case.

| | |
|---|---|
| <i>Abuser, to abuse.</i> | <i>s'indigner, to be provoked.</i> |
| <i>s'abstenir, to abstain.</i> | <i>se mêler, to middle with.</i> |
| <i>s'accorder, to put up with,</i> <i>and accommodate one's self with.</i> | <i>médire, to slander.</i> |
| <i>s'appercevoir, to perceive.</i> | <i>manquer, to want.</i> |
| <i>s'attrister, to be grieved.</i> | <i>se moquer, to mock, laugh at.</i> |
| <i>avoir pitié, to have pity.</i> | <i>se plaindre, to complain.</i> |
| <i>s'aviser, to bethink.</i> | <i>se retracter, to recant.</i> |
| <i>se consoler, to be consoled.</i> | <i>rire, to laugh.</i> |
| <i>se contenter, to be contented.</i> | <i>se repentir, to repent.</i> |
| <i>convenir, to agree.</i> | <i>se ressouvenir, to recollect.</i> |
| <i>se defier, to distrust.</i> | <i>se saisir, to seize upon.</i> |
| <i>se demettre, to resign.</i> | <i>se servir, to make use.</i> |
| <i>s'emparer, to take possession.</i> | <i>se scandaliser, to be scandalized.</i> |
| <i>s'ennuyer, to be tired.</i> | <i>se soucier, to care for.</i> |
| <i>se garder, to take heed.</i> | <i>se souvenir, to remember.</i> |
| <i>jouir, to enjoy.</i> | <i>user, to use.</i> |
| <i>s'informer, to inquire after.</i> | <i>se vanter, to brag.</i> |
| | <i>faire gloire, to glory.</i> |

A prince abuses his power when he makes use of it to oppress
abusér pouvoir 1 se servir pour opprimer
 his people.

I am not to be deceived by flattering promises.

on abuser par flatteur promesses 2

We find at each sin that we commit, an interior warning to
sentir à péché avis
 abstain from it.

We thought of those devices that you might desist from the
S'avisér stratagème afin que se désister
 undertaking.

We perceived his malice, and we were grieved in such a
s'apercevoir malice 2 s'attrister de telle
 manner, that we did not enjoy a moment's rest the whole day.
sorte jouir moment 1 repos journée 2

I shall resign my office, if you retract what you said yesterday
Se demettre se retraiter ce que
 of me.

Have no fear, these women will not slander you or me.
peur

A courtier took it into his head to say to one of the Kings of
courtisan s'aviser
 France, that his Majesty ought to resent an injury that was done
Majené 2 devroit ressentir injure 2
 to him when he was only Duke of Orleans. No, no, said the
ne que Duc
 King ; the King of France does not remember the injuries done
se ressouvenir

to the Duke of Orleans.

We laugh at these threats, they will do us no harm, as you
se moquer ménaces 2 mal
 cannot put them into execution.

The fortune that the Earl of B. enjoys will revert to your
bien 1 Comte revenir
 cousin's family.

You ought to care for the education of your sister's children.
se soucier enfant

They and we have inquired after the first ship that goes to
Eux s'informer vaiffeau 1
 Ostend.

Ostend in Austrian Flanders, and have agreed about the price
Flandre Autrichienne *convenir* *prix.* 1
 of the passage and provisions.

People made use of the bark of trees, before the invention of
On *se servir* *écorce*
 paper.

SECT. II.

THE following verbs require the noun or pronoun governed by them, to be in the dative case. The signs of the dative are, *au*, *à la*, *à P.*, *aux*, *à*, and *à du*, *à de la*, *à de l'*, *à des*, *à de*, for the partitive article.

Applaudir, to applaud
s'attacher, to apply
s'attendre, to expect
condescendre, to comply
contrevenir, to act contrary to
 orders
compâtir, to sympathise
deplaire, to displease
s'exposer, to expose
insulter, to insult
manquer, to fail
nuire, to hurt
obéir, to obey
songer, to think on a thing

obvier, to obviate
pardonner, to forgive
penfer, to think on a thing
plaire, to please
pourvoir, to provide
parvenir, to arrive at, to get
renoncer, to renounce
ressembler, to be like
se fier, to trust
satisfaire, to satisfy
subvenir, to relieve
survivre, to outlive
tendre, to tend, &c.

EXAMPLES.

Applaudir à un poète
Plaire au Roi

Nuire à la patrie
Pardonner à l'ennemi.

Satisfaire, when it signifies to be bound, to be obligated, governs the dative; but if it means to content, to gratify, it governs the accusative; as, *satisfaire à ses créanciers*, to satisfy his creditors; *satisfaire ses passions*, to gratify his passions.

Who

Who can applaud an author who displeases all those who have the least tincture of learning?

teinture 2 erudition

Let us sympathise with the poverty of our old partner; he
compatisir *pauvreté 2 ancien associé*
 hurt our trade indeed, and though we have got a great for-
nuire commerce *parvenir gros*
 tune 2, we ought not to insult over the distresses of others.
insulter malheur 1 autrui

We shall comply with the will of our superiors, we shall not
condescendre volonté 2 supérieur
 displease them. Moreover, we shall renounce our right rather
deplaire de plus renoncer droit plutôt
 than to fail in our duty.
que de manquer devoir

Obey the laws of your country, obey your King and Magis-
Obeir loix
 strates, forgive your enemies, relieve the needy, hurt nobody.
subvenir nécessiteux

If the son outlive the father, he may expect to have the regi-
survivre peut s'attendre
 ment.

Kings are like pieces of money, we are obliged to receive
ressembler monnaie forcé de
 them according to their currency, and not according to their
selon écu non pas
 true value?
valeur 2

If you will do me the honour to come to my house, I shall
vouloir bien de chez moi
 obviate all the objections 2.
obvier

Do not trust that man, he is not your friend. I never will
 trust him.

I have failed in my duty, I shall lose my commission 2. What
manquer devoir 1
 shall I do? To whom shall I apply for protection?

When these ladies came in, I was thinking on the proposals
entrer propositions 2
 that were offered to us by the bankrupts.
offert banqueroutier

EXERCISES ON THE

SECT. III.

On verbs of taking away, &c.

| | |
|---|--|
| Attracher, to pull out, tear from enlever, } to carry off, to take emporter, } from anybody by force dérober, } to steal from, to rob vôler, } prendre, to take from prendre, to take from interdire, to forbid | échapper, to escape from ravir, to snatch, wrest from cacher, to conceal from demander, to ask of ôter, to take away, &c. defendre, to forbid disputer, to contend with. |
|---|--|

R U L E.

A noun substantive coming after the above, or like verbs, is put in the dative in French; as,

Le Roi a ôté à l'officier l'emploi, the King has taken from the officer the employment.

Il l'a enlevé à l'ennemi, he has taken it from the enemy.
Il le demandera au Roi, he will ask it of the King.

The pronouns *me*, *thee*, *us*, *you*, *him*, *her*, *them*, coming in English after the above or like verbs, are translated by the conjunctive pronouns, *me*, *te*, *nous*, *vous*, *lui*, and *leur*; as,

Il leur demandera pardon, he will ask pardon of them.

Il lui interdira sa maison, he will forbid him or her his house.

Je lui ôterai les gants, I shall take from him or her the gloves.

The King's officers have taken from the smugglers the goods contrebandier
that were on board of these ships that you see in the road.
à bord de rade 2

That proceeding of the Parliament would have taken from the
procédé 1 Parlement 1 ôter
court of justice the authority that was necessary to its dignity.
cour 2 dignité 2 The

The King took from the Colonel the regiment 1, because he
éter
voted against the court measures. (Turn, *measures of the court.*)
The judges don't think that it is possible to draw the secrets 1
d'arracher
from the criminals.
criminel

The English could easily take at present Martinico and Gu-
facilement enlever *Martinique*
daloupe from the French.

The Dutch having escaped from the tyranny of their old
s'échapper *tyrannie 2*
masters, formed a navy that made Spain tremble.
marine 2

The Spanish ships of war took every thing from these English
tout
vessels that were trading at Nootka, and forbade them to appear
trafiquer
in those latitudes..

parages
She told me that if I concealed the truth from her, she
cacher *vérité 2*
would punish me. I then asked of her, if her intention was to
faire punir *puis*
take my employment from me.

I felt so much pain that I sent for a dentist who pulled from
douleur *faire venir dentiste* *arracher*
me three teeth.

Ask of your master if he chooses to breakfast; the tea is
souhaiter *dejeuner* *thé 1*
ready; I have put the rolls and butter upon the table 2. Pray,
petit pain 1 *beurre 1* *je vous prie*
ask of him, if he expects more company.
attendre *monde 1*

The courtiers generally conceal the truth from the King and
Queen.

These authors behaved so ill that I forbade them admission-
auteur comporter si mal
to my house.

Edward III. King of England, after the death of Charles le
Bel, said that no body could contend with him for the regency
regence 2
of

of the kingdom of France ; he was however excluded from it.
cependant exodus

en

SECT. IV.

On par, de, pour, before the infinitive.

PAR by, is generally used after the passive verb ; *du, de la, de l', des, de* may be used when we speak of the inward sentiments of the mind ; as, *il a été frappé par ses domestiques*, he has been struck by his men servants ; *elle est favorisée du Roi*, she is favoured by the King.

1^{mo}, The participle present in English, preceded by these prepositions *of, from, with*, is made in French by the infinitive, attended by *de, as, l'art d'écrire*, the art of writing.

2^{do}, *In, to, at*, before the participle present in English, are made by *à* before the infinitive ; as, *vous êtes occupé à lire*, you are busy in reading.

3^{tio}, *For* before the participle present, is made by *pour* ; as, *elle a été louée pour avoir dit la vérité*, she has been praised for having told the truth.

He was attacked by robbers, and was beaten by them very severely.
attaquer voleurs

The generals were esteemed by the whole army, but they are hated by the nation.
*estimé armée z
detester*

I shall hinder you from going to Italy, because you have never defrauded me of more funds than I have.
*empêcher Italie
se dérober de tirer fonds*

We shall be far from scolding you, but we are only tired with exhorting you so often to do your tasks,
*Se garder de gronder je lasser
ac exhorter si souvent à devoir They*

They have been busy in studying navigation *à*, history, and
occupé étudier
 fortification.

We have spent too much time in reading romances, periodi-
passer romans péri-
 cal performances, and the like trifling things.
dique ouvrages tel fatras I

These snarlers will be fined for having published these pam-
frondeur mettre à l'amende
 phlets against the members of Parliament.
membre

No preposition, except *en*, governs the verb in the participle
 present; therefore say, *après avoir* after having, *sans dire* without
 saying, and never *après ayant, sans disant*.

SECT. V.

On de before the Infinitive.

THE following verbs govern the verb that follows them in
 the infinitive, with *de*.

Apprehender, to fear
assurer, to assure
blamer, to blame
cesser, to cease
charger, to charge
commander, to command
convaincre, to convince
craindre, to fear
defendre, to forbid
desespérer, to despair
dispenser, to dispense
espérer, to hope
essayer, to try

louer, to praise
mander, to acquaint, to send word
manquer, to fail
meriter, to deserve
negliger, to neglect
ordonner, to order
permettre, to permit, allow
persuader, to persuade
prescrire, to prescribe
presser, to press
prier, to pray
promettre, to promise

EXERCISES ON THE

| | |
|--|-------------------------------|
| <i>excuser, to excuse</i> | <i>protester, to protest</i> |
| <i>exempter, to exempt</i> | <i>refuser, to refuse</i> |
| <i>feindre, to feign</i> | <i>remercier, to thank</i> |
| <i>se flatter, to flatter one's self</i> | <i>se repentir, to repent</i> |
| <i>jurer, to swear</i> | <i>souffrir, to suffer</i> |

Commencer to begin, contraindre to constrain, continuer to continue, discontinuer to discontinue, s'efforcer to endeavour, essayer to try, take after them before the infinitive à or de.

We are afraid to send these cargoes from Cape François to appreender *cargaison* Cap I à St Eustatia in neutral vessels.

Eustache neutre

If you promise to write to me from Montpelier, and desire promettre *prier* me to honour your drafts, I will not fail to correspond with faire honneur à *traites manquer* you.

I hope to have the honour of seeing you very soon in England, and to tell you that I shall continue to be your most humble servant.

Do you advise me to send word to him that we shall allow conseiller *mander permettre* him to protest the bill.

lui protester lettre 2 de change

We don't flatter ourselves to have deserved your protection; se flatter *meriter* but we have attempted to please you, and never have ceased to essayer *cesser* anticipate your least desires.

prevenir moindre

Now we begin to understand a little the rules of the French comprendre

grammar, we do despair to make progress in it, since our grammaire 2 *desesperer progrés y puisque* master will neglect nothing to explain all the difficulties.

neglier pour difficulté 2

The officers refused to accept the terms that the besiegers condition 2 *affiegeant* offered them, and they will continue to persist in their design affrir *leur persister* of defending themselves.

As soon as you are at Pisa, I beg of you to observe the
Aussitôt que *Pise* *vous*
 tower of the cathedral, which is very high, and is built on
tour 2 *cathédrale 2* *élevé*
 purpose, in such a manner, that it inclines sensibly.
expès *d'une façon* *pencher sensiblement*

The King orders you to join your regiment, as he will not
ordonner
 allow any officer to be absent, therefore don't delay to set out
souffrir *c'est pourquoi* *differer*
 when you have received the present.
aurez *présente 2*

One of the maritime powers has resolved to defend the ho-
puissance
 nour of her insulted flag.
pavillon 1

SECT. VI.

On à before the Infinitive.

THE following verbs govern the verbs that come after them
 in the infinitive with à.

admettre, *to admit*
 apprendre, *to learn*
 s'attacher, *to apply to*
 autoriser, *to authorise*
 avoir, *to have*
 chercher, *to seek*
 condamner, *to condemn*
 consister, *to consist*
 convier, *to invite*
 demeurer, *to remain*
 dépenser, *to spend*
 destiner, *to design*

dispenser, *to dispense*
 donner, *to give*
 dresser, *to erect*
 engager, *to engage*
 être, *to be*
 exciter, *to excite*
 inciter, *to incite*
 incliner, *to incline*
 inviter, *to invite*
 préparer, *to prepare*
 porter, *to induce*

Les

Let us apply to study our bad inclinations 2, and to correct
s'attacher *corriger*
them.

We have to tell you that we authorised you to sell these
lawns.
linon

I do not seek to give you any uneasiness; on the contrary, I
chercher *peine 2 au contraire*
am inclined to dispense you from paying the debt.
porté *de* *dette 2*

We gave him to understand that we had invited your friend
entendre
to dine with us to morrow.

Your honour consists in treating the enemy as you would
honneur *traiter*
treat your own soldiers.

We have engaged to give a supper to three courtiers, and
s'engager *donner à souper* *courtisan*
we invite you to be of the party. Be so good as to prepare
partie 2 *Ayez la bonté de*
yourself to be with us about nine o'clock.
heure

Many of our English nobility spend very great sums in tra-
seigneurs dépenser *sommes 2 voy-*
velling, they are apt to fall into all kind of extravagance, you
ager *porter à se jeter* *forte 2*
have a striking instance of this in the *Quinzaine Angloise.*
frapant exemple 1

SECT. VII.

On pour before the Infinitive.

WE have said before, that *for*, with a participle present, is often made by *pour* preceding an infinitive.

When the expression, *to*, before an infinitive, has the sense of *in order to*, with a sign to, to the end, because, it may be made by *pour*

pour, or afin de. *Pour* is generally used after *trop* too much, too many, *assez* enough, sufficient, &c.

To gain your heart, and to please your beautiful eyes, I
mériter
 have made war with kings, I should have made war with the
faire guerre aux
 Gods.

Henry the Great did not live long enough to put the fi.
Henri *assez long temps* *der-*
 nishing hand to all his great projects.
nier main 2 *projet 1*

God has given us laws to make us holy and happy; but how
tendre
 do we observe them?

Our enemies are too much on their guard to gain a complete victory over them.

A great number of unfociable and useless scholars neglect
nombre 2 *infociable inutile savant*
 the study of their own language to know imperfectly the ancient
étude propre
 tongues.

SECT. VIII.

On Verbs having no Preposition before the Infinitive.

IT is a general rule in grammar, that when two verbs come together, the last is put in the infinitive. The following verbs govern the verbs that come after them in the infinitive, and are not preceded with *de*, *à*, or *pour*.

affirmer, to affirm
aller, to go
appercevoir, to perceive
assurer, to assure
avouer, to own

devoir, to owe
épier, to spy
écoutier, to hear, listen
entendre, to hear
espérer, to hope
confesser,

EXERCISES ON THE

confesser, to confess
 compter, to reckon
 croire, to believe
 déclarer, to declare
 déposer, to depose
 désirer, to desire
 rapporter, to report
 reconnoître, to acknowledge
 prétendre, to pretend

faire, to do
 laisser, to let, leave
 observer, to observe
 oser, to dare
 paroître, to appear
 penser, to think
 regarder, to look
 sembler, to seem.
 pouvoir, to be able

Dire, desirer, souhaiter; have sometimes *de* after them, before the next infinitive. *Venir* has *à* after it in the sense of *happening, falling out*; as, *s'il vient à me blesser*, if he should happen to wound me; and it is followed by *de*, when it denotes something *newly or lately done*; as, *je viens de dîner*, I have just dined.

You are going to ruin yourselves by engaging in a war which
en s'engager
 is not just, and which is not necessary.

I am bold to tell you that you are in the wrong to displease
ôir *avoir* *tort* *de*
 me.

We acknowledge to have received¹ from you L. 30, as the
reconnoître
 rent of the house you possessed, from Martinmas to Candlemas,
loyer 1 *la St Martin Chandeleur* 2

If you reckon to defeat the enemy by this stratagem, you are
compter *défaire* *stratagème* 1
 greatly mistaken.

Do you observe her coming? No she cannot come to-day, she will come to-morrow at four o'clock.

We hope to be able to go abroad next week.

You shall see me dressed genteelly, for I have bespoken a new
équipé comme il faut *faire faire*
 suit of cloaths.
habit 1 *neuf*

He seems to have done the deed on purpose, he dares not
paroître *le coup à dessein*
 disown it.
desavouer

Yesterday I heard him say that he would do it,
entendre

Let him speak, we shall see what he means. I mean that the
Laïsser *ce que vouloir dire*
 gentleman of whom you are speaking, is my father, and I hope
 to be able to shew it by the most convincing proofs.
démontrer *convaincant preuve 2*

If the master should happen to scold me, what shall I say ? I
gronder
 have been so idle.

The King has just now honoured me with a commission. I
honoré
 am very much obliged to him for that mark of distinction,
redevable *de marque 2*

C H A P. XIV.

ON THE PARTICIPLES.

THE participle present in French, which always ends in *ant*,
 is indeclinable, that is to say, is not susceptible of gender
 and number; or, in other words, it has neither a feminine nor
 a plural termination; as,

Une femme craignant Dieu,
A woman fearing God.

Des hommes espérant en Dieu,
Men hoping in God.

In this style, this participle has a feminine and plural termination; as, *la requête tendante à prier sa Majesté*, the petition tending to beseech his Majesty, &c.

Participle Preterite.

RULE I.

The participle preterite, as, *bâti* built, *aimé* loved, &c. is indeclinable with *avoir*; as,

Elle a bâti,
She has built.

Elles ont aimé,
They have loved.

RULE II.

It is declinable, viz susceptible of gender and number with *être*; but *été* been is always indeclinable.

La maison est bâtie,
The house is built.

Les maisons seront bâties,
The houses will be built.

L'homme est aimé,
The man is loved.

Les dames ont été aimées,
The ladies have been loved.

RULE III.

The following conjunctive pronouns, being in the accusative case, make the participle preterite joined to *avoir* or *être* in a compound tense declinable, i. e. require it to agree in gender and number with them.

Accusatives.

Me, or m' before a vowel, *me, myself.*
te, or t' before a vowel, *thee, thyself.*

Accusatives

Accusatives.

se or s' before a vowel, himself, herself, itself, one's self, themselves.

nous us, ourselves.

vous you, yourself, yourselves.

que whom, that, which.

m. quel, quels }
f. quelle, quelles } what, in questions.

Examples.

Il m'a aimé

He has loved me (m.)

Il t'a vue

He has seen t^e. (f.)

Elle nous a aimés (m.)

She has loved us

Elle vous a vu (m.)

She has seen you

Elle vous a vue (f.)

She has seen you

La lettre que j'ai reçue, je l'ai donnée au Roi

The letter that I have received I have given it to the King.

Quels livres avez-vous lus ?

What books have you read ?

Mon mari m'a aimée

My husband has loved me

Ton mari t'a aimée,

Thy husband has loved thee

Nos maris nous ont aimées

Our husbands have loved us

Elle vous a vus (m.), plural

She has seen you

Elle vous a vues (f.) plural

She has seen you

Quelles lettres avez-vous écrites ?

What letters have you written ?

RULE IV.

The following pronouns being in the dative case before the compound tense, used either with *avoir* or *être*, make the participle preterite of that compound tense indeclinable.

Datives known by *to*.

Me or m', to me, to myself

te or t', to thee, to thyself

se or s', to himself, to herself, to itself, to one's self, to themselves.

N n

Datives

Datives known by *to*. -

nous, to us, to ourselves

vous, to you, to yourself, to yourselves

Elle se feroit fait

She would have done to herself

Nous nous ferions fait

We should have done to ourselves

Elles nous ont donné

They have given to us

Vous vous êtes imaginé

You have fancied to yourself

Elles se sont imaginé

They have fancied to themselves

Ils nous ont donné les bagues

They have given to us the rings

But if *que* whom, that which, and *quel* what? precede these datives, the participle preterite must be of the same gender and number as the noun to which *que* and *quel* relate; as,

La plume que nous vous avons taillée
The pen that we have made to you

Quelles plumes nous avez-vous taillées?
What pens have you made to us?

RULE V.

When the participle preterite is followed by a verb in the *infinitive mood*, the scholar ought to think well which of the two governs the pronouns *que*, *le*, *la*, *les*, *me*, *te*, *se*, *nous*, *vous*, in the accusative case.

If it be the compound tense, then its participle preterite must be *declinable*.

If it be the *infinitive mood*, the participle preterite is *indeclinable*.

Examples

Je l'ai vue peindre

I have seen her painting.

On l'a laissée mourir

They have let her die.

Elle s'est laissée mourir

She has let herself die.

Je l'ai vu peindre,
I have seen her picture drawn.

Je les ai fait peindre à l'âge de six ans,
I have got their pictures drawn when they were six years old.

La maison que j'ai fait bâtir,
The house that I have got built.

In the three first examples, it is the compound tense that governs the pronouns ; in the three last, the infinitives *peindre* and *bâtir* govern them.

RULE VI.

THE participle is *indeclinable* when it is followed by *que* ; as,

Les navires qu'il a cru que nous fussions construire,
The ships that he thought that we were building.

The participles in the compound tenses of impersonal verbs are *indeclinable* ; as, *les chaleurs qu'il a fait*, the heats that have been ; *la disette qu'il y a eu*, the scarcity that has been.

Voulu from *vouloir*, *pu* from *pouvoir*, *du* from *devoir*, are indeclinable ; because after them there is an infinitive expressed or understood ; as, *Je vous ai montré toutes les curiosités que j'ai du*, I have shewn you all the curiosities that I ought ; the verb *montrer* being understood.

These participles preterite, *craint* feared, *fui* avoided, and *plaint* pitied, are indeclinable with *avoir* in the compound tenses. We cannot say, *La femme que j'ai crainte*, The woman whom I feared. *La Reine que nous avons plainte*, The Queen whom we have pitied. *Les maladies que vous avez fuites*, The diseases that you have avoided. Say, *La femme que j'ai apprehendée*. *La Reine dont nous avons plaint le sort*, The Queen whose lot we have pitied. *Les maladies que nous avons évitées*.

She has sent to us the gloves, and we have given them to the women.

Rome.

Rome 2 having been taken by the Gauls, was sacked and
Gaulois *lacagé*
 reduced to ashes.

redit en cendres

Geography and chronology being the two eyes of history,
Geographie 2 *chronologie* 2 *histoire* 2
 to study well the latter, one must be guided by the former,
pour étudier *celui-ci* *il faut être* *celui-là*

Beautiful things have need to be well written, as precious
Beau *chose* 2 *avoir besoin de* *écrire* *précieux*
 stones to be well set.

pierre 2 *enchauffé*

The resolution 2 that you have taken to go to the country
prise de
 gladdens me much.

rejoir

What proposals have the King, the Lords, and the House of
proposition 2

Commons offered to the Irish?

Communes offert *Irlandois*

I have received the letters that you have written to me on
 the affair that I had proposed to you; and after having read
affaire 2 *proposer* *au sujet*
 them with attention, I have discovered, as you, that if I had
reconnoitre
 undertaken it, I should have found therein obstacles 1 that I had
 not foreseen.

prévoir

Her husband has idolized her to such a degree, that she has
mari *idolâtrer* *à un tel point* 1 *je*
 forgotten herself.

méconnoître

Our wives have loved us; that being the case, we husbands
nous autres maris
 have loved them.

She has done to herself the honour of paying you a visit, and
Se donner *de rendre*
 you have received her most politely.
poliment

Thesé

These women have fancied to themselves that we would have
s'imaginer
protected them, nay, that we would have married them.
protéger même épouser

We have done to ourselves the honour to write to you many
times concerning these goods.
marchandises

You have let yourselves be dazzled by the deceitful promises
se laisser éblouir trompeur promesse 2
of the courtiers.
courtisan

Was you at the opera last night? Was Miss Nightingale
Rosignol
there? Have you heard her sing? No, but I have heard her
entendre chanter
play on the harpsichord; and I have heard that cantata sung.
clavecin 1 cantate 2

The philosophy that a certain Scots senator has published is
philosophie 2 Ecoffois sénateur
not relished, because it is not understood but by those who are
gouté ne que
versed in the sound philosophy of the antients.
versé sain

Bishop Didier carrying back a considerable sum which Theo-
L'Évêque reporter somme 2 que
debert had lent to the inhabitants of Verdun, this monarch re-
habitants monarque
fused to take it back. We are too happy, said he to him, you
de reprendre
for having afforded me the opportunity of doing good, and I
de procuré de bien 1 moi
for not having let it escape.
de laissé échapper

The fogs that have been are very unwholesome; they are the
brouillard a fait malsain
cause of the diseases that have been.
maladies il y a eu

You love your neighbour since you have done him all the
services that you ought or could.
avez du ou pu

The

The Duke of Marlborough received from Queen Anne and the Emperor all the favours that he chose to ask.

Empereur *voulu*
That town has become flourishing by her trade and manu-
se rendre

factories 2.

Have you seen these new plays acted ?

comédie 2 représenter

The English have made themselves powerful on sea and on land. The vessels that you had seen building in their docks, and that you had thought that the Lords of the Admiralty were to send to the Mediterranean, are destined for the Channel service 1.

se rendre *puissant*

construire

chantier

Amiraute

Mediterranée 2

Manche 2

C H A P. XV.

ON IL Y A THERE IS, THERE ARE.

1mo, **M**ANY sentences beginning with *some*, attended with the verb *to be*, are made by *il y a*, which begins the sentence; as, *some people think*, *il y a des gens qui pensent*. *Some diseases are cured by these medicines*, *il y a des maladies qu'on guérit par ces médecines*.

Il est is also used sometimes for *il y a*; as, *Il est des animaux si bien instruits, qu'on leur croiroit de la raison*, there are animals so well instructed, that we would think they were rational.

2do, *Il y a* is followed also by words of time, space, and number; as, *il y a deux ans que je fais la même chose*, I have been doing the same thing these two years; *il y a dix ans que je fis cela*, I did that ten years ago.

Is there? are there? is made by *y a-t-il?* was there? were there? by *y avoit-il*; has, or have there been? by *a-t-il eu?* How

How long, how many, how far, in questions, are made by
combien y a-t-il? &c. the answser is made by *il y a.*

Some folks go to war, some to the bar, some to trade ; all
gens guerre 2 *barreau 1 commerce 1*
aspire to happiness.
bonheur 1

There were many disputes concerning the circulation *2* of
touchant
the blood.

There will always be, as there have always been, dissensions
amongst men, even on the most trifling things.

Twenty years ago I built that house ; there are in it as many
même faire bâtir dedans
windows as there are weeks in the year, and there are in it as
many doors as there are months in the year.

How many ships of war have we now in the East Indies ?
Oriental Indes 2

There were six ships of the line last year. Next year there
de ligne
will be twelve ships of the third rate.

How far is Brussels from Lyons ? About 170 leagues.
lieues

There would be fewer unjust actions in the world, if men
moins
would think on this great maxim, " Do to others what you
à maxime 2 ce que
" would wish others to do to you."

There would have been a very great quarrel in the street, if
rue 2
the magistrates had not appeared.
magistrat

Would there have been any soldier who would have dared
desert to the enemy ?

Some men below want to speak to you ; they say that they
là bas
have brought money to you.

On the 4th of July 1785, there were in the Thames 4 ships
Juillet Tamise vaisseau
of the line, 27 frigates, and 14 sloops ; At Plymouth, 32 ships
ligne frégates chaloupe
of

of the line, 2 of 50 guns, 10 frigates, and 5 sloops ; At Ports-
canon

mouth, 40 ships of the line, one of 50 guns, 11 frigates, and 8 sloops ; At Chatham and Sheerness, 27 ships of the line, 7 of 50 guns ; 28 frigates, and 14 sloops. In all, there are 103
En tout

ships of the line, 10 fifty gun ships, 76 frigates, and 41 sloops.

CHAP. XVI.

ON IL FAUT, IT MUST, ONE MUST

1^{mo}, *IL FAUT*, *il falloit*, *il fallut*, *il faudra*, *il faudroit*, *il a fallu*, &c. take *que* after them, and govern the verb in the subjunctive mood ; or they govern the infinitive without the conjunction *que* when speaking of things in general ; as, *il faut que mes enfants soyent obéissants*, my children must be obedient ; *il faut vous obéir*, you must be obeyed.

2^{do}, *Il faut*, attended with a noun in the third case, or *me, te, se, nous, vous, lui, leur*, denotes *want*, as *il me faut de l'argent*, I want money ; *il lui faut un mari*, she wants a husband.

3^{tio}, *Il faut* at the end of a sentence signifies the *proper way*, or *right manner* of doing a thing ; as, *vous n'étudiez pas comme il faut*, you do not study as you ought.

These words, *I must, thou must, he must, we must, you must, they must, it is requisite, it is necessary, &c.* are made by *il faut* ; the pronoun, or noun, attending *must, it is necessary, &c.* becomes the nominative of the French verb that comes after *il faut que*, and that verb is placed in the subjunctive mood, as you see by the example at No. 1^{mo}.

Il s'en faut, there wants of it, or of them, it comes short of it

Il s'en falloit,

Il s'en fallut, } there was wanting of it, of them, or it came short

Il s'en est fallu,

Il s'en faudra, there will be wanting of it, &c.

Pen

Peu s'en faut, little is wanting of it, &c. it is very near
 Peu s'en falloit,
 Peu s'en fallut, } little was wanting of it, &c. or it was very near
 Peu s'en est fallu,
 Il s'en faut beaucoup, much is wanting of it, &c. it is very far from
 Il s'en falloit beaucoup,
 Il s'en fallut beaucoup, } much was wanting of it, &c. it was
 Il s'en est beaucoup fallu, } very far from
 Il s'en faut tant, so much is wanting of it, &c.
 Il peut s'en falloir tant, so much may be wanting of it, &c.
 Tant s'en faut, so far from

When *il s'en faut*, and its tenses, which govern the following verb in the subjunctive mood, are attended with *peu*, or a negation, *ne* is used after *que*; as, *peu s'en faut que je ne le batte*, I am near beating him, I have a good mind to beat him.

But if *il s'en faut*, and its tenses, have neither *peu*, or a negation, the *ne* may be suppressed; as, *il s'en faut beaucoup que je sois de votre avis*, I am far from being of your opinion.

We must place all our confidence in God, we must expect
 mettre confiance à attendre
 every thing from him, we must expect nothing from ourselves.
nous même

To prove what you have advanced in court, you must have
en cour
 been an eye witness.
œulaire témoin

If we expect regard and esteem, we must fulfil with honour
 égard estime remplir
 the duties of our profession.
devoir état

Since you have bought me a troop of horse, I want a charger,
campagnie cavalerie, cheval de service
 a suit of regimentals, a new sword, with a pair of pistols.
habit d'ordonnance neuf épée à paire à pistolet

When the French Admiral is with the fleet, he must carry
flotte à porter
 the white flag at the top of the main mast, the commodores
pavillon à la pointe du grand mât à chef d'escadre
 must carry their flags on the mizen mast.
cornette au mât d'artimon

We must acknowledge that we see often virtue lingering in
avouer *languir*
 fetters, whilst vice is on the throne.

fer *trône I*
 One must have as much prudence as valour, to deserve the
autant *que valeur pour meriter*
 name of a great general.
capitaine

It is necessary that he who speaks, should adapt himself to the
se mettre à
 capacity of those who hear him, and that he who writes make
la portée
 himself to be understood by those who read his works.
comprendre de

It would have been necessary in that circumstance 2, that
Il aurait fallu
 the soldiers and inhabitants should have fallen forth to destroy
habitants faire une sortie pour detruire
 the works of the besiegers.
assiégeants

How slovenly you are ! Pray, return home ; dress yourself
Que malpropre de grace, rentrez chez vous
 genteelly.
comme il faut

You do not behave as you ought ; you learn nothing ; I am
se comporter
 ashamed to see you so ignorant.
confus de

Young folks should be learning every day something by heart.
par cœur

When you examine the accounts, you will find that there
 will not be a groat short.

quatre sols
 I was very near falling when I was crossing the ditches.
tomber traverser

In these gloomy forests he was very near being killed by rob-
sombre *l'heureux*
 bers ; I was near being killed by them on Monday.
leur Lundi I

The

The King is far from being so tall as his brother.
You say that something is wanting of the whole sum.

somme 2

Here, so much is wanting, examine it.

Tenez

The one is very far from having the merit of the other.
I am so far from chiding you, that I commend you for your
gronder

endeavours to find out the errors of your French translations.

effort

fautes

traduction 2.

Be very careful; for so much may be wanting that you run
the risk of losing your place.

CHAP. XVII.

ON C'EST, IL EST, IT IS.

1^{re}, **I**L EST and C'EST, are used to denote time; and, if the question is made *est-ce que?* the answer is made by c'est; as, *Quelle heure est-il?* what o'clock is it; *Il est cinq heures,* it is five o'clock. *Quelle heure est-ce qu'il est?* C'est quatre heures, it is four o'clock.

2^{de}, *Etre*, signifying *it is the duty, the business*, requires the third case, or dative, of the noun after it, and à or de before the infinitive that follows; as, *c'est à moi à parler et d'être le maître.* it is my business, or province, to speak, and to be the master.

3^{te}, *Ce* is often used instead of *il, elle, ils, elles*, when we speak of persons and things; as, *Messieurs de la Motte Piquet et de Suffrein sont de bons officiers, c'étoient les meilleurs amiraux que la France eût dans la dernière guerre,* Messieurs de la Motte Piquet and de Suffrein are good officers; they were the best admirals that France had during the last war. *La colère et l'orgueil caractérisent cet homme, ce sont deux vices odieux,* anger and pride characterize that man; these are two odious vices.

If

EXERCISES ON

If *is* or *are*, *was* or *were*, &c. be followed by adjectives only, you must use *il*, *ils*, *elle*, *elles*. *Lisez les Bossuet, les Fléchier, et les Massillon, ils sont eloquents et dignes d'être lus.*

4to, *He is, she is, he was, she was*, attended with the article *a* or *an*, or the partitive articles *du*, *de la*, *de l'*, *des*, *de*, are made by *c'est*, *c'étoit*, &c. as *she is a Duchess*, *c'est une Duchesse*; *it is wine, beer, c'est du vin, de la bière*.

5to, *Etre joined to ce* is always in the third person singular when followed by *moi, toi, lui, elle, nous, vous*, or by an oblique case; as, *c'est nous, c'est toi, &c. c'étoit vous, ce sera nous, &c. g'a été vous, &c. ce fera d'elles.*

If *ce* and *être* be followed by *eux, elles*, or a substantive plural without a preposition, then *être* is put in the plural, and the *ce* is indeclinable. *Ce sont eux. Ce sont elles. C'étoient eux. Ce sont nos philosophes qui pretendent que, &c.* In the compound tenses *être* may be used in the singular number; as *si c'eut été eux, elles, nos amis, &c.*

6to, In questions, the singular is used preferably to the plural; as, *Est-ce? étoit-ce? fut-ce? sera-ce? feroit-ce?* Is it? was it? will it be? would it be?—However, some authors prefer the plural when these words are attended with a plural noun; as, *Sont-ce les richesses? Seront-ce les richesses? Etoient-ce les richesses?*

7mo, *C'est*, followed by an infinitive, requires the infinitive of a verb coming after it to be preceded by *de*; as, *c'est être bien méchant de me tourmenter.*

8vo, *It is*, followed by *with*, is made by *il en est*, followed by the second or genitive case.

At what o'clock shall I meet you at my brother's? Wait;
A quelle heure *chez* *attendez*
 Tell me what o'clock it is now? It is three o'clock. Well, you
à présent *trois heures* *Et bien*
 will find me there at six o'clock.

What o'clock was it when you weighed anchor? let me know
Quelle heure est-ce qu'il étoit lever ancre faire savoir
 also when we cast anchor? It was ten o'clock at night when we
aussi mouiller, *dix heures du soir*
 weighed anchor, and it was three o'clock in the morning when
ancre trois heures au
 we cast anchor again.
remouiller

It is the duty of the master to teach, and of the scholar to learn.

It belongs to the King to choose his ministers, and it is our duty to obey the laws.

If you intend to be good officers, read the lives of Turenne
vouloir devenir
 and Conde, they were the greatest generals that any age has
siecle 1
 produced.
produit

Fear and shame attend always evil, they are the true marks
Craindre 2 honte 2 accompagner le mal *vrai marque 2*
 that discover it.

faire connoître

Read Tully and Demosthenes, they are most eloquent, they
lire Ciceron *Demosthène* *très*
 will form your taste.

former gout

When I was at Paris, I saw the palace of the Duke of Or-
palais 1 *Duc*
 leans, it is beautiful, magnificent, and worthy of the prince who
beau magnifique digne
 possesses it.
posséder

Do you know that woman? Yes, I know her, she is a dancer.
connoître *Oui* *dansuse*

Who is that gentleman? He is a captain in the twenty-fifth
monsieur *capitaine au*
 regiment.

What is this? It is beer that was brewed when my eldest son
Qu'est-ce que c'est bierre 2 *brassé* *ainé fils*
 came into the world.
venir au monde

It was pride, it was self-conceit that hurt you. It is I who
 • *orgueil amour propre nuire*
 warned you to be on your guard.
avertir garde

It was you who promised to acquaint me of all the news a-
C'étoit promettre de mander toutes nouvelles
 bout our fleets and armies.
armées

EXERCISES ON

It was from them that I expected to receive the particulars
eux attendre detail
 of the battle.

combat 1

It is our ancestors who fought so gloriously for the liberty
ancêtres
 of the country. It is they who render us illustrious ; let us
patrie 2 *illustre*
 imitate them.

imiter

Is it you or I who shall speak first in the House of Commons ?
Chambre 2 Communes

Was it the grenadiers, or the light troops, who nailed up
leger troupe 2 *encloquer*
 the cannon ? If it had been the light troops, we should have
canon 1 *leger troupe 2*
 prevented them.

empêcher

Will it be the 6th or 20th regiment that will be sent home
renvoyer
 from Nova Scotia ?

Nouvelle Ecosse

Will it be riches or interest that will procure to you these
richesses crédit
 employments ?

emplois

It is being very barbarous to insult me in my distress.
C'est être *misère 2*

It is authorising vice to live in a familiar connection with the
autoriser *familier liaison 2*
 vicious.

vicioux

It is with you as with me, we pretend a right to that estate,
prétendre avoir droit terre 2
 and indeed we have good claims.

effectivement titre 1

It is with your brother as with my father, they were both
 robbed ; but then, why were they in the streets at these hours ?
mais aussi par rue à heures-là

It

It is with harangues as with bodies, they owe their chief
discours de même que *principal*
beauty to the assemblage and just proportion $\frac{2}{3}$ of their members.

CHAP. XVIII.

UPON DEVOIR, POUVOIR, VOULOIR.

DEVOIR.

WHEN *should* implies necessity or duty, and is used for *ought*,
the present tense or conditional tense, may be used; as,
Je dois où je devrois aimer mon pere, I should love my father.

Should have, for *ought to have*, is made by *aurois du*; as, *J'aurois du vous envoyer ces ananas*, I should have sent you these pine apples.

The present of *devoir*, *je dois*, *tu dois*, &c. often imports a future tense; as, *Je dois dîner, souper*, &c. I am to dine, to sup, &c.

The imperfect of *devoir* often means a past sense; as, *Je devois dîner, souper*, &c. I was to have dined, to have supped.

Should, ought, in a past sense, may be made by *je devois, je dus, j'ai du*; as, *Je devois, je dus, j'ai du vous représenter l'affaire*, I should have represented the case to you.

POUVOIR.

Translate *can*, *may*, *might*, denoting, *power, possibility*, by the present of *pouvoir*, *je puis*, or *je peux*, *tu peux*, &c. as, *Je puis écrire*, I can, may, might write.

Might, could, in the sense of being able, is *pourrois*; as, *Je pourrois vous écrire*, I could write to you.

Could, might, denoting a past time, is *je pouvois, je pus, j'ai pu*; as, *Je pus faire cela hier, j'ai pu faire cela ce matin, je pouvois faire cela*, I was able to do that, or could do that yesterday, this morning.

May as a wish is made by *puiſſes-tu, puiſſe-t-il, elle, puiſſions-nous, puiſſez-vous, puiffent-ils, elles; as, puiſſiez-vous étre récompensés,* may you be rewarded.

Could have or might have is made by *aurois pu; as, Il auroit pu vous procurer l'emploi,* he could or might have procured you the place.

VOULOIR.

If *will* or *will have* conveys the meaning of *order, command, or wish, je veux* is used for a present time, and *voulais, voulus, ai voulu* for a past time, and they are followed by *que*, which governs the verb that follows in the subjunctive mood; as, *Je veux que mon valet fasse cela, I will have my tervant do that; Je voulais, je voulus, j'ai voulu que vous écrivissiez, I wanted you, I wished you to write.*

Would have, or wanted, is expressed by aurois voulu, and I wish by je voudrois, and the following verb is in the subjunctive mood; as, Il auroit voulu que nous vous écrivissions, he wanted us to write to you; Je voudrois que vous euffiez entendu ce qu'il a dit, I wish you had heard what he said. Sometimes the infinitive is used after these verbs; as, J'aurois voulu écrire à votre frere, I would have inclined to write to your brother.

In some authors we see *duffai-je, were I, ought I; puiffai-je, may I, might I; from je-dusse, je puiffe.* This is an error; they ought to be written *duſſé-je, puiffé-je.*

When he is sick he should consult the Doctors, and follow
Medecins
their advice.

avis

We should employ all the means that are possible to instruct
employer
young people in the study of nature 2.

That natural philosopher should have given us lessons more
physicien
easy to understand, more instructive and entertaining.
facile à comprendre
engagéant

I should have told you, that, by the last letters from Vienna,
Vienne

we

we learn that a battle has been fought on the Black Sea between
bataille se donner
 the Russians and Turks.
Russe Turc

You say that you are to dine to-day with Miss L'Amour; I
 am to dine there also.

I was to have written to the Major of the regiment; but indeed I forgot it.

The minister can now serve your friends, as there are many
ministre
 vacant places. Therefore lose no time in writing to him, else
 he may say, *What a pity! I forgot.*
dommage i oublie

I might compare that woman to an ostrich, for she does not
autruché
 like her children. You might rather say, that she does not de-
aimer peu
plutot
 serve to have any.
riter

The King might have promoted him as he has been so long
avancer
 in the service, and is a good officer.

The Colonel will have the Captains join the regiment, and
 will have them never to absent themselves from the garrison.

What would you have had me do for you when I was in
 Rome? I wished you much to have brought me a small picture
apporter
 of my uncle that I left there.
portrait

The Emperor would have wished earnestly that the States of
Etats
 Brabant had not revolted.

The nation wanted that the ministers should write to the Court
Cour
 of Spain, and that they would present memorials concerning
mémoire
 the insult offered to the British flag.

We wished you to have been with us when that pretended
pavillon
soi-disant
philosopher

philosopher told us so many ridiculous tales of his travels in
debiter voyages

Sweden, Muscovy, Poland, and Turky.

Swede, Russie, Pologne, Turquie

The mathematics, to which our fathers did not wish that we
should apply, have prevented us from getting these employ-
ments.

ploit May you all the days of your life never know sorrow or pain !

ignorer tristesse

May you gather laurels that will not be tinctured with your
qui ne soient pas teindre

own blood !

May we see in our public squares, our humane Monarch
places 2 Monarque
carved by the hands of our Praxiteleses, surrounded by all the
sculpté des environné

symbols 1 of public felicity ! May we read at the foot of his fla-

tue these words, which are in our hearts, " To the father of the
" Country!"

The Lords of the Admiralty will have those vessels refitted

Lords Amiraute radouber
and victualled Monday, Tuesday, or Wednesday, and at latest
avitailler Lundi, Mardi, Mercredi, au plus tard
the second week of July next.

Juillet prochain

CHAP. XIX.

Of ADVERBS and the NEGATIONS ne, pas, point, no, not.

Imo, **T**HE adverbs are generally placed after the verb, when
it is in the single tenses, and between the auxiliary
and the participle preterite in the compound tenses. *Rien* and
tout

tout are placed in the same way as the adverb; *il parle bien*, *il a bien parlé*, *il ne fait rien*, *il n'a rien fait*. The adverbs *jamais*, *toujours*, *souvent*, joined to another adverb, ought to be placed first, as, *ils font toujours sévèrement punis*. *Vous n'en usez jamais violence*.

2d^o, *Ne* is placed, except in questions where it comes first in the sentence, immediately after the nominative, and before the verb; and *pas* or *point* comes after it in the single tenses; but, in the compound tenses, *pas* or *point* is placed between the auxiliary verb and the participle preterite; as, *Je ne connois pas cet homme-là*, *je n'ai point connu cet homme-là*.

3d^o, *No*, in answer to a question, is *non*, and *not* is *non pas*. *Not that*, in the beginning of a sentence, is made by *non pas que*, followed by a verb in the subjunctive mood, *A-t-il obéi?* *Non pas*, *point du tout*, not at all. *Non pas que je sois blâmé*.

4t^o, In questions, *point* is a stronger negation than *pas*, for it denotes a real doubt and ignorance of a thing, and *pas* supposes the thing of which we speak to be known; as, *N'est-il point Colonel?* Is he not a Colonel? By this phrase, I want to know whether he be a Colonel or not? *N'est-il pas Colonel?* By this second sentence, I hint and intimate, that he is a Colonel, and I am surprised that the person to whom I speak, does not know that he is a Colonel. The noun that comes after *point*, is preceded by *de*; as, *Je n'ai point de crédit à la cour*, I have no interest at court.

5t^o, If the verb be in the infinitive, the two negations *ne pas* or *point*, and *ne rien*, *ne jamais*, come together before it; as, *pour ne pas vous mettre en colère*, not to anger you; *à ne rien celer*, not to conceal any thing.

6t^o, *Pas* is used before these words, *beaucoup* much, many, *peu* little, *mieux* better, *plus* more, *moins* less, *autant* as much, as many, *tant* so much, so many, *fort*, *très* very, *souvent* often, *si* so, *toujours* always, &c. and most adverbs, as, *pas beaucoup*, *pas peu*, &c.

Cases wherein *ne* is used without *pas* or *point*.

1^{mo}, With *nul*, *nulle*, *aucun*, *aucune*, *pas un*, *pas une*, *ni l'un ni l'autre*, *ni l'une ni l'autre*, *guères* but little, *personne*, *rien*, *jamais*, *plus*, *mot* word, attended with *dire*, and *goute* with *voir*. See p. 238 at No. 2.

2^{do}, With the conjunctions *à moins que* unless, *de crainte que*, *de peur que* for fear, lest ; as, *à moins que vous ne le fassiez*, unless you do it ; *de peur que ma femme ne meure*, for fear my wife should die ; *de peur que vous ne soyez blâmé*, lest you should be blamed.

3^{to}, After *douter* to doubt, with the negations *ne*, *point*, *pas*, *jamais* ; as, *Je ne doute pas que vous ne le fassiez*, I do not doubt but you will do it ; *Je n'ai jamais douté que vous ne vinssiez ou que vous ne fussiez venu*, I never doubted but you would come, or would have come. See p. 259, No 4.

4^{to}, With these words of comparison, *mieux*, *meilleur*, *moins*, *moindre*, *pis* worse, *plus*, *autre*, *autrement* ; *il est plus fort que je ne pensois*, he is stronger than I thought.

5^{to}, With *empêcher* to hinder, *trembler* to tremble, *prendre garde* to take care, in an affirmative sentence ; and they govern the next verb in the subjunctive mood ; *osér* to dare, *je ne saurois* I cannot, *cesser* to cease, sometimes *pouvoir* to be able, and *savoir* to know, in the sense of *not being certain* ; as, *je ne sais si j'irai vous voir*, and with these words, *où*, *comment*, *combien*, *quoit*, and *quel* ; but *savoir*, denoting ignorance of a thing, takes both *ne pas* or *point* ; as, *c'est une histoire que je ne sais point* ; it is a story that I do not know. We use *n'avoir garde*, not to have an inclination or power to do a thing, without *pas* or *point*. When *empêcher* to hinder, and *prendre garde*, are attended with *ne* or *pas*, the *ne* is omitted ; as, *il ne faut pas empêcher que nous le fassions*, you must not hinder us from doing it.

6^{to}, With *que* and *si*, in the sense of *unless* or *before*. *Que ne*, in the sense of *unless*, *before*, govern the next verb in the subjunctive mood ; as, *je ne saurois dîner si je ne me promène*, I cannot dine unless I walk ; *je n'irai pas le voir qu'il ne m'écrive*, I will not go and see him unless he writes to me.

7^{mo}, After *que*, used for *pourquoi* why, and *il y a* followed by a compound tense ; but, if *il y a* be followed by any other tense, both negations must be used ; as, *que ne faites-vous votre devoir*, why don't you do your task ? *Il y a trois jours que je ne vous ai vu*, I have not seen you these three days. *Il y a trois jours que nous ne vous voyons pas*. And when a verb meets the preposition *de*, denoting a space of time ; as, *je ne le verrai de ma vie*, I will not see him in my life.

8^{vo}, With *que* but, only, as *je ne fais que cela*, I only do that.

9^{no}, Before *ni* nor, repeated, *je n'aime ni à donner un soufflet ni à le recevoir*, I neither like to give or receive a blow.

Pas is placed generally with adverbs and nouns of number ; as, *il n'y a pas beaucoup d'argent chez les gens de lettres*, there is not much money in the pockets of the learned. *Point* denotes, as we said before, an absolute negation, ignorance, &c. *je ne veux point avoir de société avec vous*, I will have no society with you.

A wise man speaks modestly of himself, and never says any
modestement

thing without having carefully examined it.

rien *soigneusement*

I have often told you that we ought always carefully to perform our duty, and abstain from pleasures which are not lawful.
s'abstenir
per-
ful.

mis

I have done every thing for your good, you think I am not
tout *bien*
your friend, but you are greatly mistaken.
fort se tromper

Have you written to the Colonel about these deserters? No,
deserteurs

Sir, I do not intend to write to him, not that I am ashamed
avoir dessin *avoir honte*
of owning that I contributed indirectly to their desertion, but I
avouer

have my reasons, which I shall communicate to the general.
communiquer

Is he not advanced to the rank of Lieutenant-General? No,
rang 1

he has not yet that honour. What! Is he not a Lieutenant-General? You really surprise me; thirty years in the army de-
armée me-
serve that honour.
rater

That man has no probity, virtue, or honour, he is quite dis-
dif-

fipated.

Si pér

Not to torment you with these long and tedious rules, I shall
pour *de* *ennuyeux regle 2*
abridge them.
abréger

That

EXERCISES ON THE

That you may never commit the same folly, I forbid you to
pour que jamais faire folie à défendre de
 appear before me.

That will not give you too much trouble to represent my case
trop faire
 to the ministers; for they never give me an answer.

Unless you prevent the junction of the combined fleets, our
empêcher jonction à combiné flotte à
 merchant-men, and their convoys, may be intercepted.
vaisseaux marchand convoi intercepté

We dreaded that she would have despised our advice, and
croire dédaigner
 would not have married your brother.
vouloir

I am glad to learn that your sister behaves much better than
ravi se comporter
 she did.

We despise those who speak otherwise than they think.
 I shall prevent you from going abroad, I shall also take care
empêcher que sortir
 that none shall come to see you.
qu'on

I tremble lest he has suspected any thing about my money.
soupçonner quelque chose d'

We cannot sell that cloth at fifteen shillings the ell. No, we
savoir drap aune
 dare not do it, as our father is not here.

I don't know how, where, and when I shall have the pleasure
savoir
 of seeing you.

We have no intention to scold you.
avoir garde gronder

We must not hinder you from doing service to them.
Il faut

We shall not go and dine with you, unless you promise to
aller diner que ne promettre
 dine with us next Sunday.

Dimanche
 We cannot rise early if we do not go to bed at 10^o o'clock.
de bonne heure

Why

Why don't you tell me that family reasons have obliged you
Que *raison*
 to change your resolution?

It is three days since I had the honour of writing to you?
que

I have been speaking to you for a whole month concerning
cargaison
 the sale of those cargoes.
il y a

You have offended the King, he will not, in his lifetime,
de vie 2
 allow you to come to the palace.
permettre *palais 1*

A precious stone pleases only when it is polished and well
pierre 2 *ne que* *poli*
 cut.

The common law of Paris allows only to bequeath by
autume 2 *ne que* *disposer par*
 will the fifth of one's property.

testament quint 1 *ses propres*

We neither like fishing nor hunting.
pêche 2 *chasse 2*

C H A P. XX.

ON PREPOSITIONS.

The prepositions that govern the fourth case or accusative.

A Près, after
 avant, { before
 devant, }
 chez, at, to, with
 dans, { in, into
 en, }

sur, upon
 felon, } according to
 suivant, }
 à travers, through
 sous, under, &c.
 See p. 128, and 129.

Prepositions

Prepositions that govern the genitive or second case.

| | |
|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| à cause de, because | au dessous, below |
| àuprès, | au niveau, even, with, &c. |
| près, | vis à vis, opposite |
| proche, | au deça, on this side, &c. |
| au delà, on the other side | See p. 129. |
| au dessus, above | |

Prepositions that govern the dative or third case.

| | |
|-----------------------------|----------------------|
| conformément, conformably | jusque, } to, till |
| en égard, regard being had | jusques, } to, till |
| par rapport, with regard to | quant, as to, as far |

OBSERVATIONS.

Upon *avant* and *devant*.

Avant before, denotes a priority of time, order, or rank ; as, *Ils ont fait cela avant vous*, they have done that before you. *Mettez, vous dis-je, ce mot-ci avant l'autre*, place, I tell you, this word before the other. *Arriverez-vous avant nous ?* Will you arrive before us ?

Avant used with *assez*, *bien*, *fort*, *plus*, *si*, is rendered into English by *far*, *so far*, *deep* ; as, *N'allons pas si avant*, let us not go so far. *Ces maçons sont obligés de creuser fort avant dans la terre*, These masons are obliged to dig very deep in the ground. *Vous ne pouvez pas creuser trop avant dans la terre*, you cannot dig too deep in the ground. *Plus avant* means further, deeper. *La dague lui est entrée bien avant dans le ventre*, the dagger went deep into his belly. *Bien avant dans la nuit*, signifies the night is far gone.

Devant before, against, over-against, in presence, is the opposition to *derrière* behind, and *avant* to *après* ; as, *Mettrons-nous ceci devant*

devant ou derrière la porte? Shall we put this before or behind the door? *Nous logeons tout devant l'Eglise de St Jacques,* We lodge quite over-against St James's Church. *Marchez devant moi,* Walk before me. *Paroître devant le Roi,* To appear before the King.

De devant means from out; as, *Que vous êtes grossier? òtez-vous de devant moi,* How unmannerly you are? get out of my sight. *Par devant* is used in the law stile, to mean before; in the presence, or simply, by, when speaking of deeds drawn up by Notaries; as, *Par devant moi Guillaume Creech, Ecuyer, un des Magistrats de la Cité d'Edimbourg, capitale du royaume d'Ecosse, sont comparus N. N. L. L. membres de l'université de Paris, qui déposent, &c.* Appeared before me William Creech, Esq; one of the Magistrates of the City of Edinburgh, capital of the kingdom of Scotland, N. N. L. L. members of the university of Paris, who depone, &c. *Des actes passés devant notaire,* deeds drawn up by notaries. *Aller au devant de quelqu'un* means, to go and meet a person. *Je dois avoir le devant,* I ought to go before, or to have the precedence. *Le devant* means the fore-part, it is the opposition of *derrière* behind, back-part. We say, *sens devant derrière,* the wrong way, preposterously. *J'ai dit ci-devant,* I have said before. *Lisez le Chapitre de devant,* Read the Chapter before.

Observations upon *en* and *dans*.

En, dans in, into. *In,* in English, placed before any noun without the article *the,* is made by *en* and not *dans;* as, *In peace and war, En paix et en guerre.* In summer, *En été.* *En carosse,* in a coach. *En plein midi,* in open day light.

We say, *aller en l'autre monde,* to go to the next world. We may therefore lay down as a certain rule, that *en* joined to a noun, is seldom or never used with the article *le,* unless the noun begins with a vowel, or *h* mute; as, *en l'absence, en l'honneur,* in the absence, in the honour; yet we say, *mettons-nous en la présence de Dieu.* *Ayons confiance en la miséricorde de Dieu.*

In the is made by *dans le, dans la, dans l', dans les;* as *dans la maison de votre père,* in your father's house,

We may use indifferently *en* or *dans* before the pronouns that are not preceded by *le, la, l', les;* as, *en moi, or dans moi,* in me, *en or dans votre maison,* in your house.

There are other cases wherein *en* and *dans* are not employed indifferently. *1mo*, Before the nouns of time, *en* signifies the space of time employed in doing something, and *dans* specifies the time at the end of which something will be done; as, *Je ferai cela en dix jours*, I shall do that within the space of ten days; in Latin, *intra decem dies*. *Je ferai cela dans huit jours*, I shall do that eight days hence; in Latin, *post octo dies*. *2d*, We say *penser en soi*, and not *dans soi*, to think within one's self; in Latin, *secum cogitare*. *3rd*, *Dans* is used, and not *en*, before the names that express the places wherein we lay up or put things; *dans ma malle*, in my trunk; *dans mon pupitre*, in my desk. *Dans* is employed, and not *en*, before the names of authors quoted; as, *J'ai lu les mêmes observations dans Polybe et dans Végius*, I have read the same observations in Polybus and Vergilius.

As or *like* in English denoting behaviour, is made by *en*; as, She acts like a Queen, *Elle agit en Reine*.

En is used to denote the transition from one place to another, and from one case to another; as, *il court de rue en rue*, he runs from street to street. *De mieux en mieux*, better and better. *De mal en pis*, worse and worse.

In short, *dans* and *en* are used to denote time. *Dans*, with its regimen, answers to the question *when*, and *en* to the question *in what space of time*; as, *La mort arrive, quand?* Death comes, when? *Dans le moment qu'on y pense le moins*, in the time when we think the least on it. And *l'on passe*, we pass, *en combien de temps?* in what space of time? *en un instant*, *des plaisirs*, *au tombeau*, in an instant from pleasures to the grave.

En campagne is used to express the march or encampment of troops; as, *L'armée se mettra en campagne*, The army will take the field.

A la campagne means to go to the country for business, or for the sake of pleasure. *Monsieur est à la ville*, means, the gentleman is in town, and that he is not in the country. *Monsieur est en ville*, signifies that he is not at home.

Fohi founded the Chinese monarchy, and he began to reign,
Chinois monarchie 2 *regner*
 according to some authors, sixteen hundred years before the
selon
 birth of our Saviour Jesu Christ.
Sauveur

Perfect

Perfect valour is to do without witnesses, what we would be
Parfait valeur 2 de *temoin* *ce que*
 capable of doing before every body.
devant tout le monde

You are a great blunderer, you are always putting the cart
étourdi *mettre la charue*
 before the horses.
beuf

These masons dug very deep in the ground, and the night
creuser bien avant *terre 2* *il etoit*
 was far gone, when they laid the foundation of the south
bien avant dans la nuit lorsque jettter *fondements* *méridional*
 bridge.

pont 1

You thought that he was on the bed, he was under (it).
lit 1 *dessous*

My stockings, handkerchiefs, and stocks, are not in, nor upon
bas *mouchoir* *col*
 the drawers; have you put them amongst your cloths?
commode 2 *hardes*

The janissary drove the javelin very deep in his throat, and
janissaire *javeline bien avant*
 killed him.

In the playhouse that importunate man placed himself before
A la comédie *importun* *planter*
 me, and hindered me from seeing the actors.
empêcher *de* *acteur*

You say that you lodge in the great square, quite opposite
lager fur *place*
 to the guard room, and near the house of the commandant.
corps de garde *au près*

If you do not get out of my sight, I will send your name to
s'ôter *nom*
 the magistrate, and you shall be summoned to appear before him.
magistrat *citer*

These deeds are authentic, they were drawn by the most able
actes *autentique* *se passer* *habile*
 notaries of Paris.
notaire

The weather is so fine, that we shall go a visiting on foot,
Il fait *si au* *alter en visite* *à pied*
 and not in the coach
non pas en *carosse*

Where

EXERCISES ON THE

Where is your brother? he is in London, and will remain
rester
 there a long time.

In your house, the moveables were so bad, that I did not
meubles *si*
 imagine that any person of taste could lodge in it.

In twelve days I think I can go from hence to Montpelier,
gout
d'ici
 and in fifteen days more I can go to Rome.

In eight days hence, you and I shall set out for France,
moi *partir*

Switzerland, and Germany.

Suisse *et* *Allemagne*

Lay all my cloths in my trunk neatly, do not rumple them.
hardes *malle* *comme il faut* *chiffonner*

We read in Homer wonderful things about gods and heroes.
Homère *héros*

Walk like a theatrical king, roll your eyes as a furious man,
Marcher *roi de théâtre* *rouler* *furieux*
 fear nothing.

These drunkards go from tavern to tavern, they always be-
ivrogne *taverne* *se com-*
 have worse and worse.

porter

Your sons are very diligent, they study better and better.
diligent *étudier*

The army of the allies took the field the 9th of May, and en-
armée *allié*
 camped the 20th near Ghent, at the conflux of the Scheldt and
Gant *confluent* *à* *Escaut*
 the Lis *et*.

As you are not very well, I advise you to go to the country.
se porter trop bien *conseiller*

The country air would do you much good.
bien

My master is now in town, and will be here some weeks, on
maître *ville* *ici* *à*
 account of his sister's marriage.
cause

When

When we and they were at Mr Prevot's house, we asked if he was at home, the servant answered that he was abroad (not *domestique*)

at home.)

If you except Latin, that gentleman is very knowing.

au Latin près monsieur savant

Near that white house you see a pond, and opposite to the
abbrevoir
pond there is a large tree, under the tree there is an arbour.
gros arbre cabinet

After that, we went to the court, for want of our own carriage, in a hackney-coach.

carrosse fiacre

As to the woman, I assure you that she will not come here ;
Quant venir
I saw her on the other side of the river ; she says she cannot
rivière

come here for less than a crown.

à moins de écu

Let us sit round the table 2, sit you above him, and he will fit under you.

On this side of the castle, you see some trees, well ! go there,

Au déca château arbres eh bien

behind these trees, there is a fine garden, round the garden you

jardin

will observe a hedge, and under the hedge there is a ditch.

haye fossé

CHAP. XXII.

THE following conjunctions govern the subjunctive mood.

avant que, before

afin que, that, to the end that

pour que, that, to the end that

quoique,

encore que,

bien que,

} though, although

pour

EXERCISES ON THE

pour peu que, if
 supposez que, suppose
 posez le cas, put the case
 sans que, without that
 soit que, whether
 en cas que, } in that case
 au cas que, }
 pourvu que, } provided
 moyennant que, } that
 jusq'à ce que, till

loin que, far from
 bien loin que, very far
 nonobstant que, notwithstanding
 non pas que, not that
 malgré que, for all that
 Dieu venille, God grant
 plaife à Dieu que,
 or } would to God
 plût à Dieu que, }
 à Dieu ne plaise que, God forbid

In pages 130 and 131, you see the conjunctions that govern the indicative and subjunctive moods.

Quand, quand bien, quand même, followed by the conditional tense, are Englished by though, although.

Si if, is sometimes used elegantly before the subjunctive mood; as, si j'eusse fait ce tour, If I had done that trick.

To the end that you may not complain of me, and that you
se plaindre
 may be content with my small reflections, I shall shew you that
faire voir
 there is something true in chiromancy.
chiromancie 2

That my book may have a good reception from the public,
Pour que être bien accueilli du
 I have taken all my observations from the best authors.

Although we have told you many times that you ought not
plusieurs fois devoir
 to repeat in the same sentence a pronoun, a pronominal adjective,
phrase 2 nom 1 adjectif 1
 a preposition 2, and a conjunction, with different relations; yet
conjonction 2 rapport 1 pourtant
 you do not observe that general and useful remark.

Though ambition be a vice, it has been nevertheless the basis
Encore que néanmoins base 2
 of many virtues.
bien

Cyrus

A man of birth ought to appear with honour at the court of
Gentilhomme *se soutenir* cour 2
his Prince; no interest can ever dispense him from doing any
thing that is unworthy of his rank.
sans que obliger à faire

Provided you do me the honour of writing to me when I am
in London, and point out to me the plan I ought to follow,
indiquer
you may rely on my small services.

pouvoir compter
In case you would diminish the dryness which is difficult to
En cas que vouloir sécheresse 2
remove from grammar rules, perhaps I might read your per-
separer des règles de la grammaire ou-
formance.

vrage
Till you get a place, sell your mule, make use of the money,
être placé *employer*
and when you have spent it, come to my house, I shall support
avez dépensé *chez moi* *maintenir*
you.

Before we undertake any thing, let us consider if we shall
entreprendre
be able to finish it.

Suppose we have war with the Spaniards, shall we attack
Espagnols
their Asiatic and American colonies ?

Afrique *Americain*
I cannot give you the employment, not that I am jealous of
you, but the public would blame me.
God forbid that you, they, and I should be of the opinion of
eux *moi*
those who believe that our souls perish with the body. Between
ame
us and heaven, hell, or annihilation, there is nothing but life,
néant *ne* *que*
which

EXERCISES ON

which is the thing of the world the most frail ; and heaven not
fragile

being certainly for those who doubt if their soul be immortal,
 they have nothing to expect but hell or annihilation,

n'ont rien à attendre que

Would to God the princes who make war were eye witnesses
Plût à Dieu *oculaire témoin*
 of the devastations that attend it.

accompagner

God grant, for the honour of religion 2 and humanity, we
 may have always peace. The following ejaculation 2 which
 Mons. Buffon has in the 9th. vol. of his Natural History on the
Naturel

subject of war is very beautiful :

Great God ! whose presence 2 alone supports nature 2, and
dont *seule*

maintains the harmony of the laws of the universe ; You who,
harmonie *univers*

from the immoveable throne of the empyrean, see rolling un-
immobile *trône* 1 *empyrée* *rouler*

der your feet all the heavenly spheres 2 without trouble and
celestes *choc*

confusion, who, from the bosom of rest, reproduce at every in-
sein 1 *repos* *reproduire* à

stant, their immense operations, and alone govern, in a deep
mouvement *regir* *profond*

peace, this infinite numbre of heavens and worlds, restore, restore
paix 2 *infini* *nombre* 1 *rendre*

calmness to the troubled earth ! Let it be in silence ! At your
calme 1 *agitée* *terre* 2

word let discord and war cease ! God of bounty, author of all
parole que discorde 2 *cesser* *bonté* *auteur*

beings, let your paternal looks encompass all the objects of
être *paternel regard* 1 *embrasser* *objet*

creation 2 ! but man is your favourite being ; you have enlight-
être de choix *é-*

ened his soul with a beam of your immortal light ; crown your
clairé *d'un rayon* *immortel lumiere* 2 *combler*

benefits, by penetrating his heart with a shaft of your love ;
bienfait en pénétrer *coeur* 1 *trait* 1

this divine sentiment 1 being infused every where, will reconcile
se répandant par tout *réunir*

hostile

hostile dispositions. Man will no longer dread the aspect of
ennemi nature 2 *ne plus*
man ; the murdering steel will no longer arm his hand ; the
homicide fer 1 *n'armera plus sa main*
devouring fire of war will no longer drain the source of gene-
dorant feu 1 *faire tarir*
rations ; the human species, now enfeebled, mutilated, cut off
espèce 2 *affoibli mutilé morfonné*
prematurely, will germinate anew, and will multiply innumer-
dans sa fleur germer de nouveau multiplier sans
rably. Nature overloaded by the weight of distresses, sterile
nombre accablé poids 1 *fléaux*
and abandoned, will resume very soon, with a new vigour,
abandonné reprendre nouveau vie 2
her former fertility ; and we shall assist her, we shall culti-
ancien fécondité 2 *séconder culti-*
vate her, we shall continually observe her, that we may offer
ver sans cesse observer pour offrir
to you, at every moment, a new tribute of gratitude and
à chaque instant tribut 1 *reconnaissance*
admiration.

CHAP. XXII.

UPON THE PECULIAR CONSTRUCTIONS OF PRONOUNS
PERSONAL AND POSSESSIVE.

TO comprehend better the following observations and rules, it is necessary to know thoroughly the pronouns disjunctive and conjunctive in pages 46 and 47, as likewise the pronouns possessive.

Je, tu, il, elle, on, l'on, nous, vous, ils, being nominatives to verbs, can admit of no word between them and the verb, except the negation *ne*, or one of the twelve pronouns conjunctive *me, te, se, &c.* Therefore never use such expressions, *Elle toujours gronde, vous souvent voyez*, She is always scolding, you often see, &c. ; but *Elle gronde toujours, vous voyez souvent*.

EXERCISES ON

In the forms of a certificate, the word *soussigné* underwritten, with the name and designation of the person who certifies, come between the nominative and the verb; as, *Je soussigné Pierre Richelet, avocat, certifie à tous qu'il appartiendra, que, à Peter Richelet, advocate, certify to all whom it may concern that, &c.*

When the pronouns personal are governed by verbs either in the dative or accusative, you must make the first by a conjunctive, and the other or others by a disjunctive, and place them after the verb; as, *Les Dames vous ont écrit aussi bien qu'à lui et à eux.* The Ladies have written to you as well as to him and to them.

Lui and *eux* may be nominatives to verbs, and come before them without any conjunctive pronoun, 1^{re}, With *seul*; 2^{de}, When followed by *qui*; 3^{me}, With a participle present; as *Eux seuls réverent l'autorité de l'assemblée,* They alone revere the assembly's authority. *Lui qui ne savoit pas que j'étois votre frere,* He who did not know that I was your brother. *Eux voyant un tel fracas s'enfuirent,* They seeing such disturbance fled.

These disjunctive pronouns *moi, lui, eux, nous, vous,* may come before or after a verb, but with a conjunctive pronoun, unless the verb is in the infinitive or imperative mood; as, *Vous niez cela, et moi je l'affirme,* You deny that, and I assert it. *Lui, il ose dire cela, ou il ose dire cela, lui?* He dares say that, dares he? *moi écrire cela?* Could I write that? *Me tourmenter comme cela, moi?* Can I be teased in this manner, can I? *Faites-moi, je vous prie, la grace,* Do me the favour I beg of you.

The following pronouns personal, being nominatives to verbs, may be placed sometimes before them and sometimes after them.

| |
|--------------------|
| Toi et moi |
| <i>Thou and I</i> |
| Lui et moi |
| <i>He and I</i> |
| Elle et moi |
| <i>She and I</i> |
| Toi et nous |
| <i>Thou and we</i> |
| Lui et vous |
| <i>He and you</i> |
| Elle et vous |
| <i>She and you</i> |

| |
|---------------------|
| Vous et moi |
| <i>You and I</i> |
| Eux et moi |
| <i>They and I</i> |
| Elles et moi |
| <i>They and I</i> |
| Vous et nous |
| <i>You and we</i> |
| Eux et vous |
| <i>They and you</i> |
| Elles et vous |
| <i>They and you</i> |

Toi

| | |
|----------------------|---------------------|
| Toi et lui | Vous et lui |
| <i>Thou and he</i> | <i>You and he</i> |
| Toi et eux | Vous et eux |
| <i>Thou and they</i> | <i>You and they</i> |
| Toi et elle | Vous et elles |
| <i>Thou and she</i> | <i>You and they</i> |
| Lui et elle | Lui et elles |
| <i>He and she</i> | <i>He and they.</i> |

Nous sommes ruinés lui et moi,

ou

Lui et moi sommes ruinés,

He and I are ruined.

Nous ironsons en Italie eux et moi,

ou

Eux et moi ironsons en Italie.

The pronouns personal, nominatives to verbs, come often after them ; 1^{mo}, With *dire* to say, *répondre*, *repliquer*, *reprendre* to answer, *poursuivre* to pursue, *crier*, *s'écrier* to cry out, by way of a parenthesis, as *vous aimez*, *dites vous*, you are in love, say you ; *reprit-il*, *repliqua-t-il répondit-il*, replied he ; *s'écria-t-elle*, cryed she ; *poursuivit-elle*, pursued she. 2^{do}, After *à peine* hardly, scarce, *ainsi que*, therefore, *peut-être* perhaps, *du moins*, *au moins*, at least, *en vain*, in vain ; as *à peine eut-il achevé*, he had hardly finished, &c. *Ainsi*, *aussi méritez-vous d'avoir le régiment*, therefore or nay, you deserve to have the regiment. *Du moins devriez-vous m'écrire*, at least you shold write to me. *Peut-être trouvera-t-il à redire*, perhaps he will find fault. *En vain cherchez vous la pierre philosophale*, in vain you seek the philosopher's stone. 3^{tin}, With the preterite of *devoir*, by way of an ellipsis ; as *duffiez-vous me dire que je suis un ignorant*, *je vous répondrai avec politesse*, instead of saying, *quand vous devriez me dire*, &c. though you shold say that I am an ignorant man, I shall answer you with politenes.

Lui to him, to her, to it, *leur* to them, are applicable to persons, and even to *irrational creatures* and things. We can say very properly of a horse, *Il faut lui appuyer les éperons*, you must ply him with the spurs. And speaking of a plant, *Elle demande à être arrosée*, *il faut lui donner de l'eau*, it requires to be watered, you must water it. *Ces oranges ont besoin d'eau*, *il faut leur en donner*,

donner, these orange trees have need of water, you must give them some.

We cannot say of a house, *Nous lui avons ajouté un pavillon, nous ne pouvons vivre sans elle*, we have added a wing to it, we cannot live without it. But though that way of using *lui*, *elle*, and their plurals, *eux*, *elles*, be improper, yet it would be very good, if applicable to people's *conveniency* or *commodiousness*. Thus, persons who have spent a great deal of money upon a house to suit their *conveniency*, can say properly, *nous y avons fait de grandes dépenses, mais elle nous en dédommage, car nous lui devons toute notre santé et tout notre repos, nous ne vivrions pas sans elle*, we have laid out a great deal of money upon it, but it indemnifies us, for to it we owe all our health, and all our quiet, we could not live without it.

Besides these datives *lui* and *leur*, there are other datives, such as *à lui*, *à elle*, *à eux*, *à elles*; the latter are generally employed for persons; it is wrong to use them when we speak of irrational creatures and things.

In the same way, in speaking of *irrational creatures* or *things*, it would be improper to use in the nominative *lui* and *eux*. *Lui*, *elle*, *eux*, *elles*, used with prepositions, are employed chiefly when we speak of persons.

For though a man may very properly say of another person, *qu'il se repose sur lui de cette affaire*, let him entrust to him the concern of that business. *Qu'il s'appuie sur lui*, let him lean upon him. We cannot say, speaking of a bed or ~~a pick~~, *reposez-vous sur lui, appuyez-vous sur lui*, rest upon it, lean upon it. But you must use prepositions converted into adverbs, as *reposez-vous dessus, appuyez vous dessus*.

In speaking of inanimate objects *en* is used instead of *de lui*, *d'elle*, *d'eux*, *d'elles*, and *y* instead of *à lui*, *à elle*, *à eux*, *à elles*, *dans lui*, *dans elle*, *dans eux*, *dans elles*; as *voyez-vous ces arbres, n'en approchez point?* do you see these trees, dont go near them. *C'est une étude agréable, je m'y attache infiniment*, it is an agreeable study, I apply greatly to it.

L'honneur est comme une île escarpée et sans bords ;
On n'y peut plus rentrer, dès qu'on en est de hors.

A person speaking of a favourite animal, as a dog, can say, *il fait tout mon amusement, je n'aime que lui, je suis attaché à lui*,

je ne vais pas sans lui, he is all my amusement, I love nothing but him, I have an attachment to him, I go no where without him.

You do not say of a horse, *qu'on n'a jamais monté sur lui*, no one ever mounted upon him, but *qu'on n'a jamais monté dessus*.

Nor can we say, *qu'on ne s'est pas encore servi de lui*, that no person has used him yet ; instead of which, say, *qu'on ne s'en est pas encore servi*.

Avec with, and *après* after, are the only prepositions with which *lui*, *elle*, *eux*, and *elles*, are joined in speaking of inanimate objects, we may say, *ce torrent entraîne avec lui tout ce qu'il rencontre*, *il ne laisse après lui que du sable et des cailloux*, that torrent drags along with it every thing that it meets with, it leaves nothing after it but sand and stones. *La chute de cette muraille a entraîné avec elle toute la maison*, the fall of that wall has brought down with it the whole house.

There are ways of speaking much in use when we speak of a person, that cannot be used when we speak of a number of persons. Thus, though we say very properly of a man who went up to, or near a woman, *il s'est approché d'elle*, or *il s'est mis auprès d'elle*, he placed himself hard by her, we could not say of a general, who went near the enemy's army, *il s'est approché d'elle*, *il est campé auprès d'elle*, but you must say, *il s'en approcha*, *il alla camper auprès*.

When *son*, *sa*, *ses*, *leur*, *leurs*, are preceded by a substantive of inanimate things, they cannot be joined to a second substantive in the nominative or accusative, but when that second substantive is in the same part of the sentence, and relates to the same verb as the first. We can say properly, *La Seine a sa source en Bourgogne et son embouchure au Havre de Grace*, the Seine has its source in Burgundy, and its mouth at Havre de Grace ; because *La Seine*, *sa source*, *son embouchure* are in the same part of the sentence, and relate to the same verb.

We cannot say *Paris est beau, j'admire ses édifices, ses jardins, &c.* Paris is beautiful, I admire its buildings, its gardens, &c. *Ces arbres sont bien exposés, cependant leurs fruits ne sont pas bons* ; these trees are in a very good exposure, yet their fruits are not good ; Why ? because *ses édifices, ses jardins*, are not in the same part of the sentence, and do not relate to the same verb as *Paris*.

In the same way *leurs fruits* their fruits, are not in the same part of the sentence as *ces arbres* these trees. In this case *en* must be used, and you must say *Paris est beau, j'en admire les édifices, les jardins, &c.* *Ces arbres sont bien exposés, cependant les fruits n'en sont pas bons*.

That

EXERCISES ON

That rule, as we have said, does not hold but when *son* and *leur* are in the nominative or accusative; for though we cannot say, *Paris est beau, on admire ses edifices, &c.* we can say very properly, *Paris est beau on admire la beauté de ses edifices, de ses jardins,* because *ses* is neither in the nominative or accusative, but in the genitive case.

The generals have repeated to him, as well as to you and me,
aussi bien que
 that their character often depends more on the fancy of men
charactere du caprice
 than on the commendable actions that they perform at the head
louable faire
 of their armies.
armée

Your interest requires that you should pay attention to the
exiger ayez
 minister, he alone can promote you; but now I think on it,
avancer à propos
 grease well the fist of his clerk, and especially his cook, for they
graiffer la patte à commis cuisinier
 have the ear of the master.

oreille
 They who were standing as May-poles in the antichamber,
planté piquet antichambre
 were surprised that you did not hold forth your hand to give
 them money.

They, seeing that they received no *douceur*, disappeared, and
disparaître
 swore that neither their master nor the King shall grant the
jurer accorder
 place.

These historians deny the innocence of Mary Queen of Scot-
historien Marie
 land, and I can prove it by the most authentic documents.

pouvoir autentique
 He, dares he write such falsehoods against the best of the
fautseté
 Kings who have ever swayed the sceptre of this realm?

porter royaume i
 You,

You, they, and I are often with the prime minister, but neither you, they, or I will get what we seek, because we cannot serve him.

By the failures of these merchants in the West Indies, you and I are ruined. How we are to be pitied ! Will your uncle help you ? Will your aunt have compassion on you ? No, no, he and she have no bowels.

It is impossible that a man of a bad heart can love the public welfare ; for how can he love a million ¹ of people, he who has never loved any body ?

These horses are very restive ; I have told you many times that you must apply the spurs to them.

Bid the gardener go to the garden, let him examine all the plants, if they require watering, let him give water to them.

Have you been in the green house this morning ? Yes, Sir, I know what you mean ; these orange trees had need of water, I gave them some last night.

I have made great alterations in my country house, I have added to it a wing, you will be surprised when you will see its beauties

When you are tired, go to your room, let the maid make the bed, rest a few minutes upon it.

lit 1 se reposer

EXERCISES ON

I am going abroad, be so good as to lend me your cane,
aller sortir avoir la bonté
 that I may lean upon it, but I would rather choose that you
s'appuyer aimer mieux
 would attend me, that I might lean upon you when I am very
accompagner

tired.

The study of Natural History requires a deal of patience and
etude Naturel Histoire à demander bien
 attention; the Count de Buffon has applied to it indefatigably,
Comte infatigablement
 the public is much indebted to him.
redevable

How fond the Dutches of Penthievre is of her little dog! she
Que aimer Duchesse roquet
 has him always with her; she takes more care of him than of
 her child.

There is a horse that I have bought by chance from that
voilà acheter hazard
 jockey? he is skittish; nobody has yet mounted on him; I do
maquignon ombrageux
 not think that I shall be ever able to make use of him.

The torrents rolling with impetuosity, left after them roots
router impetuosité racines
 of trees, bushes, and have made great devastations in the places
buisson dégâts à par lieu
 where they have passed.

These impudent fellows no sooner saw the ladies than they
effronté pas plutot que
 placed themselves hard by them, and importuned them.
au près

As soon as the Emperor's army encamped at Vilvorden, the
Empereur armée à camper Vilvorde
 French army drew near it, and encamped also hard by it.
aussi

London is a very great town; all strangers admire its streets,
Londres ville rue
 and its stately bridges.
superbe

CHAP. XXIII.

EXERCISES

Upon *Idiomatrical Expressions of the French.*

Avoir beau, } to be in vain
 n'avoir garde de, } to be far from doing a thing
 se garder bien de, } to be sure not to do a thing
 avoir âge, to be old, (used in questions; the answer made by avoir-ans.)
 avoir tort, to be in the wrong
 avoir raison, to be in the right.

It is in vain for you to threaten him, he is headstrong.

menacer *avoir de la tête*
 It will be to little purpose for the philosopher to apply to
 discover truth, through the veils of falsehood and deception;
vérité au travers de voile *mensonge* *imposture*
 human passions will often cover it
humain

It was in vain for all the merchants to write to the minister;
 he was resolved not to pay any attention to their representations.

déterminé *faire*
 Your cousin is a worthy man; you may trust him; he will
 be sure not to deceive you; on the contrary, he will do you all
 the good offices he can.
pouvoir *se fier*
tromper

EXERCISES ON

"He sent me to the Duke's palace with a letter, but I was
palais 1

sure not to tell who sent me.

How old was your brother when I saw him in Rome? I believe he was 25 years of age; you are certainly mistaken, he
se tromper
 was only twenty; I am in the wrong, now I recollect. How-
se ressouvenir
 ever, he is not much less than twenty-one.

n'avoir guères moins

I am in the wrong, do you say, to chide your sister. She
de gronder *sœur*
 has been tormenting me this whole day. I am therefore in the
 right to tell her, that I cannot bear her importunate prattle.
souffrir *importun* *babil* 1

avoir bon visage, to look well

avoir mauvais visage, to look ill

n'avoir que faire de, } to want none of

n'avoir affaire de, } to have no occasion

avoir soif, fam, to be dry, hungry.

Methinks you do not look so well as usual; what ails you?

Il me semble *qu'à l'ordinaire* *que* *avoir*

Did you sleep ill last night? You have guessed it, for I did not
cette nuit *deviner*

close an eye the whole night.

l'œil *tout*

Come near me, let me look at you. You look wen, indeed

S'approcher de *regarder*

you look well.

I pray you to remain here, do not visit your sister-in law;

prier *de rester*

belle sœur

she told me that she wants none of your advices. I believe you

conseil

are in the right, I thank you for your advice, I believe I have

de

no occasion to speak to her, she is so stubborn.

tête

I was very thirsty this morning when I rose. You are thir-

bien soif

sty

thirsty and hungry. I am more hungry than thirsty. If you be hungry, why do you not eat?

manger

avoir la bonté, to be so good

*être bien auprès, } to be in great favour with some one
de quelqu'un,*

je dois, I am to, &c.

je devois, I was to, &c.

faire cas, étais, to esteem, to set value on

faire, to pretend, to set up for.

Be so good as to write to the King, and to tell him, that the general officers have behaved ill towards you.

de

de lui

se comporter mal envers

You are in great favour just now with the prime minister,
maintenant premier ministre
but take care do not trust to him, for he is unsteady.

prendre garde se fier

branler dans le manche

You say that I am to dine to-morrow with our mutual friends;
mutuel ami

well, I shall do so.

eh bien le

They were to have sent us these bills of lading, however,
connuissment
they sent none.

I ~~had~~ such value on your works, that I have bought them,
tant ouvrages
and I am resolved to read them, as I am certain they will cure
comme guérir
me of my want of sleep.

de insomnie

So you pretend to be a wit; I wish you joy of it; it is a
Ainsi bel esprit féliciter en c'est
dangerous profession, it has hurt many persons.
metier il nuire à bien

ne faire que de, to have just now, denotes an action lately done

ne faire que, to do nothing but

faire savoir, to inform, to let one know

faire

EXERCISES ON

faire en sorte que, *to do in such a manner that*
se faire fort, to take upon one's self.

I am just now gone to bed, why did you awake me, as I was
se coucher avez-vous eveillé
 in deep sleep.
bien endormi

Be so good as to let me know when the ship is to set sail, and
doit mettre à la voile
 when we shall have the honour of seeing you, as I shall act
aurons de
 in such a manner that you shall have no room to complain of
lieu se plaindre
 my conduct, for I take it upon me to remove all objections.
conduite obvier à

faire la chambre, *to clear the room*
 faire la cuisine, *to cook, dress victuals*
 c'en est fait de moi, de vous, &c. *I am undone, you are un-*
done, &c.
 faire grâce à, *to forgive, to pardon, to excuse*
se faire à, to be inured
 aimer mieux, *to have rather, to choose rather.*

In the morning, you shall have nothing to do but to clean
 my room, you shall be free the whole day. But now I think
libre à propos
 on it, can you dress victuals? for I may sometimes sup at home.
savoir

I am undone; nobody will relieve me in my distress. Well,
aider

I did not expect that.
s'attendre à cela

These malefactors have been tried, they have been found
malfaiteurs on a fait le procès à
 guilty, but the king has pardoned them.
coupable leur

Your troops are inured to the fatigue of marching, they can
troupe 2 face

face all kinds of dangers ; they would rather die than fly : look
 braver fuir regarder
 at them, how bold they are.

qu'elles

préter serment, *to take an oath*
 penfer, *to be like, to be near*
 venir à bout de, *to bring about, to finish*
 se passer de, *to be without*

trouver bon, *to take in good part*
 trouver mauvais, *to take in bad part*
 trouver bon, *to find proper*

These three expressions
 are followed by *que*,
 which governs the
 subjunctive mood.

The fox could not see the ape's preferment without jealousy,
 renard singe élévation envie
 and after having paid obeisance to the new sovereign, and ta-
 rendre hommage nouveau souverain
 ken an oath of allegiance, Sire, said he, I have discovered a
 fidelité

treasure, and it belongs by right to your Majesty. It was a
 trésor Majesté

snare.

piège 1

I was like to have fallen, in coming down that hill, the path
 descendre sentier 1

was so narrow and slippery.

étroit glissant

In bathing some days ago in the river, I swam too far from
 se baigner nager
 the banks, and I was like to be drowned.

Though that undertaking is difficult, we don't despair to ac-
 entreprise 2 desespérer de
 complish it.

Now, let us see if you can bring the matter about ; if you
 ça affaire
 bring it about, I will give you twenty guineas. Oh, as for the
guinée
 money, I can do without it ; but for my honour, I shall make
 a trial ; I think I shall succeed.

effai

suffir

I do not take it in bad part, that you should tell me your *opinion* ; it is your opinion only that I take in bad part.

du tout *disez* *sens-*
timeut

Do you find proper, that I should write to the creditors, and inform them, that you will allow them to sell your estate ?

créancier
faire savoir

ne tenir qu'à, to be in one's power
Il ne laisse pas, he fails not, nevertheless, for all that
se donner de garde, to beware of one
prendre le devant, to get the start of one, to go before
se porter bien ou mal, to be in good or bad health.

It is in your power to be my wife, if you promise to behave well with regard to my children of the first marriage.

se comporter
bien à l'égard

Foolish man ! It was in his power to have been a King, and to live with me here in a most happy state.

Though my friend blamed your conduct in that undertaking, nevertheless he will serve you, you ought therefore to go (and) see him.

Though trembling in every joint, for all that, I fired my shot.

coup !

You see that man, he is a spy, beware of him ; I repeat it to you, beware lest you give him any hold.

gardez vous de donner *prise*

Follow me as soon as you can, I shall go before you, and you will find me in the first inn as you come into the town.

I am as well as can be, and you are well also. But last night I was sorry to hear that your sister was ill ? She has been

à merveilles *aussi*
fuché apprendre

very

very ill since she returned from the country. Was not she well
depuis que
when she received my letter?

rompre, to break asunder

brisé, broken in pieces

*rompre des metaux, des pierres, du bois, metals, stones, wood
casser, to break glass, earthen ware
casser un testament, to reverse a will.*

All these pillars were broken by the thunder-bolt, all the
colomne 2 *foudre* 2
glasses were broken, and the pots were broken too, all these
tables were broken to pieces.

The attornies behaved so ill, and in a manner so clandestine,
procureurs se comporter si mal *clandestin*
that the judges reversed the will,

emplir, to fill liquids into a vessel

remplir, to fill things that are not liquids

*remplir, to fill up again, to replace any liquid, or any other
thing taken away*

remplir, to fill, used in the figurative sense

seulement, so much as

s'en prendre, à to lay the blame on

se prendre bien à, to go the right way to any thing

se prendre mal à, to go the wrong way to, &c.

Come, Gentlemen, let us have bumpers round; fill your
Allons *razades à la ronde*

glasses with this delicate wine; let us drink to the health of all
verre *vin* 1 *santé*

our friends in Europe, Asia, and America.

Asie *Amérique*

When Cardinal Mazarin was prime minister, he filled his
prémier

coffers with gold and silver.

coffre

Fill

EXERCISES ON

Fill up again the casks with wine, and the sacks with the best
tonneau *jac*

corn.

bé *1*

Though the prime minister was very avaricious, yet he was
 very worthy of the place that he filled; he did honour to his
 nation.

patrie *2*

That upstart, when I presented to him my petition, did not
gueux revêtu *requête*

so much as deign to speak to me.

daigner

I appoint you, during the supper, to the management of
confituer *gouvernement*
 the bottles, and if any of them are missing, or if any thing is
quelqu'un *s'en écarter* *quelque chose*
 broken, I shall lay the blame on you, and shall abate it off your
se casser *rabattre sur*
 wages.

We shall go the right way to it, I warrant you for it; we ne-
y réponds *en*
 ver have gone the wrong way, in the least undertaking.

faire accroire à, to make one believe

en faire accroire à, to deceive

s'en faire accroire, to be proud, self-conceited

maltrater, to offend in words and actions, to use ill

traiter mal, to use ill, to be ill used, as in an inn, &c.

enfermer, to lock up, or shut up any thing

renfermer, to contain

se connaître en or *à*, to understand, to be a good or bad judge of

These free-thinkers would make an infinite number of people
esprit fort *infinité* *2*
 believe that these points are not essential to faith.

essentiel *foi* *2*

The most part of servants make no scruple of deceiving their
la plupart *2* *domestiques*
 masters egregiously; they often glory in it.

bien *faire gloire* *y*

When

When courtiers are in the King's favour, they are apt to be
bonnes graces sujet
 proud, and to forget themselves.

There is not a good understanding between the Duke of
intelligence 2 Duc
 Montlevrier and his Dutches ; the Duke uses her ill before every
Duchesse tout
 body, thereby he makes himself odious.
le monde par là rendre

The masters who use ill their servants, are not the better serv-
 ed for that.

en
 When you go to that town, I do not advise you to stop at
conseiller s'arrêter
 the inn that has for the sign the city of London, because one is
hotellerie enseigne
 poorly entertained there.
mal traité

You ought to shut up in your trunk all your clothes, as the
malle hardes 2
 house in which you lodge is a little suspicious
sujet à caution

What curiosities, what treasures do not the seas and earth
Que de trésors
 contain, of which we have not the least idea.

idée 2
 I would not advise you to buy that linen cloth, nor these
toile 2
 laces, as you do not understand these kinds of goods. I thank
dentelles sorte marchandises
 you for your advice, but are you a good judge of them your-
de y
 self?

mener, porter, } to carry, to take with one rational or irrational crea-
tures, that have the faculty of walking.
porter, to carry objects that cannot walk.

Carry me before the magistrate, I shall shew that you are in
 the wrong, and that I am falsely accused.

T t

Take

Take these gentlemen to the Commandant, that they may
Commandant
 be enabled to justify themselves.

être en état justifier se
 Your horses are lame, I see the cause of it, they are unshod ;
deferré
 carry them to the farrier's directly, and then to the stable.

chez le maréchal ensuite écurie
 The poor soldier is wounded, he cannot walk, carry him to
blesse
 the hospital.

hôtel
 If you think proper, I shall carry your letters to the board of
trouver à propos porter bureau
 ordnance
artillerie

amener, to bring, objects that can walk.

apporter, to bring, objects that cannot walk, nor have the
faculty of walking.

faire voir, to shew.

You have not seen my son since his return from India. No,
depuis retour à Indes
 Sir, I have not seen him; pray do me the kindness to bring him
je vous prie amitié
 to me.

How awkward you are! bring me your work, I shall shew
Que mal adroit vous êtes
 you how you ought to have done it.
auriez du

Venir de, followed by an Infinitive, imports an action lately or just now
 done, as *Je viens de lire, I have just now read.*
venir à, followed by an Infinitive, denotes setting or going about some-
 thing, and signifies *to happen.*

We have just now received a letter from our correspondent;
 he has acquainted us that he will ship the lawns and cambrics.

mander faire embarquer linons

batisse

Dg

Do not importune me ; I want to sleep, for I have just dined.
 If they should happen to quarrel, what could I do ? it would
 se quereller
 be impossible for me to separate them.

Do not fail to bury him, if he happens to die ; and let the
 $\text{manquer faire enterrer}$
 funeral be decent.

comme il faut

passer le tems à, *to spend one's time in*
passer chez, to call at one's house

s'appeler, *to be named*

avoir besoin, *to want*

faire une question, *to ask a question*

faire une réponse, *to give an answer*

passer les armes, *to be shot; speaking of a deserter.*

How do you spend your time when you are in the country ?
 Sometimes I spend my time in hunting, sometimes in fishing,
 Tantôt chasser pécher
 and sometimes in reading.

If your servant comes to town, as usual, for your letters, pray
 desire him to call on me at my house, as I am to send you a
 dois new map of the world, published by Monsieur du Buache. Sir,

mappe-monde 2

I am much obliged to you ; I really have great need of it.

Your name, you say, is Mr Bagatelle, Yes, Sir, that is my
 name.—What is your master's name ? His name is Monsieur
 Comment

Fanfaron ; he lives in Mont-orgueil street, at the sign of the
 demeurer rue 2 enseigne
 three razors and the four wash-balls.

It is my young master who talks with such volubility ; when
 parler you ask a question of him, he without stopping will give you
 s'arrêter thirty answers.

The soldier has been condemned by the Court-martial to be
 condamné Conseil de guerre
 shot

shot at the head of his regiment, which will be drawn up on the
être en bataille
 great square.

place 2

Vouloir dire, entendre, *to mean*
 se faire gré de, *to be pleased with one's self for*, &c. *to take a pleasure in*
 faire bon gré de quelque chose à quelqu'un, *to take a thing kindly of any one, to be pleased*
 faire mauvais gré de quelque chose à quelqu'un, *to take a thing unkindly of a person*
 échapper, *used actively, to escape*
 échapper de, *a verb neuter, to escape from*
 échapper à, *to get away*
 laisser échapper un prisonnier, *to favour a prisoner's escape*
 s'échapper de la mémoire, *to slip from one's memory*
 laisser échapper l'occasion, *{ to let go the opportunity, or slip the opportunity*
 l'échapper belle, *to escape narrowly.*

What do you mean by behaving in such a manner to your
Que vouloir dire de en user de la sorte avec
 cousin, who has always made so much of you ?

I mean, that I see no person in better health than you, but
entendre boire et manger à son aise
 you are led away by your caprices and your blind confidence in
se laisser entraîner
 doctors.

Sometimes I take a pleasure in contradicting that philosopher,
 that you may know him by his weak side.

The servant took it so kindly of his master for having remem-
 bered him in his will, that he resolved to wear mourning for him.
mauvais endroit à faire et porter le deuil

If these gentlemen will not lend you money, you will take it
 very unkindly of them ; but I tell you, they will say, that you
leur

may take it kindly or unkindly, they do not care for it.

se soucier en

Our

Our friends in going to America escaped the danger of being drowned, for the ship was leaky in many parts, and the crew never pumped during the whole voyage.

These malefactors escaped from the prisons of London, and
molested all the neighbourhood by their continual depreda-
infester voisinage continuell
tions 2.

The stag, by his nimbleness and strength, got to the hills and
cerf *légereté* 2 *gagner*
woods, and thereby he escaped from the dogs.

The jailor has been found guilty before the magistrates of *géolier*, having favoured the escape of the prisoners, and they have made him pay a very great fine.

made him pay a very great fine.
faire payer gros amende 2
Pray forgive me, if I have not sent these strawberries to your
sisters ; it slipt from my memory entirely ; however, I shall not
let slip the first opportunity of sending them others.

When these tiles fell from the roof of the house, how narrowly I escaped !

| | | |
|---------------------------------|--------------|----------------------------------|
| | aller | to be outward bound |
| Speaking of ships. | venir | to be bound from, on her passage |
| | revenir | from, or homeward-bound |
| n'en pouvoir mais, | | |
| or | | not to be able to help it |
| ne savoir qu'y faire, | | |
| n'en pouvoir plus, to be undone | | |
| aller | in the third | to fit, to become |
| revenir | persons | to suit, to please |

When we were bound from Liverpool to Jamaica, there arose
near the coast of Ireland a violent storm, which put in danger
côte 2 Irlande orage 1

EXERCISES ON

our ship ; we lost our fore mast, our main mast, and our bowsprit.
mât de misaine grand mât 1 beau-

pré

That ship, when she was bound from Barbadoes to Bristol,
Barbade 2

bore very great hardships ; she lost all her sails, masts, and,
essuyer malheur voile 2

what was worse, her compasses and helm.

ce qui bouffole gouvernail 1

The fleet that was homeward bound from India has had an
flotte Indes

excellent passage. The cargoes are rich and valuable.

traversée 2 cargaison 2 précieux

You have been imposed upon, I had told you so, but put

On en imposer à ce
 yourself in my place. You know I could not help it, it was

not my fault.

saute 2

How spruce your friend is since his return from Paris ! That

Que leste retour cet
 coat, that waistcoat, all fits him well. Are you no in love with

habit veste 2 être amoureux de
 him ?

IL FAIT, IT IS.

T HIS verb is used impersonally to express the nature of the
weather or air.

Il fait { beau
brouillard
crotté, sale
chaud
froid
frais
jour

{ fair, fine weather
foggy weather
dirty
hot
cold
cool
day light

nuit,

Il fait

| | | |
|----------------------|---------|-----------------|
| nuit, | { | night |
| obscur, sombre, | | dark, gloomy |
| dangereux, | | dangerous |
| un tems venteux, | | windy, stormy |
| orageux, | Il fait | windy, it blows |
| du vent, | | moist, dry |
| un tems humide, sec, | | dear |
| cher, | | good |
| bon, | | bad |
| mauvais, | | ugly |
| vilain, | | better |
| mieux, | | the sun-shine |
| soleil, | | the moon-shine. |
| clair de lune, | | |

Let us take a turn in the garden, the weather is so fine. *Nos*
Aller faire tour 1 de jardin

I cannot walk to-day; it is too cool, I should rather say, that it is too cold.

How dark it was last night! It was very dark and windy.
 How is the weather? It is charming weather, it is neither
Quel

too cool nor too hot.

Is it day light yet? It is far from it; it is only 12 o'clock at
Il s'en faut de beaucoup minuit
 night.

The last month, the weather was very unsettled, rainy, and
mois 1 inconstant pluvieux
 changeable.

variable
 We do not like to go out in the wind; besides, it is so dirty,
aimer à sortir par
 that I should spoil my clothes.

gâter
 How dear it is to live in London! It is better living in Lille.
Ab! que

In Holland and Flanders there is every morning a thick fog.
épais

Is it bad weather to day? It is very bad indeed.

Since

EXERCISES ON

Since I have been in this country, it has not ceased raining.
 Since I have been in this country, it has not ceased raining.
 pays-ci cesser de pleuvoir

It is not good at all to be here.
 It is not good at all to be here.
 du tout

Should you like to take a walk in St James's Park this
 Should you like to take a walk in St James's Park this
 Parc night, as the moon shines charmingly.

Does the sun shine to day? Yes, Sir, it shines charmingly.
 Does the sun shine to day? Yes, Sir, it shines charmingly.
 beau

If it blows, I advise you to remain at home, for the least
 If it blows, I advise you to remain at home, for the least
 conseiller rester au logis
 thing makes you catch cold,
 thing makes you catch cold,
 enrhumé

C H A P. XXV.

UPON GENS AND PERSONNÉ.

GENS servants, (in Latin *domestici*.) This word has no singular, as *Mes gens sont-ils venus?* Are my servants come?
Il est venu avec dix de ses gens, he came with ten of his servants.

Les gens du Roi, the law officers whose profession it is to take cognizance of all matters relative to the concern and interest of the King. In France these officers were called *Mr le Procureur Général*, *Messieurs les avocats généraux*, and *les avocats*, and *les procureurs du Roi*. *Gens de Robe*, signify the collective body of lawyers, gown-men, &c.

Gens de lettres, learned people. *Gens d'affaires*, people of business. *Gens de cour*, people about the court, courtiers.

The

The word *gens* is not said of a determined number of persons but when it is joined to an adjective; as, *Trois honnêtes gens*, three good persons. We cannot say, *J'ai vu quatre gens, six gens*; in this case we say, *quatre personnes, six personnes*.

Gens used in the sense of *persons* is feminine, when it is preceded by an adjective, and *tout*, which is sometimes masculine, before *gens*; as *ce sont de fines gens*, they are cunning people; *ce sont de fôtes gens*, they are foolish people; *tous les bonnes gens sont persuadés de cette vérité*, all good people are persuaded of that truth; *tous les gens de bien seront de votre sentiment*, all good people will be of your opinion; when the adjective that is joined to *gens* is feminine, the word *tout* must be so too; as *toutes les bonnes gens*, all good people.

Gens people, persons, this word is feminine and masculine in the same sentence, when it is preceded and followed immediately by an adjective; as *Il y a de certaines gens qui sont bien fôts*, and not *fôtes*, there are certain people who are very foolish.

Gens is masculine when the adjective is placed after it, as *les gens mariés*, married persons; *ces gens sont vilains et avares*, these persons are niggardly and avaricious.

On Personne.

THE construction of *Personne* is very remarkable. In the sense of *person*, meaning *men* and *women* collectively, it is feminine; and it has a plural, as *J'ai vu la personne que vous savez*, I have seen the person you know. *C'est une belle personne*, she is a pretty woman. *Les personnes qualifiées*, the people of quality. *Il faut porter du respect aux personnes constituées en dignité*, respect must be paid to people in high offices.

Personne however, in the same sense, is feminine and masculine in the same sentence, i. e. that the pronoun that relates to the word *personne* is put in the masculine; as *J'ai eu cette consolation dans mes ennuis, qu'une infinité de personnes qualifiées ont pris la peine de me témoigner le déplaisir qu'ils ont eu*, I have had that comfort in my distress, that a great number of persons of quality have taken the trouble to show me the displeasure they have had. *Il y a des personnes qui se sont perdues par une chaleur de dévotion, parcequ'ils ont voulu plus faire qu'ils ne pouvoient*, there are persons

U u

who

who have hurt themselves by a fervency of devotion, because they wanted to do more than they could.

EXERCISES

ON THE FOREGOING RULES.

The English East India Company, to maintain their connexions *pour entretenir* *liais.* with their vast possessions in Asia, have fixed upon St Helena *Sainte Hélène* as a place of refreshment. This island is situated between Africa and America, and almost at an equal distance ² from these two parts of the globe. The Dutch were once masters of it, but they were driven from it by the English in 1673. Tho' *chasse en* St Helena appears only a large rock beaten on all sides by the *ne que rocher 1* waves, it is nevertheless a delightful place. The climate is more *vague lieu 1* temperate than one might expect. The soil, which is only a foot *tempérée terre 2* and a half deep, is covered with citrons, palms, pomegranates, *de citronnier, palmier, grenadier* and other trees laden with flowers and fruit at the same time. *chargé de en vivifier* Excellent waters, much better distributed by nature than art could have done, enliven the whole scene. Those who are born *fortuné séjour 1 jour santé 2* in this fortunate abode, enjoy a perfect health; passengers are here cured of their disorders, particularly the scurvy. Four *guérir mal scorbut 1 hundred*

hundred English families and some French refugees cultivate here vegetables, and breed cattle of an exquisite taste, and which are
légume *elever bestiaux* *exquis*
of great service to the crews of the ships which put in there.
ressource *equipages* *relâcher*

The effect of the seafons is remarkable in the two Indian
deux Mers
Oceans, where they are distinguished by the name of the dry
de l'Inde
and rainy Monsoons. While the sea that washes the coasts of
pluvieux Mouçon 2 *baigner* *côtes de*
Malabar is agitated with storms, which the returning season in-
tempête
troduces with the Spring, the slightest vessels sail along the coast
frêle *voguer*
of Coromandel upon a smooth surface 2, and require neither
sur *uni*
skill nor precaution in their pilots. But in the Autumn, which,
in its turn, changes the face of the Elements, the western coast
à son tour
enjoys a perfect calm, while the eastern ocean is tossed by storms
jour *agité* *orages*
and tempests; each experiencing, as it were, the alternatives of
pour ainsi dire
peace and war. An inhabitant of the island of Ceylon, who
Ceylan
contemplates the equatorial region at the two equinoxes, sees
alternately, on the right hand, the waves vexed with storms,
and, on the left, lulled into tranquillity; as if the Author of
Nature, who holds the scales of calamities and blessings perpetu-
balance
ally in his hands, had instantly turned the beam in equilibrium
fléau 1 *équilibre*
from one side to another.

The House of Austria is descended from the family of Haps-
autriche *Haps-*
burg in the Canton of Bern in Switzerland. Rodolphus of
bourg *Canton* *Perne* *Suisse* *Rodolphe*
Hapsburg was elected Emperor in 1273, a time wherein Ger-
Al-
many

many was in a deplorable state, without laws, without police,
l'émagne

without trade. This able and bold prince re-established therein
order, security of the highways, and peace; and Austria ha-

sûreté 2 *chemin*

ving been deprived of its young duke, who was put to death
duc

in Naples by Charles brother of St Louis, Rodolphus gave the
government of it to his son Albert; and soon afterwards the
investiture of it as a fief devolved to the empire. The princes
devolu

of that house have preferred the name of Austria to that of
Hapsburg. That house has given sixteen emperors to Ger-
many, and six kings to Spain. Charles VI's daughter, being
the last of that house, married Francis Duke of Lorraine;
so that the house of Lorraine succeeds to the House of Austria.
By the treaty of Vienna in 1736, the Duchy of Lorraine was

Duché 1

exchanged for the grand Duchy of Tuscany in Italy, and Lor-
contre *Toscane*

raine now belongs to France.

At the end of the winter 1776, a farmer of the parish of—
farmier *paroisse* 2

ten leagues from Paris, was returning from the mill riding on
à dix lieues *s'en revenir* *monté*
his horse, that was carrying besides a sack of flour. At the
en outre *farine*

corner of a hedge, this farmer is attacked by a person, who,
detour 1 *haie* 2

lifting a stick, demands of him in swearing his flour. The far-
le bâton levé

mer dismounts immediately, seizes the man by the collar, knocks
fauter à terre *au collet* 1 *terrasser*

him down. You see, says he, that it is in my power to kill
ne tenir qu'à moi *assommer*

you: kill me, replies the robber, kill me or give me your flour;
I have need of it; I am starving with hunger, I, my children,
mourir de faim

and my wife. Oh, you are starving! that is another thing; but
I would not have you be a robber. Take this sack; I make
you a present of it. I will help you to take it on your shoul-
aider

ers.

ers. Go away, and say not a word about it.

The Dauphin, son of Lewis XV. and father of Lewis XVI. ordered to be brought, in presence of the princes his sons, the *faire apporter* registers of the parish where they had been baptised. You see, *registres paroisse* 2 said he, to each of them in particular, your name preceded and *nom* 1 followed by a number of obscure names : as man, you find your-*foule* 2 self confounded with a crowd of other men ; you are so equally *foule* as a Christian. Therefore remember that under these two *Chretien* relations all men are your equals. *rapport egal*

Cornelia daughter of Scipio Africanus, and wife of the Con-
Cornelie Scipion l'Africain ful Gracchus, owed her celebrity to the education that she had
devoir celebrité 2 given to her sons, and to the great qualifications that dis-
qualité *distingué* 2 tingued them. One day she received a visit from a lady very
tinguer visite dame rich and splendidly dressed, who, after having displayed before
magnifiquement etaler devant her, her diamonds, her pearls, and her most precious jewels,
diamants perles bijoux 1 begged of Cornelia to shew to her also her's. Cornelia made
prier the conversation fall on another subject to wait for the re-
entretien sujet attendre 2 turn of her sons, who had gone to the public schools. When
tour école 2 they had returned from them, she presented them to the lady,
revenir en présenter saying

EXERCISES ON THE

saying to her, There are my jewels, and my most beautiful
Voilà
attire.
parure 2

The Cinnamon Tree.
Cannelier 1.

The cinnamon tree grows in Ceylon. The root of it is large,
Ceylan *gros*
divided into many branches, covered with a bark of a greyish
partagé *écorce* 2 *grisâtre*
brown on the outer side, and of a reddish cast in the inner part.
roux *en* *débors* *rougeâtre* *en* *dedans*
The wood of the root is hard, white, and without smell. The
dur *odeur*
body of the tree, which rises to about fifty feet, is covered, as
tronc 1 *ain*
well as its numerous branches 2, with a bark at first green and
si que *nombreux* *de* *d' bord*
afterwards red. The leaf, if it was less long and less pointed,
puis *feuille* 2 *pointu*
would not be unlike to that of the laurel. When it is young,
resembler mal *laurier* *tendre*
it has a flame colour; in growing old and drying, it takes a
couleur de feu *vieillir* *sécher*
deep green on the surface, and a lighter green on the lower
foncé *vert* 1 *au* *dessus* *clair* *au* *des-*
part. The flowers are small and white, and grow in large
sous *fleur* 2 *disposé*
bundles at the extremity of the branches. They have an agree-
bouquet 1
able smell, something like that of the lilly of the valley. The
qui approcher de *muguet* 1
fruit has the shape of an acorn, but is smaller. In boiling it in
forme 2 *gland* 1 *faire bouillir*
water, it yields an oil that swims at top, and takes fire. If you
rendre *huile* 2 *furnager* *brûler*
let

Let it cool, it becomes a white and solid substance, of which can-
 congeler
candles are made for the king of Ceylon. There is nothing va-
 luable in the tree that produces cinnamon except the under
 cieux
bark. The best season for taking and separating it from the
 écorce 2 saison 2 enlever
outer bark, which is grey and rugged, is in the spring, when
 extérieur gris raboteux
the sap flows in the greatest abundance. They cut it into thin
 sève 2 On
slices, expose it to the sun ; and, in drying, it curls in the man-
 lames se sécher se rouler
ner we see it.

Saltpetre.

SALTPETRE 1 is the produce of Patna in Bengal. It is extracted
 venir Bengale tiré
from a clay, which is either black, whitish, or red. It is refined
 argille 2 blanchâtre On rafiner
by digging a large pit, in which they put this nitrous substance,
 en fosse 2 on nitreux terre 2
which they dilute with a great quantity of water, and which
 détremper
they keep stirring till it comes to a liquid consistency. The wa-
 remuer bouillie 2
ter having drawn out from it all the salts, and the grossest parts
 tirer en sel 1 épais matière 2
having subsided to the bottom, they take out the most fluid
 se précipiter fond on fluide
particles, which they pour into another pit, smaller than the
 partie verfer
former. The substance having undergone a second purification,
 premier matière 2 se purifier de nouveau
they take off the clearest parts that swim on the top, and which
 enlever furnager form

EXERCISES ON THE

form a water quite nitrous. They boil it in cauldrons; they skim
 tout faire bouillir chaudiere écumer
 it when it is boiling; and in a few hours they draw out a nitrous
 cuire au bout
 salt infinitely superior to any that is found elsewhere.
 on trouve

Of the Nutmeg Tree.
Muscadier.

THE nutmeg-tree grows to the same height as our pear tree.
 avoir que poirier

Its wood is pithy, and dark ash coloured. Its branches are flex-
 moelleux cendre

ible. Its leaves green and smooth, grow in pairs upon one single
 lisse croître deux à deux une même
 stem; and when one bruises them, they emit an agreeable o-
 tige on froisser repandre

dour. The fruit succeeds to the flower, which resembles that
 ceriser 1 grosseur 2 couleur 2
 of an apricot. The outer rind is very thick, and is like that of
 noix premier écorce 2

our walnuts when they are upon the tree, opening in the same
 manière when they are ripe, and discovering the nutmeg covered
 laisser voir muscade 2 enveloppé
 with its mace. The nutmeg is more or less good according to
 de maïs 1 parfait

the age of the tree, the soil, the exposure, and culture 2. People
 terroir 1 exposition On
 esteem it when it is fresh, moist, fat, heavy, and which being
 recent

pricked yields an oily juice. It helps digestion 2, and strength-
 piqué suc aider à ens

ens the bowels. The Banda islands, thirty leagues distant from
visceres
 Amboyna, claim the distinction of being the only islands in the
si vanter
 world that produce the nutmeg.

Of the four Quarters of the Earth.

THE surface of the earth is divided into earth and water
divisé en
 The extent of the earth that we know, is not so great as that of
étendue 2 on connoître
 water : but as there are unknown lands, we cannot assert which
il y a terre 2 assurer
 of these two surfaces is the most extensive. The earth is divided
avoir étendue
 into Continents and Islands.

The Continent 1, called also Terra Firma, is a great portion
Terre Ferme partie 2
 of the earth which includes many regions which are not separat-
comprendre
 ed from one another by the sea. There are two continents, the
 Old and the New. The Old contains Europe, Asia, and Africa.
ancien nouveau Asie
 The new is America.

We may divide Europe into nine parts; three towards the
vers
 north, which are the British Islands, that is to say, Great
nord 1 Britannique île c'est à dire
 Britain and Ireland; Sweden, with Denmark and Norway;
Bretagne 2 Irlande Suede 2 Danemarc 1 Norvege 2
 Russia or Muscovy.
Russi 2 Moscovie 2

Three towards the south, viz. Spain with Portugal 1, Italy
sud j'avoir Espagne Italie
 with Turkey in Europe.
Turquie en

Three in the middle, viz. France, Germany, and Poland.

au milieu Allemagne Pologne

In these nine parts we may reckon three Empires, which are
on computer

Germany, Turkey, and Russia. Eleven kingdoms, viz. Great
royaume

Britain, that includes Scotland, England, and Ireland; Spain,
comprendre Ecosse Angleterre Irlande Espagne
Portugal, Denmark, Sweden, Prussia, Poland, Hungary, Na-
Danemarc 1 Suede 2 Prusse 2 Hongrie 2
ples, and Sardinia.

Sardaigne 2

There are besides in Europe, the Ecclesiastical State, whereof
the Pope is Sovereign ; and four considerable Republics, which
are those of Venice, Genoa, Switzerland, and that of Holland.

Venise Gènes Suisse *Hollande*
There are other lesser territories, such as the Low Countries,

the Milanese, the Duchy of Tuscany.
Milanès *Duché* *Toscane*

Asia is the most extensive and the most renowned of the
Asia étendu célèbre

three parts of our continent. It was in Asia that the first man was created; and it is from it that the descendants of Noah créer enfants Nœ

Sent their colonies to all the other parts of the globe. Our Saviour Jesus Christ was born there; and he accomplished there

Sauveur *accompagné*
the work of our redemption. It is from it that we have the sciences and arts, and the four principal religions 2, which are the Jewish, the Pagan, the Christian, and the Mahometan.

Juif *Payen* *Chretien*
It was the seat of the most ancient monarchies, of the Assyrians,
siege 1 *monarchie 2* *Assyrien*
the Medes, the Persians, and Parthians.
Perse *Parthes*

Africa is a large peninsula joined to Asia only by the isthmus
Afrique presqu'île isthme

of Suez, which separates the Red Sea from the Mediterranean.

Mer 2 Rouge *Méditerranée 2*

The chief Capes in Africa, are the Cape of Good Hope and

Cap 1 *Esperance*

Guardafui.

America is much greater than each of the three others, it

Amerique *chacun*

makes alone a continent.

It is likely that the ancients have had some knowledge of A-

Il y apparence *anciens* *connoissance*

merica. Plato, in one of his works, introduces Egyptian priests,

Platon *ouvrage 1* *Egyptien* *prêtres*

who relate to Solon, that formerly beyond the pillars of Hercu-

rapporter *colonnes Hercule*

les there was an island, called Atlantis, greater than Europe

Atlantide

and Asia together; and Diodorus Siculus relates also, that

ensemble *Diodore de Sicile*

some Phoenicians having gone beyond the pillars of Herculer,

Pheniciens *passer*

were carried by violent winds towards lands very remote,

emporté *terres 2* *eloigné*

and that they landed opposite to Africa, in a very fertile island,

vis à vis

full of very great rivers. This country was discovered by

fleuve 1

Christopher Columbus in 1492, though it takes its name from

Christophe Colomb

Americo Vesputio, a Florentine, who went there in 1497.

Americo Vespuce *Florentin*

America is divided into two great parts, viz. Northern and

Septentrionale

Southern, joined by the isthmus of Panama, which is only about

Meridional joint

twenty leagues broad.

We may divide North America into seven principal parts;

viz. Canada 1, New England, New York, New Jersey 2, Pen-

Pen-

sylvania, Maryland, Virginia, North and South Carolina, Geor-

silvanie *Mariland Virginie* *Caroline 2* *Geor-*

gia, East Florida, West Florida, Louisiana, New Mexico, and

gie 2 *Oriental Floride 2* *Occidental Louisiane 2* *Mexique 1*

California,

EXERCISES ON THE

California, Mexico or New Spain.

Californie *Méxique* 1

South America contains Terra Firma, Peru, the country of
Terre Ferme *Perou*
 the Amazons, Guiana, Paraguay or La Plata, Chili, and Pata-
Pata-
 gonia, called Terra Magellanica.

gonie 2 *Terres Magellanique*

There are immense numbers of islands in America, such as
 Newfoundland, Cape Breton, Jamaica, Cuba, &c.

Terre neuve

Jamaïque 2

Astronomy, that approaches so near to God, far from lead-
si près de *por-*
 ing the Babylonians to the knowledge of the Creator and So-
ter
 vereign Master, who presides over the motion of the stars, and
au mouvement
 who governs them with so much wisdom, threw most of them
jetter
 into impiety and idolatry.

In the beginning God created the heavens and the earth. The
Au *créer* *ciel* 1 *terre* 2
 earth was at first all covered with the waters, and the waters were
couverte

surrounded with darkness. God said, let light be made, and
environné *ténèbres* *lumière* 2
 light was made. He separated the light from the darkness, and
d'avec

he gave to the light the name of Day, and to the darkness the
nom 1

name of Night. That was the first day. The second day God
jour 1

made the firmament 1, to which he gave the name of Heaven.
 The third day God collected in one place the waters that co-
rasssembler en même lieu 1

vered the earth, and he gave to the collection of waters the
amas 1

name of Sea. Afterwards, he commanded that the earth should
Ensuite

produce

FOREGOING RULES.

349

Egypt first inspired the Greeks (with) a taste for arts and sciences, initiated them into her mysteries, and gave them Gods *initier*

and laws. Greece, thus civilized, formed republics, which preserved independence abroad, and union at home. As long as *conservant au dehors au dedans* their union subsisted, they made their enemies tremble. Their liberty was regulated by laws. Their pure maxims did not always rule.

ways subsist? Every thing degenerates among men. Wisdom
dégénérer chez
and virtue have their vicissitudes in the body politic, as health
vicissitudes politique
and strength have theirs in the human body.

force 2
Here we saw temples with sacred groves, magnificent palaces,
bois
gardens, and a great number of stately houses of a regular ar-
superbe égulier
chitecture 2. In another place we beheld towers, high walls,
and little irregular buildings, which discovered the warlike and
inégal bâtiment 1 sentir guerrier
rustic taste of ancient times.

The theatre is a living picture of the virtues and passions of
men. The mind, being deceived by imitation, believes that it
fees the real objects. All appears present, and not represented.

You have read Homer. The poets have only abridged the
epic poem to compose the dramatic. The one is an action
poème à dramatique recited

EXERCISES ON THE

recited, the other is an action represented. The one recounts
recité
raconter
 the successive triumphs of virtue over vice and fortune, the other
successif
trionphe 1
 represents the unforeseen mischiefs caused by the passions. The
inopiné
mal causé
 one may abound with the marvellous and supernatural, because
peut prodiguer
merveilleux
furnaturel
 it treats of heroic exploits, which the Gods alone inspire. In
 the other the natural must be joined with the surprising, to shew
naturel
au
suprenant 1
 the genuine play of the human passions.
jeu 1

Our triangular phalanx pierces through the ranks of the
triangulaire phalange penetrer
 enemy. Our general, mounted on a foaming steed, flies from
fougueux
 rank to rank. The fire of his eyes animates our soldiers. The
en
animer
 serenity of his countenance emboldens them. In the heat of
tranquilité 2
assurer
 battle he is active, cool. He speaks to some, encourages others
ardeur
paisible
 by signs. The enemies are surrounded on all sides, and are
envelopé
 attacked in front, in rear, and in flank. We close in upon
par devant, par derrière par les flancs
serrer
 them, and cut them to pieces. Nothing is heard but the noise
On entendre
 of arms, which clash against one another, and the groans of the
s'entrechoquer
gémissement
 dying. Streams of blood overflow the plain. Despair, rage,
mourans Ruisseau
inonder
 and cruelty, spread slaughter and death every where.
réandre carnage 1

The Hanse towns, called Imperial, have always been either
Anséatique
 trading cities, or the richest of the empire. The emperors, in
trafiquant
 their

their urgent wants, have always applied to them to have their
pressant besoins *s'adresser*
help. They have granted to them various privileges, by way
secours *accorder* *divers privilege* *1*
of reward; and they have erected them into states, free, sove-
ériger *état libre*
reign, and independent. They enact laws, coin money, ad-
establir *faire battre monnoie*
ministrate justice in their name, keep up troops, erect forts,
entretenir *élever*
and make alliances for their own defence. In a word, these
propre
towns acknowledge no other jurisdiction than that of the em-
reconnaitre
peror and empire. We reckon about fifty-one of these towns,
On
which may be called republics.
pouvoir

I am infinitely interested in every thing that concerns my
s'intéresser *toucher*
good friend Mr L. He will have the honour of presenting this
rendre
letter to you; therefore I take the liberty of introducing him
présenter
to you. I cannot give him a more convincing proof of my
convaincant
esteem.

In the choice of our amusements we ought to consult reason
and taste. The true pleasures of a gentleman, which neither
occasion sickneſſ, shame, nor repentance, are those of good
société
company, table in due bounds, moderate play, which amuses
des honnêtes gens *borne à requis* *petit*
without interested views, and sprightly and gallant conver-
intérêt *enjoué*
ſation with women of fashion and ſense. Whatever exceeds
condition *esprit* *Tout ce qui aller au*
that, becomes low vice, debauchery, iuſanity; which, far from
à la *crapule*
doing

EXERCISES ON THE

doing us any honour, disgrace us.
décréditer

I hope our friend is improving at Paris. Has he acquired
Se flatter *se dégourdir* *prendre*
 manners there? at least he has great need of them. He is
beforein
 awkward, he is silent, and has not the least smartness, most ne-
gauche *tacturne*
 cessary qualification to distinguish one's self, either in business
ou affaire
 or in the polite world. In truth, if a man cannot make a figure
beau monde
 in business he cannot shine in the polite world.

savoir
 As for your son, he only wants, in order to be what you
il ne lui manque
 wish him, those small nothings, those graces, that amiable ease,
aisance 2
 which the company of the polite world only can give him. He
 does not express himself badly, but it is to be wished he could
s'envoler *il seroit à souhaiter*
 do it better. Good company will rectify this small impediment.
mettre ordre *défaut*
 He studies to please, and succeeds therein. Our mutual friend
s'étudier *réussir*
 was speaking of him the other day with kindness. He says that
 you will be satisfied with him in all respects.
content *à tous égards*

Gentlemen, the honour that I receive to-day is something
Messieurs
 so great, so extraordinary, so unexpected; and such various
peu attendu *tant de sortes de*
 reasons seemed for ever sufficient to exclude me from it, that
devoir
 in this very moment in which I am returning you my thanks, I
même *où* *faire* *remercements*
 don't know yet what I should do. Is it possible, is it really true,
devoir *bien*
 that

that you have in effect deemed me worthy of being admitted in
 to this illustrious society, the institution of which does no less
 honour to the memory of Cardinal Richelieu, than the glorious things that have been performed under his administration ?
 What would that great man think ?
 What would the sage Chancellor Seguier think, he who enjoyed,
 and after whom you thought you could not choose any other
 protector than the king himself ? What would they think, say I, were they to see me to-day admitted into a society so renowned, the object of their care and esteem ; and wherein, by the laws that they have enacted, by the maxims that they have always observed, no person ought to be received who is not
 undoubtedly of a genius above common, in a word, like yourselves.
 A letter of credit is a missive letter & addressed by a merchant or banker to his correspondent, by which he desires him to furnish to the bearer of the letter a sum fixed or unlimited, whereof he shall stand in need, and to place it to account. It is customary, for more security, to limit the sum, and to design the person who is to receive the money, so that the correspondent cannot be imposed on, in case the letter be stolen.

A letter of credit is a missive letter & addressed by a merchant or banker to his correspondent, by which he desires him to furnish to the bearer of the letter a sum fixed or unlimited, whereof he shall stand in need, and to place it to account. It is customary, for more security, to limit the sum, and to design the person who is to receive the money, so that the correspondent cannot be imposed on, in case the letter be stolen.

EXERCISES ON THE

A bill of exchange must have the name of the town
lettre de change
 where it was drawn, with the date *2*, the sum for which
où *tiré* *somme 2*
 it is granted, the time in which the payment of the contents
fait *auquel* *du contenu*
 ought to be made, the name of him to whom it is payable, the
aquité *valeur 2*
 name of the person who has given or promised the value of it;
valeur 2
 and one must specify in what that value has been given, if it be
in quoi *fourni*
 ready cash, bills of exchange, goods, or other effects, the name
argent comptant
 of him on whom it is drawn for payment, his address, the signature
 of the drawer, or of the one who gives the said letter; so
tireur *fournir* *dit*
 that in bills of exchange, there are always at least three persons
 who act. He to the order of whom it is drawn may give it a-
peut passer
 way to another person, by putting on the back his order in his
en *par derrière*
 favour; and the latter may do the same in favour of another.
celui ci *autant*
 This is called indorsing a bill of exchange. Every indorser
endosser *endosseur*
 ought to express in what he has received value; and the
 last bearer has for security all the indorsers, drawers, and
porteur
 acceptors.
accepteur

Let every person examine his thought, he will find it always
chacun
 intent on the past and future. We seldom think on the pre-
occupé du *passé et avenir* *au*
 sent; and if we think on it, it is only to borrow insight from
y *ce n'est que* *lumières*
 it, in order to dispose of the future. The present is never our
 aim.

aim. The past and present are our means; futurity alone is
but *moyens*
 our object. Thus, we never live, but we hope to live; and,
 disposing ourselves to be happy, it is unquestionable that we
indubitable
 shall never be so, if we don't aspire to another happiness than
béatitude
 that which we cannot enjoy in this life.

dont *jouir* *vie* 2

The desire of diving into every thing, of explaining every
désir *pénétrer* *tout*
 thing, and adjusting every thing to our imperfect notions, is
ajuster *idee*
 the most fatal disease of the human mind. The most sublime
maladie 2
 act of our weak reason, is to be silent before the Sovereign Rea-
effort 1 *de se taire devant* *Rai-*
 son Let us leave to God the care of justifying one day the in-
son 2 *laisser*
 comprehensible ways of his Providence 2. Our pride and our
voies

impatience do not suffer us to wait for this unravelling. We
faire *attendre* *dénouement*
 would go before the light, and we lose sight of it.

vouloir devancer *perdre de vue*

The doctrine which teaches, that we ought to place our so-
mettre *sou-*
 vereign good in the pleasure of the senses, is unworthy of a
verain *bien* 1 *volupté* 2
 philosopher.

Is there any thing more agreeable to a person who thinks,
 than to see the most remarkable events of antiquity, the different
que de *evenement*
 customs of the most remote nations, represented on the stage,
coutume 2 *éloigné*
 with all the strength and energy whereof tragedy is susceptible?

force 2 *dont*
 What is more fit to reform our morals, and to make us blush
qu'y a-t-il *moeurs* *rongir*,
for

EXERCISES ON THE

for our faults, than to see them ridiculed with art, and without
_{de} _{que de} _{ridiculiser}
gall, by amiable comedy?
_{fièl}

Public education 2 emboldens a young man, gives him cou-
_{enhardir}
rage, early accustoms him not to be afraid of appearing in
_{de bonne heure} _{craindre} _{grand le}
public, and cures him of a certain pusillanimity which natu-
_{jour} _{guérir} _{pusillanimité} 2
rally attends a gloomy and retired life. Whereas, in secre-
_{inspirer} _{sombre} _{retiré} _{en secret}
he usually grows languid and dejected ; he rusts, if I may say so,
_{pour l'ordinaire languir} _{s'abattre se rouiller}, pour ainsi dire
or else he falls into an opposite extreme; becomes concei-
_{ou bien} _{posé extrémité} 2 _{s'enfier d'un sot org}
setting a greater value upon himself than upon others from h-
_{se mettre au dessus} _{des autres parce}
ving no person with whom he can compare himself.
_{qu'il}

In a public school, there are acquaintances formed, which
_{école} 2 _{on fait des connaissances}
often last as long as life ; and there is a certain knowledge of
_{durer} _{on y} _{certain usage}
the world to be acquired, which can only be learned in society.
_{prend} _{que la société seul pouvoir donner}
The great advantage of schools is emulation. A child there
_{avantage} 1
improves both by what is said to himself, and what is said to
_{profiter} _{et de ce qu'on} _{lui}
others. He will every day see his master approve one thing
_{corriger} _{paresse} 2 _{celui-ci} _{mettre}
and correct another ; blame the idleness of this boy, and com-
_{er} _{celui-là} _{tout à profit}
mend the diligence of that boy, and will be the better for it all.
The love of glory will serve him as an incentive to take pains.
_{lui d'aiguillon pour le travail}
He will be ashamed to give place to his equals, and will take
_{avoir honte} _{de céder} _{égal} _{se pi-}
_{pains}

FOREGOING RULES.

357

Rains to excel the most forward. A good scholar will use his
quer avances faire
utmost endeavours to be first in his clas\$.

This gives ardour to young minds; and a noble emulation
voilà ce qui donne esprits
well managed, without any mixture of malice, envy, and
menage dont on aura soin de bannir malignité 2
pride, is one of the best means to lead them to the exercise of
moyens à conduire
the greatest virtues, and the most arduous undertakings.

Another advantage to be found in schools is that a young man meets with such models among his companions as are à sa portée qu'il peut atteindre, and does not despair of surpassing one day; where, as, if he was alone, it would be presumption to dare to compare himself with his master.

Lastly, a master who has a numerous auditory exerts him-
self quite otherwise, than he who, having but one scholar, can
tout que celui qui étant tête à tête avec un
speak only coldly to him, and in the way of conversation. Now,
ne que d'un ton Or
it is incredible how much this fire and vivacity are of use to a
cor: bien propre
master ; when he explains the beautiful passage of an author,
endroit 1
he grows warm and transported, not only to make the boys at-
se passionner se transporter rendre les jeunes gens
tentive, but to inspire them with the same taste and sentiments
mais inspirer leur gout 1
which he feels himself.
dont est pénétré

Sacred history is very different from all other histories. The
il n'en est pas de sacrée histoire comme de Celle-
latter

EXERCISES ON THE

latter contains only human facts, and temporal events, and are
ci renfermer fait 1 temporel événements
often full of uncertainty and contradiction. But the other is the
celle-là
history of God himself, the Supreme Being ; the history of his
même Souverain l'Etat
omnipotence, his infinite wisdom, his universal providence, his
toute puissance 2 infini - sagesse 2
holiness, his justice, his mercy, and all his other attributes,
sainteté 2 miséricorde 2 attributs
set forth under a thousand forms, and displayed by abundance
montré rendu sensible par une in-
of wonderful effects. The book which contains these wonders
finité éclatant contenir merveilles 2
is the most ancient book in the world, and the only one, before
ancien unique avant
the coming of the Messiah, in which God has shewn us, in a
venue 2 Messie faire connoître d'une
clear and certain manner, what he is, what we are, and for
manière ce que
what ends he has designed us.
quo destination

Monsieur Voltaire to the King of Prussia.

THE dispenser of sceptres and crowns has placed you, Sire,
dispensateur placé Sire
at the head of a nation powerful and warlike, which you have
belliqueux
formed by your instruction and your example. Your knowledge
former exemple lumières
and your writings have secured you the pre-eminence 2 in the
écrit acquis
empire of letters. The wisdom of your institutions and your
établissements sagacité
foundations, your admirable sagacity in the great art of govern-
ing, and the internal police 2 of your states, have justly conferred
interieur mérite
upon you the titles of politician and legislator. Your victories,
legislateur victoire
your

your triumphs, and your conquests, have made you the arbiter
triomphe *conquête* *rendre* *arbitre*
of the fate of Europe.
destins

What a pity it would be, if such extensive knowledge, such
Quel domage *tant de connaissances*
talents, and virtues, should only obtain temporary honours and
bonneur
distinctions, if your Majesty should pervert those gifts of heaven
pervertir *den*
ven for the misery and desolation of mankind?

malheur *genre humain*
You have nothing left to desire in this world, Sire, but the

plus rien à désirer
august title of *Christian Hero*. My wishes for your Majesty have
auguste *Héros Chrétien les voeux que je fais*
a more extensive object than transitory happiness. May you,
etendu *objet* *passager* *bonheur* *Puissiez-vous*
Sire, give the world the magnanimous example of the sublime
magnanimité *exemple*

virtues of Christianity, and publicly disavow, as I do at present,

Christianisme *désavouer*
those erroneous principles, and impious opinions, which will
erroné *principe* *impie*
otherwise be transmitted with your writings to posterity. I
autrement *passer*

have the honour to be, with the most profound respect,

Your Majesty's most obedient servant.

In China, the taxes are levied without having recourse to
Chine *les impôts* *on leve*
those oppressive methods practised in Europe. The Mandarins
moyens *se servir*
take the tenth part in kind. The officers of the municipal
percevoir *dîme* *en nature* *officiers* *municipal*
towns give in the amount of this tribute, and all other taxes,
verser *le produit de levée* *taxe* *à*
to the receiver general of the province, and the whole is
dans les mains du *lodged*

Lodged in the public treasury. The destination of the revenue ^{revenu 1} prevents all fraud in collecting, as it is well known, that a *prevenir infidélité de perception* part of these duties is allotted for the maintenance of the magistrates and soldiers. The money arising from the sale of this ^{redevance 2 employé nourriture 2} portion of the product of the lands, is never issued from the ^{prix} exchequer but on public exigencies. It remains in the magazines ^{sortir} against times of scarcity, when the people receive what ^{fisc 1 besoin reste} they lent, as it were, in times of plenty. ^{pour disette} *pour ainsi dire abondance*

F I N I S,

ALEX. SMELLIE PRINTER.